



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF

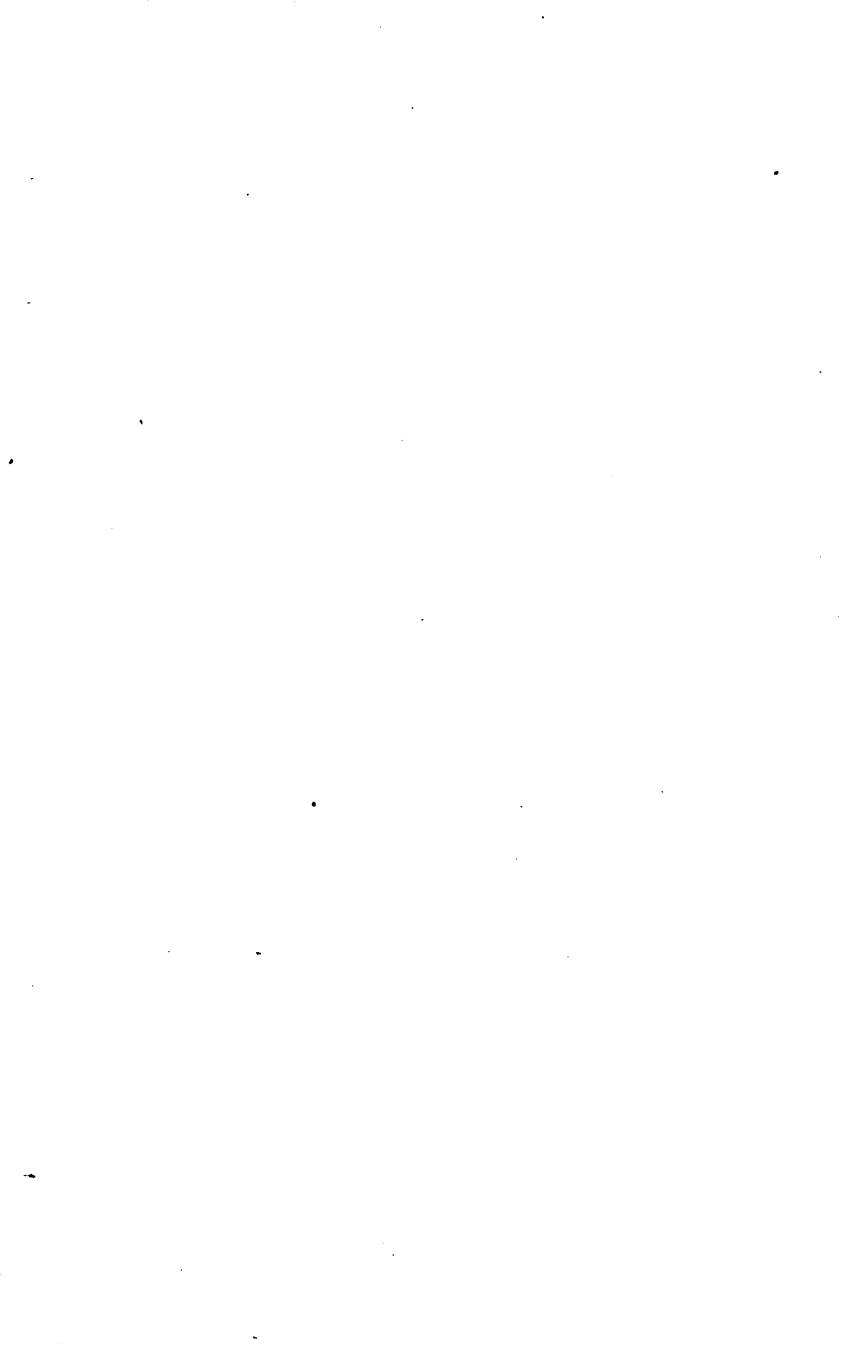


QB 256 905

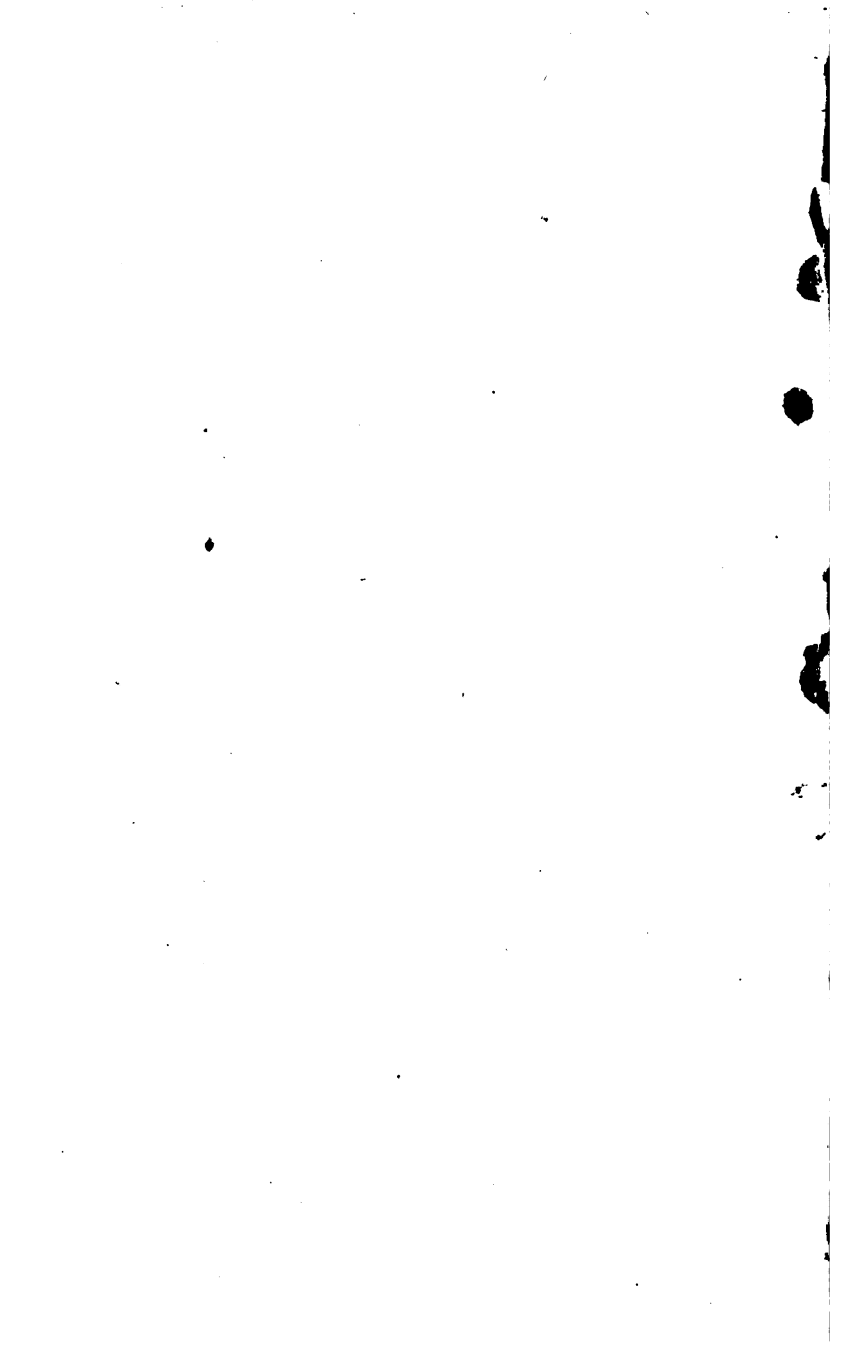


EX LIBRIS

P. C. S.
1711







BY THE ACADEMY OF LANGUAGES,

124 TUNE ST., SAN FRANCISCO.

THE MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM
OF TEACHING THE
FRENCH AND GERMAN.

Meisterschaft System.

A SHORT AND PRACTICAL METHOD

OF

ACQUIRING COMPLETE FLUENCY OF SPEECH.

IN THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY DR. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL,

LATE DIRECTOR OF THE "AKADEMIE FÜR FREIHE SPRACHEN" IN BUDAPEST AND
LEIPZIG, OF THE "MEISTERSCHAFT COLLEGE" IN LONDON, AND PRES-
IDENT OF THE "MEISTERSCHAFT SCHOOL OF PRACTICAL
LINGUISTICS" IN NEW YORK AND BOSTON.

IN FIFTEEN PARTS.

PART I.

BOSTON, MASS.:

MEISTERSCHAFT PUBLISHING COMPANY,

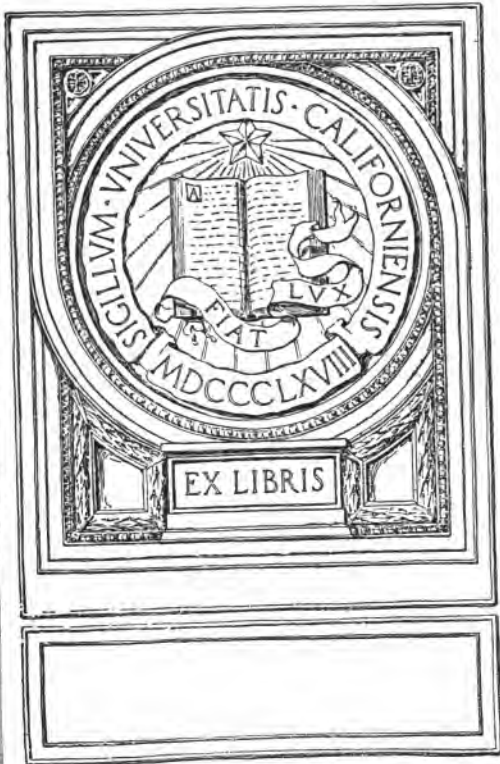
257 WASHINGTON STREET,
(Herald Building.)

German, French, Spanish, Italian.

We have arranged with Dr. ROSENTHAL, the author of the "Meisterschaft System," for its introduction in America under his own supervision; and he has opened

THE

MEISTERSCHAFT PUBLISHING COMPANY'S Linguistry



Lessons of each
and sent in pamphlets
may reside.
French, Spanish,
each.

on, or consult
them. All exercises
turn post, by

the School, for
her to receive
also answers
st accompany

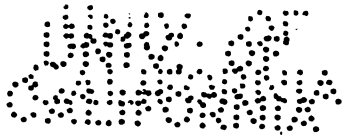
desire to study.
ars, pays for
c. All exercises
sheet of paper,

or Registered

MEISTERSCHAFT PUBLISHING COMPANY,
257 Washington Street.

(Herald Building.)

BOSTON.



THE MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM

Has been Universally Successful in Germany and England, and is
Enthusiastically Indorsed by

EDUCATORS, STATESMEN, EDITORS, AND BUSINESS MEN.

FROM THE MASS OF TESTIMONIALS WE SELECT THE FOLLOWING :

. . . . "Dr. Rosenthal's main purpose is to teach his pupils to really speak and write and understand the modern European tongues. . . . According to this system the pupil begins from the *very first lesson to express himself in a simple and natural manner in the foreign languages*, and — what must be considered most important — to *think* in them. . . . We recommend the 'Meisterschaft System' most earnestly to all who desire to learn to speak foreign languages actually and fluently." . . .

VOSSISCHE ZEITUNG, BERLIN, GERMANY.

. . . . "It would lead us too far if we were to give Dr. Rosenthal's true and practical ideas at a larger extent; so much, however, is sure, that *his system, which in its simplicity follows nature's own method, is destined to create an entire revolution in the study and teaching of foreign languages.*" . . .

VOLKS ZEITUNG, BERLIN, GERMANY.

. . . . "A pupil cannot fail to *master a knowledge of French, English, or Spanish, from this wonderfully simple and ingenious method.*" . . .

POST, BERLIN, GERMANY.

. . . . "Dr. Rich. S. Rosenthal, Director of the Academy for Foreign Languages, practises his system here with the most surprising results. *More than 800 hearers, among them many members of the 'Reichstag' — Parliament — several members of the Prussian Cabinet, and many teachers and merchants, have during this winter attended his lectures, and, as we know from experience, with entire success. . . . His system leads within a few weeks to really surprising results.*" . . .

BÜRGER ZEITUNG, BERLIN, GERMANY.

"By this method the pupil learns from the first lesson to think in the language itself, a point which is so entirely overlooked by other systems, and which cannot be highly enough recommended."

VEREIN FÜR VOLKSBILDUNG, BERLIN.

"There does not exist a better and more practical system for merchants than the 'Meisterschaft System.' . . . We know that a great many of our leading merchants have, within a few months, reached entire mastery of French, Spanish, and English by this excellent method."

BANK AND HANDELS ZEITUNG, BERLIN.

"On account of his great merits Dr. Rosenthal enjoys the rare distinction of being private teacher to several members of the Imperial family. . . . His success at Court is just as great as with the general public, and we are told from the best authority that His Imperial Highness, Archduke Frederick, said the other day to him: 'We have in five of your lessons learned to speak Spanish more fluently than with our former teacher in a whole year.'"

NEUE FREIE PRESSE, VIENNA, AUSTRIA.

"Dr. Rosenthal's system is so exceedingly simple and practical that we cannot recommend it urgently enough to all who within a short time wish to really speak French, Spanish, English, or Italian."

TAGBLATT, VIENNA, AUSTRIA.

"It is a great merit of Dr. Rosenthal's 'Meisterschaft System' that it enables the learner from the very first lesson to express himself simply and naturally in the foreign language, and to think in it. . . . We earnestly recommend the Doctor's method to those who aim to learn foreign languages quickly and actually."

DEUTSCHE ZEITUNG, VIENNA, AUSTRIA.

"In few fields of mental labor can success be gained in such difficult manner as in the actual speaking of foreign languages. . . . It is therefore of unusual value for the public, if a system be found by which the wall which difference of language has built between the friendly intercourse of nations can be overstepped with facility and ease. . . . That such a practical method, which can be recommended in all and every regard, has been found and actually tried in Dr. R. S. Rosenthal's 'Meisterschaft System,' can, after the universal acknowledgment of the Press and the general indorsement of our first and best scholars, not be doubted. . . . Here in Vienna, where the Doctor is at present, and where he holds the high position of private Spanish and English tutor to many members of our Imperial family, his system has been universally accepted and introduced. . . . It is, without doubt, the simplest, quickest, and most practical method in existence."

SALON (with the picture of Dr. Rosenthal), VIENNA, AUSTRIA.

"A Committee of three gentlemen waited last evening upon Dr. Rosenthal at his private residence on the Kärntner Ring, and presented him an address of thanks signed by two hundred and seventy of his hearers, — teachers, physicians, artists, officers, and merchants. All of the subscribers are well-known Vienna men. They state in their address that they within ten weeks have learned to speak and write French and English fluently, correctly, and idiomatically."

FREMDEBLATT, VIENNA, AUSTRIA.

. . . "Dr. Rosenthal is the first teacher who has broken with our present methods, which, as most of us know, never lead to fluency of conversation, and he it is who has devised a really rational and practical method, which, according to the highest authorities in our land of scholars, stands first and pre-eminent, creating, in fact, an entire revolution in the study of foreign tongues."

UEBER LAND UND MEER, STUTTGART.

. . . "Dr. Rosenthal's 'Meisterschaft System'—unique and most practical—stands now, after several years' trial, first among educational works for the practical and natural learning of foreign tongues. . . . The immense number of pupils, which by the help of this excellent system have made in an incredibly short time most astonishing progress in speaking, writing, and reading of foreign tongues, is the highest recommendation any author can hope or expect."

HAMBURGER NACHRICHTEN, HAMBURG.

What the CHRISTIAN WORLD, LONDON, England, says: "Many of our readers must have contended, in some form or another, with the difficulties of learning a foreign language; and not a few have regretted the pains they have taken and the money they have spent to procure an acquaintance with French or German, so as to be able to understand it easily when spoken, and speak it for themselves. WE ARE, THEREFORE, GLAD TO CALL SPECIAL ATTENTION TO SOME VERY SENSIBLE AND VIGOROUS EFFORTS WHICH ARE NOW BEING MADE BY WAY OF PROMOTING THE STUDY OF THE FRENCH AND GERMAN LANGUAGES IN THIS COUNTRY. DR. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL, late Director of the Academy for Foreign Languages in Berlin and Leipzig, is now issuing two separate works for these languages respectively, entitled 'The Meisterschaft System,' which is a method perfected for the PRACTICAL AND NATURAL LEARNING of these languages for business and conversation. His aim is to promote fluency in speaking rather than the grammatical learning which so commonly takes its place. He properly insists upon the necessity, which every day becomes more apparent, of increasing our facilities for communication with other people by acquiring a practical acquaintance with their language, and not merely a theoretical knowledge of their respective grammars. His method involves frequent and persistent utterances of French and German phrases, so that the ear may become accustomed to the sound as the eye to the written word."

What the OXFORD JOURNAL, OXFORD, England, says: "This system overcomes the greatest of all difficulties hitherto found in teaching and acquiring a language, viz., FLUENCY OF SPEECH. . . . ITS WONDERFUL SIMPLICITY SAVES MUCH TIME, as CONTINUOUS STUDY IS NOT REQUIRED, while the pronunciation is so clearly shown that even the most uneducated can master it. . . . Dr. Rosenthal's method is based upon a sound and natural principle. . . . IT IS THE MOST PRACTICAL METHOD WE KNOW, and certainly does much to simplify the task of learning a foreign language."

What the LITERARY WORLD, LONDON, England, says: "We can by no means express satisfaction with the method of teaching generally prevalent in our English schools. An enormous amount of time, strength, and money is expended by parents, pupils, and teachers upon the principal Continental languages with most unsatisfactory results. Any one, therefore, who introduces a real improvement of method is entitled to hearty thanks. . . . Dr. Rosenthal's method of instruction aims in the first place at the ABILITY OF CONVERSATION, and he has worked out his theory WITH A SKILL, THOROUGHNESS, AND ADHERENCE TO SOUND SCIENTIFIC PRINCIPLES WHICH WE HAVE NOT FOUND ELSEWHERE" . . .

What the SPORTSMAN, EDINBURGH, Scotland, says: "Although we have several excellent works for the improvement of our method of teaching languages, **WE HAVE NO HESITATION IN DECLARING THE ONE BEFORE US — DR. ROSENTHAL'S 'Meisterschaft System,' — TO BE THE VERY BEST;** because, in the first place, it is so simple that every one can use it without interfering with business, or interruption of other studies; and next, because *it has never been known to fail in what it professes, viz., to give a complete mastery over a foreign language in a wonderfully short time.*"

What the ACADEMY, LONDON, England says: "We have heard continually from our correspondents in Berlin and Leipzig of the celebrated teacher, Dr. Rosenthal, and his 'Meisterschaft System,' and can only say, after a careful examination of his works, that *their success is well deserved.* A pupil cannot fail, be he ever so stupid or disinclined to study, to master a knowledge of French from the *wonderfully simple and ingenious method.* . . . Dr. Rosenthal has certainly devised a plan by which study is rendered comfortable and natural."

Among the patrons of the "Meisterschaft System" are: His Imperial Highness Archduke Frederic of Austria; Archduchess Elisabeth of Austria; Archduchess Isabella of Austria; Prince Windischgrätz; Duke of Coburg; Count Taaffe; Countess Taaffe; Countess Festeticz; Baron Rothschild; Count Bismarck, Jr.; General Fransecky; Colonel Bigot, etc., etc., — many members of the German and Austrian Parliament; of the Prussian Cabinet; over three hundred German teachers, etc., etc.

WHAT THE AMERICAN PRESS SAYS

OF THE

MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM.

JOURNAL OF EDUCATION, Boston, Mass. . . . "We are convinced beyond a doubt that Dr ROSENTHAL'S '*Meisterschaft System*' is all it claims to be. It is a wonderful improvement on all other systems of teaching foreign languages. We predict for it an unprecedented success."

THE WORLD, New York. . . . "That the '*Meisterschaft System*' will revolutionize linguistic studies there can be no doubt. First of all, in acquiring a language so that one may speak it, it is necessary, as Dr. ROSENTHAL very aptly shows, to have a framework, or rather a series of 'sentence-moulds.' Most grammars and systems plunge the scholar directly into syntax and rules, and long, tedious vocabularies. The value of this system can hardly be estimated. We have seen the students of this system in many parts. It seemed in Stuttgart as if nothing else could be tolerated. Americans were using it to the exclusion of all others. In the school in Berlin alone, where classes and instruction were directed by able teachers, THE YOUNGER MEMBERS OF THE IMPERIAL FAMILY, MANY MEMBERS OF THE GERMAN PARLIAMENT, AND, QUITE AS SURPRISING AS ANYTHING ELSE, OVER THREE HUNDRED TEACHERS, THEMSELVES INSTRUCTORS IN MODERN LANGUAGES WERE MEMBERS. . . . The '*Meisterschaft System*' is not only the most sensible and practical method in existence, but it affords an opportunity of acquiring modern languages at home, to still be under the direction of the greatest living linguist and teacher,

and to acquire a correct pronunciation of the language by the painstaking and most excellent method with which the author has given to each and every one of the 4,000 words employed, its separate and perfect pronunciation."

THE TRANSCRIPT, Boston, Mass. . . . "The '*Meisterschaft System*' of teaching languages, which has proved so eminently successful in Germany, England, Italy, Sweden, Hungary, and Austria, has been introduced into this country by its author, Dr. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL, who has published, under the imprint of Estes & Lauriat, Boston, a series of lessons in French and German for the use of students of these languages. These lessons are according to the 'natural method' — we do not refer to the exploded and mistaken ideas of Dr. Sauvcur and others — by which all men learn a foreign tongue when resident abroad. . . . Dr. ROSENTHAL says truly that although young men and women study French and German for years, frequently under the tuition of able native masters, they rarely attain any degree of practical fluency in speaking those tongues. They learn to parse, analyze, conjugate, decline and translate, but they cannot hold the simplest conversation on common subjects. . . . Dr. ROSENTHAL, on the contrary, introduces the pupil from the very beginning into the spirit of the foreign tongue, teaching him from the first lesson to think and express himself in it. . . . In one word, the '*Meisterschaft System*' does for the acquirement of French and German what phonography has done for the acquirement of short-hand."

THE HOME JOURNAL, New York. . . . The '*Meisterschaft System*' teaches us to study living languages in a rational, common sense way. It tells us, first, that speaking a foreign language is not a matter of the intellect, but that the ear, the tongue and the memory are almost solely employed. Not until we have familiarized ourselves so thoroughly with a number of foreign sounds, for words are but sounds, as to begin to think in them, can our intellect be really said to come into action. The second requirement is to bear in mind that we cannot translate literally from one language into another. We must rid ourselves of this miserable practice, and we must, as Dr. ROSENTHAL very properly insists upon, from the very beginning accustom ourselves to the idioms and construction of the language we are studying. We must practice the peculiarities of the foreign speech so constantly that they become perfectly natural to us, and are uttered just as glibly and spontaneously in French as in English. The first exercise given opens with a 'foundation sentence,' instead of the usual disconnected words. A constant repetition is required. At first it is confusing, but it is astonishing, after a few days' trial under the Doctor's directions, with what facility we not only repeat the sentences but think them. This is the process by which sound becomes a matter of language."

From THE NATION, New York. . . . "Its peculiarity is, that it begins with the complex instead of with the simple, starting off at once with a 'foundation sentence,' consisting of two or more members, and ringing the changes upon that, till by a gradual process, a vocabulary of upwards of 3,000 words has been acquired and mastered in a great variety of relations. We believe that in the hands of a competent teacher, *this system is the best yet devised for learning to speak a foreign tongue in a short time.*

From THE HERALD, Boston. . . . Dr. ROSENTHAL has undoubtedly hit upon the right idea, and has worked out his practical theory with a skill and thoroughness which we have n't found anywhere else. While grammar is necessary, persistent colloquial practice is all-important. The student who has studied nothing but grammar, without colloquial practice, cannot form an elementary sentence in a foreign language, without thinking about his words, their grammatical arrangement, the rules of syntax, etc. He thinks about his French or German instead of thinking in those languages. We should, however, —

Dr. ROSENTHAL very properly says, — become so habituated to the foreign idiom, that when we ask a question on a simple matter, like purchasing gloves, engaging lodgings, etc., our thoughts may unconsciously take the foreign words, even while we are perhaps occupied with some care or sorrow. That such an unconscious fluency in language can be acquired, the *'Meisterschaft System'* has amply demonstrated. . . . Dr. ROSENTHAL has reduced to a scientific, simple, and most practical system, the linguistic method of all persons who, by residence abroad, have become fluent in the use of foreign tongues. . . . We recommend his system most heartily to all who in a short time want to acquire real fluency of speech."

From THE CONGREGATIONALIST, Boston, Mass. . . . "This is a most remarkable method, which will, in fact, revolutionize the whole way of teaching and studying foreign languages. It is practical linguistry, as distinct from scientific and merely theoretical philology." . . .

From the ATLANTIC MONTHLY . . . "The *'Meisterschaft System'* is a practical method. The author, keeping steadily in mind the single purpose of enabling the scholar to talk in French, and to say the things most necessary to be said, has arranged his matter in a most lucid way, and stripped the task as far as possible of all irrelevant matter. . . . He has reduced the student's work, by the practical method in which it is taken up, to a minimum." . . .

From the YALE LITERARY MAGAZINE . . . "The *'Meisterschaft System'* has solved one of the problems of this busy nineteenth century in giving us the utmost result, with the least possible expenditure of time and labor. . . . We have examined the fifteen books with great care, and we are convinced that there is no French or German book in existence, by which the same rapid results can be accomplished." . . .

From OUR CONTINENT . . . "There is never a royal road to learning. But the common sense of Dr. ROSENTHAL's *'Meisterschaft System'* was so evident, its results so certain, that it took place at once as the first thoroughly reasonable and practical method. . . . When the fifteen pamphlets, printed with the care which characterizes the work of Estes & Lauriat, and edited with a painstaking fidelity which must have been wearisome to the flesh, are mastered, the student is ready for daily life abroad." . . .

From THE CRITIC, New York. . . . "I am convinced that here is a system which teaches one to think and to talk idiomatic German and French, from the very beginning; which makes study a pleasure and no task; which enables one to make use of everything learned as soon as it is mastered." . . .

THE

Meisterschaft System.

A SHORT AND PRACTICAL METHOD

OF

ACQUIRING COMPLETE FLUENCY OF SPEECH

IN THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY DR. RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL,

LATE DIRECTOR OF THE "AKADEMIE FÜR FREMDE SPRACHEN" IN BERLIN AND
LEIPZIG, OF THE "MEISTERSCHAFT COLLEGE" IN LONDON, AND PRIN-
CIPAL OF THE "MEISTERSCHAFT SCHOOL OF PRACTICAL
LINGUISTRY" IN NEW YORK AND BOSTON.

IN FIFTEEN PARTS.

PART I.

BOSTON:

THE MEISTERSCHAFT PUBLICATION COMPANY.

1885.

COPYRIGHT,
BY RICHARD S. ROSENTHAL,
1882.

The Meisterschaft System.

It is a widely known and acknowledged fact that, although our young men and women study German and French for years, frequently under the tuition of able native masters, they very rarely attain any degree of

PRACTICAL FLUENCY IN SPEAKING THESE TONGUES.

In our times, when international commerce and intercourse is so constantly increasing, our schools and colleges must aim at other and more practical results than heretofore were considered necessary.

It is no longer sufficient to teach the student the grammatical peculiarities of French and German, and to introduce him into the classic literature of these languages; but *the true end and aim of our linguistic education must be to actually speak the modern tongues, and to really be able to converse in them fluently and idiomatically.*

“The usual mistake,” says the *New York World*, in an able editorial on the study of modern languages, “in America, throughout the majority of schools, is that in studying a foreign tongue more actual study is put upon English and a formation of a smooth translation than in building up and acquiring the language in question. But whatever the faults of teachers or of the

system, of one fact the parents and public are painfully assured, and that is that after years of study the scholars are still unable to speak and write the language, and with difficulty can even read it. Everybody knows how he has been able to repeat pages of grammatical rules and foreign words, and then, amid his congratulations on mastering so much, how some day he has found himself stranded in a foreign land only to discover that he has no use for the rules and words he has learned—that somehow and strangely enough the people have quite a different stock of language.”

For two, three, and frequently five years the pupils—according to our present false and unnatural systems—study different French and German grammars, manuals, and vocabularies; they learn to conjugate and to decline, to parse and to analyze, etc.

If a boy will learn how to build a chair his master does not give him chairs to break asunder; but rather wood to build them with. He does not tear apart, but builds up. So, if one would learn French, or any foreign speech, his work must not consist of taking a certain amount of French, tearing it into bits, and then building it up into good English, which he already knows, but it must be just the reverse.

In our preparatory schools, our seminaries, the best of all our colleges and universities—indeed throughout our whole land, the greater part of the time is spent in this false and absurd way—and the student who takes a piece of Latin, Greek, French, or German, and renders it into the smoothest English, stands first and best above his fellows.

It is an utter deception ; for the same student would be quite unable to reverse the process and render the same amount of English into even a passable foreign phrase. In one word, our schools educate philologists and grammarians, but only in rare instances do they turn out practical linguists.

Of what use, however, is a perfect knowledge of all grammatical French rules to the tourist who fails to understand the simple utterances of even a railway porter, and who after five years' study of the best French grammars, can scarcely ask for his common necessities ?

To understand the grammar of a language is desirable, but it is by no means so important as being able to speak the language.

As we can never become painters by the critical study of pictures, so we can never hope to make ourselves practical linguists by the mere study of grammar.

Or to use a still clearer illustration : We may understand perfectly the theory of swimming, but this theoretical knowledge will be of little practical help when we are obliged to take the first actual plunge.

These are *incontrovertible facts*, felt and acknowledged not only by almost all learners, but even by the majority of our teachers.

THE TASK OF LEARNING A FOREIGN LANGUAGE

has hitherto been so difficult, so wearisome and productive of so little efficiency, that few persons of mature age have attempted it, however great their need of it either for business purposes or for cultivation.

“ These difficulties,” writes *Dr. Heinrich Schliemann*, the celebrated explorer of Greek antiquities, “ have now been happily obviated by the

‘ MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM,’

which is simply a scientific adaptation of the natural method by which all persons, whether children or adults, educated or otherwise, rapidly and correctly acquire the language which they constantly hear, and which they are instinctively impelled to imitate when resident in a foreign country.”

HOW THE MEISTERSCHAFT SYSTEM
TEACHES.

Jacotot, Prendergast, Bayard Taylor, and others proved years ago that

the Speaking of Foreign Tongues

is *not* a matter of the *intellect*, as shown by the fact that *children* acquire a foreign language much more rapidly than grown persons.

They have neither teacher, book, nor interpreter ; they are frequently too young to read or write in their own tongue ; they understand nothing about the principles of grammar ; they do not think about this or that method of acquiring the language ; yet without thinking at all, in coming either to Calcutta or Paris—they rapidly enunciate the foreign sounds correctly, and in a few short weeks chatter like natives with their foreign attendants.

It must have been observed by every intelligent traveller how the ignorant donkey boys in Alexandria—native Egyptians mostly, who never went to any school—express themselves clearly and sometimes very

fluently in both English, French, and Italian ; sometimes even in Greek and Turkish. In spite of their uncultivated intelligence, the natural and wonderfully subtle power of imitation does for them what a long course of grammatical study fails to do for the educated and refined.

These facts must show to the most casual observer that some natural laws exist governing the mode by which foreign languages are acquired, and which should be scientifically considered and made useful for practical purposes.

ALL SCIENCE IS BUT THE SEARCHING OUT OF NATURAL LAWS.

The greatest scientific results have originated by the careful observation of some very simple and commonplace occurrence, which has itself directly illustrated some great unchangeable natural law.

The fall of an apple, the steam of a boiling kettle, have conferred untold blessings upon mankind, and yet apples innumerable had fallen before Newton's time.

“ The careful observation of ‘ the lisp of children and their earliest words’—or rather the common and natural process by which human beings master the powers of speech, has”—to quote the language of the celebrated philologist *Professor Bernhard Schmitz*—“ produced a system by which we can rapidly acquire other tongues, and which has really created a new science—that of *Linguistry*, which must not be confounded with *Philology*. ”

Now in what way do children—and we might add adults—learn to master a foreign language when resident in a foreign country ?

At first, the mind gets entirely confused by the multiplicity of foreign sounds which it hears continually uttered without possessing the ability of grasping what is said. In the course of a few weeks, however, the ear becomes accustomed to some of these sounds, and we begin to utter *that sentence* (not a single noun, for *unconnected words are not language*), which we have heard most frequently used by the persons about us.

This sentence is usually relative to our most urgent necessity ; a common object, water, food, towels, or a railway ticket.

In a little while a new necessity arises. We use again the same sentence—not knowing any other—altered only by the substitution or addition of a new noun, adjective, or adverb. For instance, the water or food required may be asked for either hot or cold, at once or later, etc. ; and the sentence is then altered or enlarged by a new word which the attendant—understanding us—suggests.

This new word may have some remote or close affinity of ideas with some other word we know, and after a few repetitions, the ear is so accustomed to it that it becomes a part of ourselves, and is uttered by the tongue *unconsciously* whenever the necessity occurs.

This is the process by which *sound* becomes a matter of language. Foreign words at first convey no ideas to us, and it is only by constant repetition and use of them that we are led directly to think in them. They are then no longer foreign, but have become part of ourselves, and suggest to us the same ideas as do the words of our native tongue.

It is clear that the *intelligence* has at first but little to do in the acquirement of foreign languages. The truth of this observation will very likely be doubted, for it seems as if *all* study *must* appeal to our faculties of reason. Yet the experience of any one who has studied the modern languages in our colleges will verify my statement. A college graduate will undoubtedly understand the peculiarities of the French or German grammar; he will be able to read the literature to a certain extent; he may even be capable of writing a letter faultlessly and grammatically in these languages, and yet as soon as he tries to converse in them he gets utterly confused and is unable to express himself.

How is this to be accounted for? He can read French and cannot speak it. He can write French letters and yet cannot express himself orally. He understands French grammar better than a native, and still he cannot give utterance to his simplest thoughts in that language.

It is just here where our school-systems are at fault. They appeal to the reasoning power, instead of to the *memory*.

The ear, the tongue, and the memory are almost solely employed in mastering the foreign sounds, and our *intelligence*, though it superintends the whole process, can only really be said to come into action when the foreign sounds have become our mental and bodily property so fully and entirely that we begin to think in them just as readily as in our own vernacular.

And this brings me to
 THE PRINCIPAL MISTAKE OF OUR PRESENT
 METHODS AND SYSTEMS.

Every observer of human nature must be aware of the existence of an *unconscious process of thought* which is entirely apart from and independent of will power, and which—in speaking our mother tongue—is mainly instrumental in expressing our wants and desires. For instance, we go into a shop to purchase a pair of gloves. Our *conscious thought* is occupied in the *size, color, and quality of the gloves* we wish to purchase. All these different points *we readily express without one thought of the words to be used*. At the very moment of uttering these expressions, our thoughts are often occupied with some care or sorrow which is far removed from our bodily necessities. Still, in this *absent-minded* condition we buy our gloves, pay for them, and probably exchange some civilities with the attendant.

This *unconscious power* of thinking and speaking has so far never been touched upon by philologists and teachers, and only Schopenhauer and Hartmann among modern philosophers have alluded to it. Yet I am fully convinced, by practical experience and by close study of the human mind, that in acquiring a foreign tongue it is the mainspring of all proficiency.

Our own tongue is of course flesh and blood to us. We express our thoughts distinctly and clearly without being aware of any mental activity. I allude, of course, only to common, every-day experiences, and NOT to subjects which require conscious and concentrated thought.

Now let any one who has studied a foreign tongue for years according to the prevailing methods try to express such a simple sentence as, “*I should like to purchase some goods this morning. Would you be kind enough to accompany me?*”

It surely cannot be said, when we utter such a trite and commonplace phrase in our own tongue, that we even for a moment realize that any activity of thought is going on in our minds; but in the very instant we have this thought the tongue unconsciously utters it.

Yet, I say, let the graduate of any college try to give this sentence as rapidly in French as in English, and not one in a thousand will be able to do it.

He has to think about each single word; he searches the recesses of his memory for the proper equivalents; he weighs the different grammatical rules which may or may not govern this construction. In one word, he thinks *about* his French instead of thinking *in* French.

This is one of the greatest fundamental errors in the present grammatical systems, and the chief cause of failure in learning to speak; and to this alone it is to be attributed that *Latin* is no longer spoken by our scholars.

I choose this seemingly far-fetched illustration on purpose, as it will give me an occasion to show
**HOW AND SINCE WHEN OUR UNNATURAL
 METHODS HAVE COME IN VOGUE.**

It is an undeniable fact that up to the middle of the sixteenth century *Latin* was the language *spoken*, like a *living tongue*, in all cultivated and refined society throughout Europe.

And how was it taught? Undoubtedly by word of mouth, since the art of printing was almost unknown, and the old manuscripts were only within the reach of a very wealthy and privileged few.

With the birth of the press died the practice of oral teaching. The teacher gave the living tangible word over to the dumb book; the frequent repetition of *sound*, so vital to the learning of a foreign tongue, was lost, and the scholars remained dumb, like the book which they had been studying. For how could linguistic results be expected from the *intelligence*, instead of—as by the natural process—from the *ear* and the *tongue*?

Latin is more generally studied in our times than in the past; yet who is able to *speak* it?

It may be argued that, in taking Latin for an example, I overlook the fact that it is a *dead language*. But was it not equally dead five hundred years ago? And yet it was *spoken* because it was studied in a *common-sense, natural manner*.

And for the same reason—though they are *living tongues*—*French and German are not now spoken in our schools, because they are taught in a false, unreasonable, and unnatural way*.

The observation of these facts caused me to investigate the subject fully, and to determine in the first place
THE SIZE AND CHARACTER OF THE VOCABULARY OF EVERY-DAY CONVERSATION.

It is well known to philologists that the ordinary vocabularies of men are quite small; that children, who are able to express nearly every physical wish, are nevertheless armed with oftentimes less than 500, and sel-

dom over 1000 words. Nature provides the child with some subtle instinct by which he selects no word which is not of absolute and immediate importance. From the first uttered syllables on through his whole little life, not a moment is wasted in learning superfluous words.

Similar it is with the vocabulary of every-day life. It has occurred to more than one scholar that if he could only actually determine the extent and nature of these words he would be able to make the acquisition of modern languages a very easy matter.

Bayard Taylor, in his "Views Afoot," has declared himself able to acquire a *working knowledge of almost any language in less than a month*, and he goes on to show the character of the words he would learn. He naturally hit upon this idea; it was suggested by the very wide experience which he had, and the demand that his travels made upon him for acquiring a great many languages.

My own rather extended experience as a traveller and linguist coincides exactly with Bayard Taylor's.

In *all* languages there is what might be called

A STOCK VOCABULARY,

a quantity of words necessary in all walks of life, understood by all, learned first by all, needed and used by all, and with the great mass of people never increasing above a certain number, put variously by scholars at from one to three thousand. The nature of these words is about the same with all civilized nations.

The observation of many scholars has done much to determine this. The results of these studies are now

beginning to be felt in Germany especially, where a visit to the public schools will convince any one that school-children are no longer learning the interesting facts given in a well-known American grammar, that "*the Italian shoemaker has purchased an Egyptian antelope,*" or that "*the shoes of the Spanish peasant have a golden heel,*" or that "*the shepherds rested, and the swine and sows grazed.*" German text-books begin to be formed on a more sensible basis. Efforts have been made to select the words of every-day speech, and the results are such that, although still hampered by the influence of the old methods, the German schools are certainly producing the best linguists in the world.

The study of foreign languages has been made hitherto as difficult as possible, the memory in addition to the numerous abstruse rules being taxed with many words unnecessary for conversation in its initiatory stage.

An examination of most American grammars, manuals, conversation books and all the labored aids to this study, will show that the vocabularies are crammed with promiscuous words, which seem to have been drawn out of the dictionaries by some novel system of "legalized lottery"—not so much with a view to provide a *necessary vocabulary* as to do reverence to the dictionary, and give every word a fair chance of representation.

I hold that *a few idiomatic sentences, containing the most necessary words, should be learned in the commencement, enabling the student to at once begin conversation.* It is astonishing how naturally and rapidly other words will then be

learned, while at the same time the ear is becoming accustomed to the sounds, and the mind begins to *think* in them.

Lepsius, the celebrated scholar on Egyptian antiquities, limits

THE NUMBER OF WORDS NECESSARY FOR CONVERSATION ON ALL GENERAL TOPICS to six hundred. I take about four times that number, *i.e.*, 2,000–2,500, founding my estimate upon the fluency of speech usually attained by young men of between 15 and 18 years of age.

This number of words appears at first sight absurdly small, but if we remember that with 40 words we can construct 1,024,000 sentences of twenty words each, it will be seen that my estimate is strictly correct.

For persons interested in mathematical calculations, I give the following table :

From 6 words we can form 8 combinations of 3 words each ; from

WORDS.	COMBINATIONS.	WORDS.
8	16	4
10	32	5
12	64	6
14	128	7
16	256	8
18	512	9
20	1024	10
40	1,024,000	20

It is therefore self-evident what an enormous number of sentences may be formed with 2000 words, and that the

knowledge of them is absolutely sufficient for the common occurrences of every-day life.

It must also be remembered that if we really *know* 2000 words, we will *recognize* at least five to ten times as many more which are either derived from or closely related to them.

Aided and assisted by the works and the help of many teachers, I have made all possible efforts to select only those words which are and must be always employed in all transactions of our daily life.

Certainly, if a man in common life is able to do with 2000 words, it will *not* be a difficult matter to acquire his language, provided only these words are rightly selected. Nature never fails to select the proper ones. Men can only do it by long and extensive study.

The proper selection of the vocabulary of common life is the first distinguishing feature of the 'Meisterschaft System.'

But, highly important as this part of the work is, it must not be forgotten that

UNCONNECTED WORDS ARE NOT LANGUAGE,

and that in acquiring a foreign tongue we must have a framework, or rather a series of formulæ which contain the *peculiar constructions* of the language in question.

This is a very important point, as each and every language has

CERTAIN FORMS OF EXPRESSION, OR IDIOMS,

which are entirely and peculiarly its own, and which cannot be literally translated into any other tongue. For example we all say "*How do you do?*" Do

what? What are we supposed to be doing that we should be asked "*how we do it*"? This mode of salutation is just as peculiarly English as the German greeting, "*Wie geht es?*" or, literally, "*How goes it?*" is intrinsically German.

Yet, in order to master either of these, or any other language, we must learn their peculiar idioms almost mechanically. *We must free ourselves from that most misleading habit of translating literally from one language into another*, and must accustom ourselves from the very start to the foreign idioms and constructions.

This seems at first exceedingly difficult, and yet it is the only practical way in which real mastery of the foreign forms of speech can be reached. Grammatical rules will certainly assist us in so far as to give us a more or less lucid explanation of peculiar constructions and modes of expression, but only in rare instances can they give a *logical reason* for these peculiarities of language. For who can explain the involved constructions of the German tongue in a logical manner? Or who can give a logical reason for the way in which the French handle their pronouns? Such peculiarities of speech must be received as *facts*, and all we can do is *to practice these idioms and constructions* so fully that they become *natural* to us, and are uttered just as glibly as the English equivalents.

We all know that most grammars plunge the scholar directly into dry grammatical rules, and syntax, and long, tedious, ill-arranged vocabularies. The bulk of the ordinary scholar's time is consumed in learning hundreds of unconnected words, which, though of lit-

erary and etymological importance, are proven to be outside of daily or yearly wants, and learned only to be forgotten.

"This," says a highly accomplished American scholar in a letter to the *Evening Post*, "is the complaint of teachers and students everywhere. But now that in the '*Meisterschaft System*' a method has been devised, grounded on the laws actually governing the nature of '*volk*' vocabularies giving at once sentences formed of these words instead of silly phrases and useless vocabularies, introducing a scholar into an idiomatic, and not a literal study of the foreign tongue, its benefit and value can hardly be estimated. . . . I believe this is the method to be adopted throughout our schools. We study French, but the soul of our work is in English. We study German, but strive only to make good English from it. And so with Latin and Greek. And any one who has observed the results in our highest and our best institutions feels like hiding for shame. It is the wickedest sham that ever lurked about our life. I believe it will be bettered; and as I see the '*Meisterschaft System*' applied so sensibly to self-study it seems to me practical that *if its author can only be induced to visit America, it will be possible for him to carry on this work so far that it shall root up our wretched methods and work a reform straight through our schools.*"

It is an old established maxim that
 WHOEVER WISHES TO SPEAK A FOREIGN
 LANGUAGE MUST THINK IN IT;
 but, incontrovertible and true as this principle undoubtedly is, *the difficulty of thinking in the language itself is almost insurmountable.* When resident in a foreign country

among persons who speak nothing but their own vernacular, we gradually and imperceptibly catch their meaning, and in time become—as we have shown—so accustomed to the foreign sounds that we at last begin to think in them.

But *how* can this be accomplished in our *own* land? How is this *possible* when we are continually surrounded by our own countrymen, and are perpetually obliged to use our mother tongue?

We know that the study of grammar as practiced in our schools does not give us this ability. *Oral teaching* so called has also been tried, but with very indifferent success. *Robertson, Ollendorff, Otto, Prendergast, and Jacotot* attempted to solve the difficulty, and though the two last-named scholars started undoubtedly with correct ideas, they all failed to give us facility of speech. *Prendergast*, perhaps the most original mind among modern philologists, worked out a most able theory; but being himself no linguist, and unfortunately being totally blind, he was obliged to leave the practical part of his work to his assistants, who made—as he acknowledged himself to me—a most miserable failure in the compilation of his text-books.

My system, though far from being entirely original, combines the good features of *all* modern methods, and follows at the same time *nature's own way* as closely as possible. While *some grammars teach nothing but theory, I lay the greatest stress on practical mastery.* While others give nothing but a *number of ill-arranged French or German conversations*, and sneer at any grammatical study, *I give the English equivalent, and as much of the grammar as*

must be known for all practical purposes. While others, again, do not distinguish between the *language of literature and that of every-day life, I give the common vocabulary first, and leave other less necessary words for after-studies.*

In one word, *my system is, to use Dr. Schliemann's expression, "a scientific adaptation of the natural mode of mastering foreign tongues ;"* and while I gratefully acknowledge my obligation to the works of many grammarians, and especially to those of *Lehmann, Prendergast, and Jacotot, I claim that "the Meisterschaft System,"* so far as any scientific work can be original, is my own, and has been thoroughly tried by myself for more than 14 years, and most successfully used by teachers and scholars all over the Continent of Europe for the last three years.

A glance at the first few pages of the lessons will show

HOW I TEACH THE STUDENT TO THINK IN THE FOREIGN LANGUAGES THEMSELVES.

I give first what I call a *foundation sentence*, which contains a number of idiomatic peculiarities, and is composed of about 20 words most necessary for ordinary conversation. *As a native teacher is not always accessible, I have given the exact pronunciation of each word so clearly and distinctly that no mistake can possibly be made.*

The student must *not* attempt to learn the foundation sentence by heart, but read and repeat it aloud until it sounds perfectly familiar to his ear, and flows smoothly from the tongue without effort or mistake.

Of course he must read the *English* equivalent of the phrase first so that he may have a *general* idea of its meaning.

The *foundation sentence* is next divided into different parts, and having *perfectly* mastered the *pronunciation* the pupil may proceed to study the *meaning of each word*, so that he can follow the different transpositions and variations intelligently.

For in order *to accustom* the pupil to the *peculiar foreign constructions*, and to make him *familiar* with their *modes of thought and expression*, I form new and similar sentences, repeating the same constructions and some of the words learned. By introducing some nouns, adverbs, adjectives, or conjunctions, the sentences are continually altered and enlarged.

Short grammatical rules, or rather *hints*, are constantly given in the foot-notes, so that the student may understand what he is learning, and not simply work mechanically, as *Prendergast* erroneously recommends. *Practice and theory must be united.*

STUDY NEVER TO EXCEED TEN MINUTES AT A TIME.

After the learner has intelligently gone through the variations of Part I. he must *read and re-read them aloud for about 3-5 minutes.*

This done, the pupil will turn to the *English*, which, as will be observed, is printed on the *opposite* page, *repeating aloud from it the foreign equivalent as fluently and quickly as possible.*

He must, however,

NEVER TRUST TO HIS MEMORY.

If he cannot remember a word, or if he is not quite sure that he has given the foreign phrase correctly, he must immediately re-read the French

or German, and then give it once more from the English.

This exercise also must never be continued for more than five minutes, so that the *whole time of reading and translating is not to exceed ten minutes at a time ; but this must be repeated at intervals during the day, as often as the convenience of the pupil permits, but in no case less than three times a day. Always read and translate aloud.*

By these frequent repetitions the pupil not only masters the pronunciation thoroughly, but gets also perfectly familiar with the foreign sounds, which imperceptibly impress themselves so indelibly on his memory that after a few days he will find himself able to utter the foreign equivalents as fluently and unconsciously as his native English.

At the same time he has become so familiar with the foreign constructions and modes of thought that he will begin to form other similar sentences for himself, without making the slightest grammatical mistake. For this purpose the vocabulary must be used and the exercises translated.

The student must never begin a new division before he has gained perfect command and mastery over all the preceding sentences.

My rules strictly followed will undoubtedly lead to the most perfect success, as proved by the experience of thousands of my pupils.

THE AUTHOR.

PRONUNCIATION.

A correct pronunciation is the first and most essential consideration in speaking a foreign tongue.

Learn the pronunciation—if possible—from a native. Any person, however, who can read French may easily guide you, if you should experience difficulties in pronouncing a word.

Observe that :

a is always pronounced like our **a** in **father**.

e when short = *ě* is pronounced like **e** in **met**; when accented = *é*, or *è*, or *ê*, it is pronounced like **ai** in **air**.

i sounds like **ee** in **green**.

o is pronounced like our **o**.

u is very hard to pronounce, as there is no equivalent in the English language for this sound. It is so utterly different from anything in our tongue that the nearest approach we find to it is in “*u*,” in the word “*gude*,” in the Scotch dialect. To pronounce a French “**u**,” it is necessary to round the lips as if going to whistle and then sound an *eē*.

As a native teacher is not always accessible, and in order to make the lessons thoroughly useful for self-instruction, I have given the exact pronunciation after each word as clearly and distinctly as possible.

Directions for Private Study.

As all fluency of speech in a foreign language is mainly attained through the repetition of the different sounds, the pupil must not simply read, *but repeat aloud the sentences given, so that he can hear the sound of his own voice.*

He must begin with the **Foundation Sentence**, and read and repeat it *aloud*, until it sounds perfectly familiar to his ear, and flows smoothly from the tongue without effort or hesitation.

This, it will be observed, is *not* study, but *an exercise of the tongue and the ear.*

The pupil will naturally read the English equivalent of each sentence, so that he will have a *general* idea of its meaning, but *literal translation — word for word — is in this system strictly forbidden.*

He must *not* attempt to learn the Foundation Sentence by heart. By reading it often, it will unconsciously impress itself so indelibly on his memory that he cannot possibly forget it again.

Having perfectly mastered the *pronunciation* of the *Foundation Sentence*, the pupil may proceed to study *the meaning of each word of Division I.*, so that he may be able to follow the different transpositions and variations intelligently.

All the French variations of the first division must then be read and re-read aloud.

This exercise should last from three to five minutes only, so that no fatigue whatever is felt. After a correct and fluent pronunciation has been attained, the pupil will then turn to the English, giving aloud from it the

French equivalent without looking at the French pages.

He must, however, never trust to his memory. If he cannot remember a word instantly, or if he is not quite sure that he has given the French phrase correctly, he must immediately re-read the French, and then repeat it once more from the English.

This exercise also should never exceed five minutes, so that all in all about *ten minutes* may be given to the reading of the French, and the translating from the English into the French.

These short exercises must be repeated at intervals during the day as often as the convenience of the pupil permits, but in no case less than three or four times a day.

By these frequent repetitions, the pupil not only masters the pronunciation thoroughly, but secures the French sentences and idioms so accurately, that after a few days he will find himself able to utter the French phrases as fluently and unconsciously as those of his native tongue.

He will thus gradually and imperceptibly learn to think in French, and must for that purpose translate the exercises, and learn the words of the vocabulary by heart.

The student must **never begin a new sentence** before he has gained *perfect command and absolute mastery over all the preceding ones.*

These rules must be strictly followed, since it is only by constant repetition that real success can be attained.

These books are issued in a form intended expressly for the convenience of learners, and should not be bound, but kept in the soft cover so that the book can be doubled back. It is not a book intended to be preserved for bind-

ing or show, but should be always carried in the pocket and made a constant companion so that the spirit of the language shall impress itself thoroughly upon the mind of the student.

CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE TEACHER.

At the end of each lesson will be found Exercises for translation — French into English, and English into French.

These should be examined by a teacher.

At great personal inconvenience Dr. Rosenthal has established himself for a time in New York, thus placing himself in direct postal communication with every Subscriber in the United States, to answer all inquiries relative to study, and to correct all exercises sent to him.

THE GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Pupils who wish to study for colloquial purposes only, need not study them. They will be found useful however, and should be studied after all the sentences have been mastered.

The Meisterschaft System.

FRENCH.

PART I.

I.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.¹

I should like to make some purchases this morning: will you have the kindness to come with me to the French tailor's?

1.

I should like to make some purchases this morning.

I

should like (*or, would like*)

1) The student must—if possible under the guidance of a refined native Frenchman — read the “Foundation Sentence” until he can pronounce it smoothly and without the slightest hesitation. He must always read aloud, so that both his ear and tongue may get accustomed to the foreign sounds. The French intonation is peculiar; there is always a *slight rising* accent on the last syllable. The voice does not fall at the end of a sentence as in English, but rises slightly.

2) ‘*è*’ is pronounced like ‘*e*’ in our English word ‘*met.*’

L.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.¹

Je voudrais faire des emplettes ce matin;
 jě³ vou³-dray fair day⁴ zāng⁵-plēt sě mā-taing

voulez-vous avoir l'obligeance de venir avec
 vou-lēh vou zāv'woar⁶ lō-blēē-jāngs dē vē-nēer ā-věk

moi chez le tailleur français?
 m'woāh⁶ shay lē tā-yeŋr⁷ frāng say.

1.

Je voudrais faire des emplettes ce matin.
 jě vou-dray fair day zāng-plēt sě mā taing.

Je (*jě*)

voudrais (*vou-dray*)

3) 'ou' is pronounced like 'u' in 'rude,' only somewhat shorter.

4) If one word ends with s, z, x, t, d, n, and the next begins with a vowel or h mute, the two are for euphony's sake joined together, so as to form one word, as: veut-il = veŋ-tēl; voulez-vous aller = vou-lēh-vou-zah-lay; les hommes = lay-zom. The small arch (˘) denotes this joining of words.

5) 'a' in French has always the sound of 'a' in 'father.'

6) woāh is to be melted into one sound.

7) 'eu' is pronounced like 'ea' in 'early,' only longer.

to do (*or* to make)
 some
 shopping ; purchases
 this
 morning.

1. I should like to make some purchases.
2. I should like to do my (*mes*) shopping.
3. I should not like (*je ne voudrais pas*) to make my purchases.
4. I should not like to make my purchases this morning.
5. Would you like (*voudriez-vous*) to make your purchases (*vos emplettes*)?
6. Would you not like to make your purchases this morning (*ce matin*)?
7. Why (*pourquoi*) would you not like to make your purchases this forenoon?
8. Would you like to make your purchases at (*dans*) this store (*ce magasin*)?
9. Why would you not like to make your purchases at this store?
10. I should like to do my shopping at this store.
11. I should not like to do my shopping at this store.
12. I should not like to do it (= *it to do, le faire*)¹.

1) The English word 'not' must always be expressed by *two* negative words in French, viz. : 'ne—pas,' the first of which is placed before the simple verb, the other after it, as : *Je voudrais*, I should like ; *je ne voudrais pas*, I should not like.

faire (*fair*)

des (*day*)

emplettes (*äng-plët*)

ce (*sě*)

matin (*mă-taing*).

1. Je voudrais faire des emplettes (*day zāng-plët*).
2. Je voudrais faire mes emplettes (*may zāng-plët*).
3. Je ne voudrais pas¹ (*jě ně vou-dray pāh*) faire mes emplettes.
4. Je ne voudrais pas faire mes emplettes ce matin (*sě mă-taing*).
5. Voudriez-vous (*vou-drē-ēh vou*) faire vos emplettes (*vō-zāng-plët*)?
6. Ne voudriez-vous pas faire vos emplettes ce matin?
7. Pourquoi (*pouŕ-quo-ah*) ne voudriez-vous pas (*ně vou-drē-ēh vou pāh*) faire vos emplettes ce matin?
8. Voudriez-vous faire vos emplettes dans ce magasin (*lāng sě mă-gă-zaing*)?
9. Pourquoi ne voudriez-vous pas faire vos emplettes dans ce magasin?
10. Je voudrais faire mes emplettes dans ce magasin.
11. Je ne voudrais pas faire mes emplettes dans ce magasin.
12. Je ne voudrais pas le² faire (*lě fair*).

2) The so-called *Conjunctive Personal Pronouns*, 'me, thee, him, her, it, us, you, them,' are always placed immediately before the verb. The French conjunctive personal pronouns are:

me (<i>mě</i>), me	la (<i>lă</i>), her	nous (<i>noŭ</i>), us.
te (<i>tě</i>), thee	le (<i>lě</i>), it	vous (<i>voŭ</i>), you.
le (<i>lě</i>), him		les (<i>lay</i>), them.

13. I should like to do it (=it to do) this forenoon (*maintenant*)
14. Would you like (*voudriez-vous*) to do it?
15. Why (*pourquoi*) would you not like to do so (*le*)?
16. Would you like to go (*aller*) to (*à*)¹ this establishment
(*or* to this store)?
17. I should not like to go (*aller*) to this store.
18. Would you not like to go to the (*au* = to the) theatre
(*or* play = *spectacle*)?
19. He (*il*) would like to go to the theatre.
20. He would not like to go to the French theatre (*literally*: to the theatre French²).
21. My brother (*mon frère*) would not like to go to the
French theatre.
22. Why would he not like to go to the French theatre?
23. To which (*à quel*) store would he like to go?
24. Would you not like to go to Paris (*à Paris*)?
25. I should very much (*bien*) like to go to Paris.
26. She (*elle*) would not like to make her (*ses*) purchases
in (*dans*) this establishment.

1) We have three accents in French, viz: 1. *The acute accent* which is only placed over *e*, as *été*.—2. *The grave accent*, which is placed over the vowels *a, e, u*—*à, è, ù*.—3. *The circumflex accent*, which may be placed upon any of the vowels, as *âme, rêve*.

2) Under *c* we see a peculiar little hook which is called a cedilla (*une cédille*), and gives to *c* the sound of *s* before *a, o, and u*

The French place the adjective mostly after the noun, *i.e.*, *the theatre French*.

13. Je voudrais le faire ce matin.
14. Voudriez-vous le faire (*voû-drêê-êh voû lě fair*) ?
15. Pourquoi (*poûr-quo-âh*) ne voudriez-vous pas le faire ?
16. Voudriez-vous aller (*voû-drêê-êh voû zăh-lay*) à ¹ ce magasin (*âh sě mă-gă-zaing*) ?
17. Je ne voudrais pas aller (*pâh zăh-lêh*) à ce magasin.
18. Ne voudriez-vous pas aller au spectacle (*ôh spêc-tăh-kl*) ?
19. Il voudrait aller (*eel voû-drăy-tăh-lêh*) au spectacle.
20. Il ne voudrait pas aller au spectacle français ² (*frăng-say*).
21. Mon frère (*mong frair*) ne voudrait pas aller au spectacle français.
22. Pourquoi (*poûr-quo-âh*) ne voudrait-il pas aller (*ně-voû-drăy tēel pâh zăh-lêh*) au spectacle français ?
23. A quel (*âh kēll*) magasin voudrait-il aller ?
24. Ne voudriez-vous pas aller à Paris (*ně voû-drêê-êh voû pâh zăh-lêh âh Pă-rêê*) ?
25. Je voudrais bien (*byaing*) aller à Paris.
26. Elle (*ēll*) ne voudrait ³ pas faire ses emplettes (*say zăng-plēt*) dans (*dăng*) ce magasin.

3) *Je voudrais*, I should like, or I would like is conjugated thus :
 je voudrais (*jě voû-drăy*), I would like.
 tu voudrais (*tū voû-drăy*), thou wouldst like.
 il voudrait (*ēll voû-drăy*), he would like.
 elle voudrait (*ēll voû-drăy*), she would like.
 nous voudrions (*noū voû-drêê-ong*), we would like.
 vous voudriez (*voū voû-drêê-êh*), you would like.
 ils voudraient (*ēll voû-drăy*), they would like (*masc.*).
 elles voudraient (*ēll voû-drăy*), they would like (*fem.*).

Will you have the kindness to come with

me ?

will

you

will you? (*or, are you willing? do you wish? do you want to?*)

to have

the kindness

to

come (*or to come*)

with

mc. [The student must well distinguish between 'me' and 'moi'; the first is always placed *before* the verb; the second stands *after prepositions* and such affirming imperative forms as *donnez-moi, give me; apportez-moi, bring me*].

1) *Final consonants* are generally silent. A final consonant, however, *followed by a word that begins with a vowel or a silent h*, is pronounced with the next syllable, as if the two formed but one word, as: *veut-il* = veŭ tšĕl; *mes emplettes* = may zāng-plĕt; *voulez-vous écrire* = voŭ-lay-voŭ zay-kĭĕr.

2

Voulez - vous avoir l'obligeance de venir
 vou-léh vou ză-v'woār¹ lö-blē-jāngs də vĕ-nĕēr

avec moi?

ā-vek m'woāh

voulez (*vou-léh*)

vous (*vou*)

voulez-vous?

avoir (*ă-v'woār*)

l'obligeance (*lö-blē-jāngs*)

de (*dĕ*) [*de* before the infinitive of verbs means 'to,' but as a preposition, 'of' or 'from'].

venir (*vĕ-nĕēr*)

avec (*ā-vĕk*)

moi (*m'woāh*) [It would lead us too far if we were to explain here all the personal pronouns. The rules are given in the 4th, 5th, and 6th lesson.]

Final **c**, before a vowel, is sounded like **k**, as *du blanc au noir*=dū

blāng-kōh n'woāhr.

d, „ „

t, as *quand il est* = kāng tĕl-lay.

s or **x** „ „

z, as *ils ont*=ĕĕl zōng; *aux oncles*=ōh zōng-kl'.

1. Will you have the kindness to go (*d'aller*) with me to the store?
2. Why will you not have the kindness to come with me to the French store (= store French)?
3. I will (*or*, I am willing).
4. I am not willing (*or*, I do not wish to).
5. I want (*je veux*) to do my shopping this forenoon (*matin*).
6. When (*quand*) do you want to make your purchases?
7. I wish (*je veux*) to make my purchases to-morrow (*demain*) morning. Will you have the kindness to come with me?
8. I should very much (*bien*) like to go with you, but I have no time (*Literally*: But (*mais*) I have not [*je n'ai pas*] the time [*le temps*]).
9. Why (*pourquoi*) will you not go to the theatre with my brother (*mon frère*)?
10. I should very much (*bien*) like to go to the theatre with him (*lui*), but I have no time (*je n'ai pas le temps*).
11. Will you do it (*le*) for (*pour*) me?
12. I do not want (*je ne veux pas*) to do it for him.
13. Will you have it done (*or*, order it = *le faire faire*)?

1) *de* is apostrophed before words commencing with a vowel, as *de aller*=*d'aller*; *de écrire*=*d'écrire*, to write.

2) 'eu' is pronounced like 'ea' in 'early,' only much longer.

Je veux means I am willing, *or* I wish, *or* I want, *or* I will, and is conjugated thus:

je veux (*j' veü*), I am willing.
tu veux (*tü veü*), thou art willing.
il veut (*éil veü*), he is willing.
elle veut (*éil veü*), she is willing.

1. Voulez-vous avoir l'obligeance d'aller¹ (*dăh-lêh*) avec moi au magasin?
2. Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas avoir l'obligeance de venir avec moi au (*ôh*) magasin français?
3. Je veux (*veū*)².
4. Je ne veux pas (*jě ně veū pāh*).
5. Je veux faire mes emplettes ce matin.

6. Quand (*kāng*) voulez-vous faire vos emplettes?
7. Je veux (*veū*) faire mes emplettes demain (*dě-maing*) matin. Voulez-vous avoir l'obligeance de venir avec moi?
8. Je voudrais bien (*byaing*) aller avec vous, mais je n'ai pas le temps (*may jě nay pāh lě tāng*).

9. Pourquoi (*poūr-quô-âh*) ne voulez-vous pas aller au spectacle avec mon frère (*mong frair*)?
10. Je voudrais bien (*byaing*) aller au spectacle avec lui (*l'wēē*), mais je n'ai pas le temps (*may jě nay pāh lě tāng*).
11. Voulez-vous le faire pour (*poūr*) moi?
12. Je ne veux pas (*jě ně veū pāh*) le faire pour lui (*poūr l'wēē*).
13. Voulez vous le faire faire?

nous voulons (*noū voū-long*), we are willing.
 vous voulez (*voū voū-lêh*), you are willing.
 ils veulent (*ěēl veūl*), they are willing (*masc.*).
 elles veulent (*ěll veūl*), they are willing (*fem.*)

3) In English we use in questions and negations the auxiliary verb *to do*, as: *do you want to go? I do not want to go.* In French we have no corresponding auxiliary, and cannot express it. We simply say instead of '*do you want to go?*' = want you to go, *voulez-vous aller?* Instead of '*I do not want to go*' = I not want to go, *je ne veux pas aller.*

14. He does not want (*il ne veut pas*) to have it done..
15. Why will he not have it done for you?
16. Where (*où*) will you have it done?
17. Where will you have your (*votre*) coat (*habit*) done
(*or*, your dress made)?
18. Will you order (*faire faire*) your coat at (*chez*) my
(*mon*) tailor's (*tailleur*)?
19. Your tailor won't make my coat.
20. Why will he not have his (*son*) coat done at the
French tailor's?
21. The French tailor will not make my black (*noir*)
waistcoat (*gilet*).
22. Where will you have your black coat done?
23. Why will you not buy (*acheter*) your black coat at the
French tailor's?
24. Will you have your luggage (*bagage*) booked (*en-*
registrer)?
25. I will not have my luggage booked (*or* checked).
26. Why are you unwilling to have your luggage booked
(*or* checked)?
27. What (*que*) will you do?
28. What will you do this evening (*or*, to-night = *ce*
soir)?
29. Will you go to the theatre to-night?
30. No, sir, this evening I'll write a letter (*une lettre*) to
my uncle in London (*Londres*).

1) 'u' There is no equivalent in the English language for this sound. It is so utterly different from anything in our tongue, that the nearest approach we find to it is in 'u' in the word 'gude' in the

14. Il ne veut pas (*ēēl nē veū pāh*) le faire faire.
15. Pourquoi ne veut-il pas (*nē veū-tēēl pāh*) le faire faire pour vous?
16. Où (*ouū*) voulez-vous le faire faire?
17. Où voulez-vous faire faire votre habit (*vōt-rā-bēē*)?
18. Voulez-vous faire faire votre habit chez (*shay*) mon tailleur (*mong tā-yeūr*)?
19. Votre tailleur ne veut pas faire mon habit (*mōn-nā-bēē*).
20. Pourquoi ne veut-il pas faire faire son habit chez le tailleur français (*frāng-say*)?
21. Le tailleur français ne veut pas faire mon gilet noir (*jēē-lay n'wo-ār*).
22. Où voulez-vous faire faire votre habit noir (*vōt-rā-bēē-n'wo-ār*)?
23. Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas acheter (*pāh-zāsh-tay*) votre habit noir chez le tailleur français?
24. Voulez-vous faire enregistrer (*āng-ray-gis-tra*) votre bagage (*bā-gāhje*)?
25. Je ne veux pas faire enregistrer mon bagage.
26. Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas faire enregistrer votre bagage?
27. Que (*kē*) voulez-vous faire?
28. Que voulez-vous faire ce soir (*sē-s'wo-ār*)?
29. Voulez-vous aller ce soir au spectacle?
30. Non, monsieur (*mō-syeū*), ce soir je veux écrire (*jē veū zay-krēēr*) une¹ lettre à mon oncle à Londres (*ūhn lēt-rā mōn nong-kl' āh lōng-ār*).

Scotch language. To pronounce a French 'u,' it is necessary to place (or rather round) the lips as if going to whistle, and then sound an 'ee.'

31. What does he wish to do to-night?
32. What will you do with (*de*) this (*cette*) letter?
33. What is to be done? (*Literally*: What do)?
34. What's to be done in regard to (*de*) your luggage (*vos bagages*)?
35. What is to be done? He will not have his luggage (*ses bagages*) checked.
36. What do you want of me? (*Literally*: What me will you?)
37. What does he want of you?
38. He does not want to buy this black waistcoat.

39. Will you bring (*apporter*) my dinner (*dîner*)?
40. Bring (*apportez*) my dinner immediately (*or*, at once = *tout de suite*).
41. Bring my dinner at once, if you please (*s'il vous plaît*).

 3

to the French tailor's?

to (by; at the house of; at the store of)

the [Definite article. Compare the Grammatical Remarks. As conjunctive personal pronoun, '*le*' means 'him' or 'it.']

tailor

French [The French place the adjective *after* the noun—*i.e.*, the tailor French].

-
1. Why will he not come (*venir*) to-day (*aujourd'hui*)?

31. Que veut-il faire ce soir ?
32. Que voulez-vous faire de cette lettre (*sĕt lĕtt' r*) ?
33. Que faire ?
34. Que faire de vos (*vôh*) bagages ? (*Bagages* is mostly used in the plural).
35. Que faire ? Il ne veut pas faire enregistrer ses (*say*) bagages.
36. Que me voulez-vous ?
37. Que vous veut-il ?
38. Il ne veut pas acheter ce gilet noir (*cĕl nĕ veū pāh zāsh-tay sĕ jĕĕ-lay n'wo-ār*):
39. Voulez-vous apporter mon dîner (*voū-lĕh voū zăp-por-tĕh mong dĕĕ-nay*) ?
40. Apportez (*ăp-por-tĕh*) mon dîner tout de suite (*toū-d' s'weĕt*).
41. Apportez mon dîner tout de suite, s'il vous plaît (*sĕĕ-voū play*).

3

chez le tailleur français?

shay lĕ tă-yeūr frāng-say

chez (*shay*).

le (*lĕ*) [There exists only one form for the definite masculine article 'the' and the personal pronoun 'him' or 'it,' viz. 'le.']

tailleur (*tă-yeūr*)

français (*frāng-say*) [The adjective is mostly placed *after* the noun].

1. Pourquoi ne veut-il pas venir aujourd'hui (*vĕ-nĕĕr ôh-jour-dû-cĕ*)?

2. He won't come to-day, but (*mais*) he says (*il dit*) that (*que*) he wants to come to-morrow (*demain*).
3. Will you do me the favour (*le plaisir*) of coming with me ?
4. Where to (*où*) (then = *donc*?) [The French are very fond of adding this '*à**ne*' which cannot be translated into English].
5. I should like (*je voudrais*) to go to the English (*anglaise*) church (*l'église*).
6. I should like to buy (*je voudrais acheter*) a black (*noir*) waistcoat and a pair (*une paire*) of boots. Won't you do me the favour to accompany me (*de m'accompagner*, instead of *de me accompagner*) ?
7. I should like very much (*bien*) to go with you, but (*mais*) I have no time. (*Literally* : I have not the time = *je n'ai pas le temps*).
8. Have you (*avez-vous*) time (= the time) to go with me ?
9. No, sir, I have no time.
10. What have you to do ? (The French '*donc*' cannot always be translated. Compare phrase 4.)
11. I have much (*beaucoup*) to do.
12. I should like to accompany you, but I have no time.

1) '*Que*,' what, must be *apostrophed* before words commencing with a *vowel*, as : *qu'avez-vous* instead of *que avez-vous* ?

2) The auxiliary verb *j'ai*, I have, is thus conjugated :

j'ai (*jay*), I have.

tu as (*tū āh*), thou hast.

- 2 Il ne veut pas venir aujourd'hui, mais il dit (*may zēēl dēē*) qu'il (*kēēl*) veut venir demain (*dē-maing*).
3. Voulez-vous me faire le plaisir (*play-zēēr*) de venir avec moi ?
4. Où donc (*dong*)? (*Donc* can in this phrase not be translated).
5. Je voudrais aller (*jě vou-dray-zāh-lēh*) à l'église anglaise (*lay glēēse āng-glāyse*).
6. Je voudrais acheter (*jě vou-dray-zāsh-tay*) un gilet noir et une paire de bottes (*ūn pair dē bot*). Ne voulez-vous pas me faire le plaisir de m'accompagner (*mă-kong-păn-yēh*) ?
7. Je voudrais bien (*byaing*) aller avec vous, mais (*may*) je n'ai pas (*jě nay pāh*) le temps (*tāng*).
8. Avez-vous (*āvēh vou*) le temps d'aller avec moi ?
9. Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas le temps.
10. *Qu'avez-vous*¹ donc à faire (*kă-vēh-vou dong āh fair*) ?
11. *J'ai*² beaucoup (*bōh-kou*) à faire.
12. Je voudrais bien vous accompagner (*vou-ză-kong-păn-yēh*), mais (*may*) je n'ai pas le temps.

il a (*ēēl lāh*), he has.
 elle a (*ēll lāh*), she has.
 nous avons (*nou ză-vong*), we have.
 vous avez (*vou zāvēh*), you have.
 ils ont (*ēēl zōng*), they have (*masc.*).
 elles ont (*ēll zōng*), they have (*fem.*).

13. I have a great deal (= much, *beaucoup*) to do at my office (*bureau*).
14. Are you going to your office?
15. Go to my office at once (*tout de suite*).
16. Will you do me the favor to go to my office for me?

17. When (*quand*) will he come?
18. What in the world (*donc*=then) has he to do that he is unwilling to come to-day?
19. Will you do me the favor to call (*passer*) at the French shoemaker's (*cordonnier*)?
20. Do you pass (*passez-vous*) by (*à côté de*) my office?
21. I am passing (*je passe*) by (*à côté de*) the station (*la gare = depot, terminus*).
22. When you pass the station to-morrow, will you oblige me by calling on my uncle (= will you do me the favor of calling on (*chez*) my uncle)?
23. Pass me the bread (*le pain*).
24. Waiter (*garçon*), pass me the bread and the butter (*le beurre*).
25. Will you please (*veuillez*) pass me the bread and the butter? my little son (*mon petit fils*) is very hungry. (*Literally*: has great hunger = *a grand'faim.*)
26. Are you hungry? (*Literally*: Have you hunger = *avez-vous faim*?) No; but I am very thirsty (= I have much thirst = *j'ai bien soif*).
27. Will you please bring me a cup (*une tasse*) of coffee (*de café*)?
28. I should like very much to pass several (*quelques*) days (*jours*) with you, but I have no time.

13. J'ai beaucoup à faire à mon bureau (*āh mong bü-rōh*).
14. Allez-vous à votre bureau ?
15. Allez tout de suite (*tou-d'swêêt*) à mon bureau.
16. Voulez-vous me faire le plaisir d'aller à mon bureau pour moi (*poūr m'woāh*) ?
17. Quand (*kāng*) veut-il venir ?
18. Qu'a-t-il donc (*kă-têl dong*) à faire qu'il ne veut pas venir aujourd'hui (*ōh-jour-d'wêê*) ?
19. Voulez-vous me faire le plaisir de passer (*pās-sēh*) chez le cordonnier (*kor-don-yēh*) français ?
20. Passez-vous (*pās-sēh voū*) à côté de mon bureau ?
21. Je passe (*jě pass*) à côté de la gare (*gār*).
22. Quand vous passez à côté de la gare demain (*d'ē-maing*), voulez-vous me faire le plaisir de passer chez mon oncle ?
23. Passez-moi le pain (*paing*).
24. Garçon (*gār-song*), passez-moi le pain et le beurre (*ay lē beūr*).
25. Veuillez (*veū-yēh*) me passer le pain et le beurre ; mon petit fils a grand'faim (*mong p'tēē fēēs āh grāng faing*).
26. Avez-vous faim ? Non, mais j'ai bien soif (*s'woāf*).
27. Veuillez m'apporter une tasse de café (*ün tās d'kăh fay*).
28. Je voudrais bien passer quelques jours (*kēl-kē jour*) avec vous, mais je n'ai pas le temps.

29. He does not pass through your sister-in-law's garden (= through (*par*) the garden of Mrs. (*Madame*) your sister-in-law (*votre belle-sœur*).
30. Let us pass (*passons*) on the other side (*de l'autre côté*).
31. Will you please tell (*dire*) me, sir, where one (*on*) takes (*prend*) the tickets (*billets*) for Paris?
32. The tickets for Paris are taken on the other side (= one takes the tickets, &c.).
33. Will you please pass me your tickets, gentlemen (*messieurs*)?
34. Will you please get (*prendre*) your ticket at the ticket-office (*au guichet*), and pass into the waiting-room (*la salle d'attente*)?
35. Will you please tell me, sir, where the waiting-room is?
36. Will you please come with me?
37. Why have you no time to call on him (*lui*)?
38. Will you do me the favor of calling to-morrow morning (*matin*) at his house (= on him)?
39. Is he at home? (*Literally*: Is he [*est-il*] at him?)
40. Is she (*est-elle*) at home (*or, in*)?
41. Mr. B. is not at home, but Mrs. B. is within.
42. Is Mr. B. at home? (*Literally*: Mr. B., is he at home?)

1) *Passons, let us pass*, is the plural of the so-called *imperative*.

2) *Est-il, is he*, is the 3rd person of the singular of the auxiliary verb *to be*, which is thus conjugated:

je suis (*j' sū-êe*), I am.
tu es (*tū ay*), thou art.

29. Il ne passe pas par le jardin (*jär-daing*) de Madame votre belle-sœur (*mādām vot bell-seūr*).
30. Passons¹ de l'autre côté (*pās-song de lōt-koh-tay*).
31. Veuillez me dire (*dēēr*), monsieur, où l'on prend (*oū long prāng*) les billets pour Paris (*lay bēē-yēh pōūr Pārēē*)?
32. On prend les billets pour Paris de l'autre côté.
33. Veuillez me passer vos billets, messieurs (*mēs-yeū*) ?
34. Veuillez prendre (*prāng-dr*) votre billet au guichet (*ghēē-shay*) et passer à la salle d'attente (*sāhl-dāt-tāngt*).
35. Veuillez me dire, monsieur, où est la salle d'attente ?
36. Veuillez venir avec moi ?
37. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas le temps de passer chez lui (*lū-ēē*) ?
38. Voulez-vous me faire le plaisir de passer demain matin (*mā-taing*) chez lui ?
39. Est-il² (*ay-tēēl*) chez lui ?
40. Est-elle (*ay-tēēl*) chez elle ?
41. Monsieur B. n'est pas (*nay pāh*) chez lui, mais madame est chez elle (*ay shay zēēl*).
42. Monsieur B. est-il chez lui ? [The subject of every question if a noun is placed at the beginning of the phrase].

il est (*ēēl lay*), he is.

elle est (*ēēl lay*), she is.

nous sommes (*noū sōm*), we are.

vous êtes (*voū zayt*), you are.

ils sont (*ēēl song*), they are (*masc.*).

elles sont (*ēēl song*), they are (*fem.*).

43. Is Mrs. B. within?
44. I am very sorry (*je le regrette bien*), but Mr. B. is not at home.
45. Where is he gone to?
46. Master is gone to the office.
47. Are you going home? (*Literally* : Go you to you?)
48. The French shoemaker is not (*n'est pas*) at my house (=at me), he is at yours.

43. Madame B. est-elle chez elle?
44. Je le regrette (*rě-grět*) bien; mais monsieur B. n'est pas chez lui.
45. Où est-il allé (*oũ ay-těěl äh-lěh*)?
46. Monsieur est allé au bureau (*ay-täh-lěh ôh bü-rôh*).
47. Allez-vous chez vous?
48. Le cordonnier français n'est pas (*nay päh*) chez moi, il est chez vous.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Exercises and Words used in Common Conversation.

1

Of the definite article.

There are but *two* genders in the French language, viz.: the *masculine* and *feminine*.

This distinction applies not only to persons, but also to *inanimate objects*.

In order to indicate this distinction of gender, the *definite article* is *prefixed* to substantives.

There are *two forms* for the definite article—viz., *le* (*lě*) for the *masculine*, and *la* (*lāh*) for the *feminine* form.

Examples.¹

Masculine.

le père (*payr*), the father.

le fils (*fěēs*), the son.

le frère (*frayr*), the brother.

Feminine.

la mère (*mayr*) the mother.

la fille (*fěē-yě²*), the daughter.

la sœur (*seūr³*). the sister.

1) As I have only given words which every one *must* know, I beg that students will commit them to memory.

2) The liquid sounds are the most difficult ones in the French language. They are very sweet sounds. But it is almost impossible—even with physical demonstration—to show how they are produced. In the above word the ‘yě’ has a soft lingering sound.

3) ‘eūr’ has the sound of the English ‘ea’ in the word ‘early,’ only much longer.

Masculine.

le cousin (*couzaing*), the
cousin.

le beau-frère (*bōh-frayr*), the
brother-in-law.

le beau-père (*bōh-payr*), the
father-in-law.

le neveu (*ně-veū^s*), the nephew

le grand-père (*lě grāng-payr*),
the grand-father.

le petit-fils (*lě p'tēē-fēēs*), the
grand-child.

Feminine.

la cousine (*cou-zēēn*), the
cousin.

la belle-sœur (*bell-seūr*), the
sister-in-law.

la belle-mère (*bell-mayr*), the
mother-in-law.

la nièce (*nee-āyse*), the niece.

la grand'mère (*lă grāng-
mayr*), the grand-mother

la petite-fille (*lă p'tēēt-fēē-yě*),
the grand-child.

Rule: Before *nouns* beginning with a *vowel* or an *un-
aspirated* (i.e., mute) *h*, *le* and *la* are changed into *l'*, thus
forming but one word with the noun.

Examples.*Masculine.*

l'oncle (*lōng-kl*), the uncle.

l'ami (*lăh-mēē*), the friend.

l'homme (*lōm*), the man.

l'état (*lay-tăh*), the state.

Feminine.

l'amie (*lăh-mēē*), the friend.

l'assiette (*lă-syet*), the plate.

l'habitude (*lă-bēē-tiūd*), the

custom, habit.

Exercise.

1) Why will you not write to (*à*) my (*mon*) brother-in-law? — 2) My (*mon*) father-in-law will not go to the theatre. — 3) My son-in-law will not go to (*à*) Paris. — 4) My (*mon*) friend will write a French letter to (*à*) your (*votre*) brother-in-law. — 5) Why will he not buy (*acheter* = *āsh-tay*) this (*ce*) waistcoat (*gilet* = *jēēlay*)? — 6) My

(*ma*) sister-in-law will buy this waiscoat for (*pour*) my (*mon*) friend Charles. — 7) When will you dine (*dîner* = *dēē-nay*)? — 8) Will you please (*veuillez*) pass me this newspaper (*ce journal* = *joūr-nāhl*). — 9) Why will you read (*lire* = *lēēr*) this letter (*cette lettre*)? — 10) I should like to read your friend's letter (=the letter of your friend). — 11) When will you do your shopping? — 12) I should like to make my purchases to-day; will you be kind enough to accompany me to the shop?

Exercise.

1) Mon beau-frère ne veut pas aller à Londres (*London*). — 2) Votre amie veut aller au (*to the*) concert (*concert*; pronounce: *cōng-sair*). — 3) Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas écrire une lettre française à notre (*our*) agent (*āh-jāng*) à Marseille (*Mār-zě-yě'*)? — 4) Je ne veux pas acheter ce gilet. — 5) Quoi! il ne veut pas acheter ce gilet? — 6) Ma (*my*) tante (*tāngt* = *aunt*) ne veut pas acheter cette assiette (*ās-syēt*). — 7) N'avez-vous pas le temps d'aller au spectacle ce soir (*s'wo-āhr*)? — 8) Qu'avez-vous donc à faire que vous n'avez pas le temps d'aller à l'église avec moi? — 6) Veuillez me dire (*dēēr*), monsieur, si (*if*) l'on prend (*long-prāng*) les billets pour Paris au guichet de ce côté? — 10) Non, monsieur, de l'autre côté. — 11) Veuillez lui dire de faire tout de suite l'habit de madame. — 12) Avez-vous faim? Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas faim, mais j'ai grand' soif (*or*, bien soif).

1) Observe the liquid sound. Compare Note 2, page 50.

Of Declension (Cases).

There are four cases in the French declension, viz .

The Nominative (le nominatif).

The Genitive or Possessive (le génitif).

The Dative (le datif).

The Accusative or Objective case (l'accusatif).

1) There is only *one form* for the *nominative* and *objective* cases, both in singular and plural. They can only be distinguished by their *position* in the sentence. In order to *find* the *nominative*, we must ask 'Who'?; for the *objective* 'Whom' or 'What'? Ex.:

Le tailleur (tä-yeür) *fait* (fay) *le gilet*; *the tailor makes the waistcoat.*

Who makes the waistcoat? The answer is: *the tailor*. Therefore *le tailleur* is the *nominative case*, or the *subject* of the sentence. *What* does the tailor make? Answer: *the waistcoat*. Consequently *le gilet* is the *accusative* or the *object*. The construction of French phrases is, therefore, very simple—viz., *subject, verb, object*. The subject or nominative *precedes* the verb, the object or accusative *follows* it.

2) The *genitive* or *possessive case* replies to the question 'Whose,' 'of whom,' or 'of which'? It is known by the preposition **de** (*of*) which appears *either unchanged or contracted with the article*. The contraction takes place whenever *de* occurs before the masculine article *le* or the

plural-form (for both genders exists only *one* form, viz.: *les*). Ex. :

Singular : **du** père (instead of *de le père*), of the father
or the father's.

du tailleur (instead of *de le tailleur*), of the
tailor or the tailor's.

Plural : **des** frères (instead of *de les frères*), of the bro-
thers or the brothers'.

des sœurs (instead of *de les sœurs*), of the sisters
or the sisters'.

3) Before the *feminine article* **la**, however, or before
l', **de** remains unchanged, as :

de la mère, of the mother or the mother's.

de la sœur, of the sister or the sister's.

de l'homme, of the man or the man's.

de l'ami, of the friend or the friend's.

4) The *dative case* answers to the question '*to whom,*'
and is formed by putting the preposition **à** (*to*) before the
article, as :

à la mère, to the mother.

à l'homme, to the man.

Before the *masculine article* **le**, and before the *plural form* **les**, the dative *à le* is changed into **au** (singular masculine) and *à les* into **aux** (plural, both masculine and feminine). Ex. :

au (ōh) père (instead of *à le père*), to the father.

aux (ōh) frères (instead of *à les frères*), to the bro-
thers.

aux (ōh) tantes (instead of *à les tantes*), to the aunts.

Table of declension.

Singular.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>With the apostrophe.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> le (<i>lě</i>)	la (<i>lă</i>)	l'	} the } of the } to the } the
<i>Gen.</i> du (<i>dü</i>)	de la (<i>dě lă</i>)	de l'	
<i>Dat.</i> au (<i>ôh</i>)	à la (<i>â lă</i>)	à l'	
<i>Acc.</i> le (<i>lě</i>)	la (<i>lă</i>)	l'	

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> les (<i>lay</i>) the	} Only <i>one</i> form both for } the masculine, feminine } and apostrophe.
<i>Gen.</i> des (<i>day</i>) of the	
<i>Dat.</i> aux (<i>ôh</i>) to the	
<i>Acc.</i> les (<i>lay</i>) the	

Declension of Nouns.

Nouns remain *unchanged* in the *singular*.

The *plural* is generally formed as in English, by an *addition* of a *silent s* to the *singular*—viz., le père, the father, les pères, the fathers; l'ami, the friend, les amis, the friends; la cousine, the (female) cousin, les cousines, the (female) cousins.

T a b l e .

With the definite article.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> le père, the father.	la mère, the mother.
<i>Gen.</i> du père, of the father or the father's.	de la mère, of the mother or the mother's.
<i>Dat.</i> au père, to the father.	à la mère, to the mother.
<i>Acc.</i> le père, the father	la mère, the mother.

*Plural.**Nom.* les pères, the fathers.*Gen.* des pères, of the fathers
or the fathers'.*Dat.* aux pères, to the fathers.*Acc.* les pères, the fathers.*Plural.*

les mères, the mothers.

des mères, of the mothers
or the mothers'.

aux mères, to the mothers.

les mères, the mothers.

*With the apostrophe.**Singular.**Nom.* l'ami, the friend.*Gen.* de l'ami, of the friend
or the friend's.*Dat.* à l'ami, to the friend.*Acc.* l'ami, the friend.*Plural.*les amis¹, the friends.des amis, of the friends *or*
the friends'.

aux amis, to the friends.

les amis, the friends.

The indefinite article.

Besides the definite article, there is also an *indefinite one* for the singular, answering to the English *a* or *an*, viz. : **un** (eūng) for the masculine, and **une** (ün) for the feminine. Ex. : un oncle (eūn-nong-kl), an uncle ; un gilet, a waistcoat ; une lettre, a letter.

The indefinite article is thus declined :

*Singular (masc.).**Nom.* un (eūng²).*Gen.* d'un (deūng).*Dat.* à un (āh eūng).*Acc.* un (eūng).*Singular (fem.).*

une (ün) a.

d'une (dün) of a.

à une (āh ün) to a.

une (üne) a.

1) Pronounce : lay-zā-mēē ; day-zā-mēē ; ōh-zā-mēē ; lay-zā mēē.

2) 'eū' is pronounced like our 'ea' in 'early,' only longer.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> un frère, a brother.	une lettre, a letter.
<i>Gen.</i> d'un frère, of a brother or a brother's.	d'une lettre, of a letter <i>or</i> a letter's
<i>Dat.</i> à un frère, to a brother.	à une lettre, to a letter.
<i>Acc.</i> un frère, a brother.	une lettre, a letter.

General Rules.

1) The *definite article* must be employed in French before all nouns which are used in a *general sense* or which designate a *whole species of objects*. The definite article in such cases is not used in English, but must be employed in French, as:

L'homme (löm), man; *la nature* (nä-tür), nature; *la fortune* (for-tün), fortune; *le dîner* (dēē-nēh), dinner.

2) The *definite article* must be *repeated* before each substantive in a sentence, as:

Bring the salt, pepper and vinegar, *Apportez le sel, le poivre et le vinaigre* (äp-por-tēh lě sěl, lě po-ävr ēh lě vēē-nay-gr). The men, women, and children, *Les hommes, les femmes et les enfants* (lay zöm, lay fām ay lay zāng-fāng).

3) The possessor *follows* the objects possessed, and must be *preceded* by the definite article; for instance, *the brother's coat*, must be inverted = the coat of the brother, *l'habit du frère*; *my uncle's letter* = the letter of (or from) my uncle, *la lettre de mon oncle*.

W o r d s .

Decline (and learn by heart) the following words:

Habillement (m.). (<i>ă-bēē-yě-māng</i>)	Dress.
la redingote (<i>rě-daing-gōt</i>)	the overcoat.
l'habit (m.) (<i>lă-bēē</i>)	the coat <i>or</i> the dress.
le gilet (<i>jěē-lay</i>)	the waistcoat.
le pantalon (<i>pāng-tāh-long</i>) <i>only</i> <i>used in the singular.</i>	the trowsers.
le chapeau (<i>shā-pōh</i>) plural: <i>les</i> <i>chapeaux (lay shā-pōh)</i>	the hat <i>or</i> bonnet.
la cravate (<i>crāvāt</i>)	the necktie.
le faux-col (<i>fōh-cōl</i>)	the collar.
la chemise (<i>shě-mēēse</i>)	the shirt.
le mouchoir (<i>mou-shwōar</i>)	the pocket-handkerchief.
les bretelles (f.) (<i>bray-tell</i>) <i>only</i> <i>used in the plural</i>	the suspenders.
les bas (m.) (<i>bāh</i>)	the stockings
les bottes (f.) (<i>bōt</i>)	the boots.
le caleçon (<i>kă-lě-song</i>)	the drawers.
le gilet de flanelle (<i>flă-nel</i>)	the flannel waistcoat.
le bouton (<i>boū-tong</i>)	the button.
la boutonnière (<i>boū-tōn-yair</i>)	the buttonhole.
les gants (m.) (<i>gāng</i>)	the gloves.
les pantoufles (f.) (<i>pāng-toufl</i>)	the slippers.
la robe	the dress.
la robe de chambre (<i>shāng-br'</i>)	the morning-dress.
le jupon (<i>jū-pōng</i>)	the petticoat.
le peignoir (<i>pen-yōār</i>)	the wrapper.

Exercise.

1) Why will you not have your coat done at (*chez*) my tailor's?—2) Will you please write an English (*anglaise*) letter (=letter English) to our agent in (*à*) London? — 3) Why will he not buy these (*ces*) collars and pocket-handkerchiefs?—4) What will you do with (*de*) this (*cette*) letter? — 5) Why will he not make these trousers and this black vest (= vest black)? — 6) Will you please (*veuillez*) bring me (*m'apporter*) my dinner at (*à*) one o'clock (*une heure*=eūr)?

Exercise.

1) Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas aller avec moi (*with me*) chez (*to*) mon oncle?—2) Montez (*mong-tay* = *bring up*) mon bagage, s'il vous plaît, dans ma chambre (*shāng-br* = *my room*).—3) Apportez ce pantalon à mon tailleur, s'il vous plaît.—4) Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas me faire le plaisir d'aller avec ma sœur chez notre blanchisseuse (*blāng-shī-seūse*=*washerwoman*)? — 5) Que faire? Il ne veut pas monter votre bagage.

Of the regular verb parler, to speak.

There are in French *three regular conjugations* of which

the first ends in **er**, as **parler**, to speak.

„ *second* „ **ir**, „ **venir**, to come.

„ *third* „ **re**, „ **vendre**, to sell.

The *infinitive mood* is the *ground-form* of the verb, on which its conjugation depends.

What *precedes* the terminations *er*, *ir* and *re* is the *root* which remains always *unaltered* in regular verbs.

To the *root*, different terminations are added, by which *persons*, *tenses* and *moods* are distinguished, and which are common to all the verbs of the same conjugation.

All the *variable terminations* of the regular verbs are printed in *large italics*.

First Conjugation: parler, to speak.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Je parle (<i>jě pārl</i>), I speak.	nous parlons (<i>noū pār-long</i>), we speak.
tu parles (<i>tü pārl</i>), thou speakst.	vous parlez (<i>voū pār-lēh</i>), you speak.
il parle (<i>ēēl pārl</i>), he speaks.	ils parlent ¹ (<i>ēēl pārl</i>), they speak.
elle parle (<i>ēll pārl</i>), she speaks.	elles parlent (<i>ēll pārl</i>), they speak.

Imperfect.

Je parlais (<i>jě pār-lay</i>), I spoke.	nous parlions (<i>noū pār-lyong</i>), we spoke.
tu parlais (<i>tü pār-lay</i>), thou spokst.	vous parliez (<i>voū pārl-yēh</i>), you spoke.
il parlait (<i>ēēl pārlay</i>), he spoke.	ils parlaient (<i>ēēl pār-lay</i>), they spoke.
elle parlait (<i>ēll pār-lay</i>), she spoke.	elles parlaient (<i>ēll pār-lay</i>), they spoke.

1) The termination *ent* in the Present tense of all verbs is *silent*, as: ils donnent (*don*), ils pensent (*pāngs*), ils trouvent (*trōuv*), etc.

Preterite.

Je parlai (<i>jě pār-lay</i>), I spoke.	nous parlâmes (<i>noū pār-lâhm</i>), we spoke.
tu parlâs (<i>tü pār lâh</i>), thou spokst.	vous parlâtes (<i>voū pār-lâht</i>), you spoke.
il parla (<i>ēēl pār-lâh</i>), he spoke.	ils parlèrent (<i>ēēl pār-layr</i>), they spoke.
elle parla (<i>ēll pār-lâh</i>), she spoke.	elles parlèrent (<i>ēll pār-layr</i>), they spoke.

There is *but one way* of rendering the expressions :

I speak, I am speaking, I do speak, viz.: je parle. I spoke, I was speaking, I did speak, I used to speak, viz.: je parlais, etc.

In the *interrogative* and *negative forms*, the auxiliary *to do* cannot be expressed, as : 'Did he speak?' parlait-il? 'Will you not?' ne voulez-vous pas? 'Does he not speak?' ne parle-t-il pas? 'He does not pass,' il ne passe pas.

Present.

Interrogative form.

Est-ce que je parle ?¹⁾ do I speak ?
 parles-tu ? dost thou speak ?
 parle-t-il ?²⁾ does he speak ?
 parlons-nous ? do we speak ?
 parlez-vous ? do you speak ?
 parlent-ils (*pârl-tēēl*) ? do they speak ?

1) This form is nowadays always employed instead of the obsolete *parlè-je* ? and is pronounced : *ays-kě jě pârl*.

2) The *t* is inserted for euphony.

Negative form.

Je ne parle pas, I do not speak.
 tu ne parles pas, thou dost not speak.
 Il ne parle pas, he does not speak.
 nous ne parlons pas, we do not speak.
 vous ne parlez pas, you do not speak.
 ils ne parlent pas (*ēēl nē pārġl pāh*), they do not speak.

Negative-interrogative form.

Est-ce que je ne parle pas (*ays kē jē nē pārġl pāh*)? do
 I not speak?
 ne parles-tu pas? dost thou not speak?
 ne parle-t-il pas? does he not speak?
 ne parlons-nous pas? do we not speak?
 ne parlez-vous pas? do you not speak?
 ne parlent-ils pas (*nē pārġl tēēl pāh*)? do they not speak?

The *Preterite* is but rarely used in *ordinary conversation*, while it occurs frequently in narrative, anecdote, and in historical and other compositions.

The *Imperfect* is used in *description* of persons and things, and must be employed whenever in English the Imperfect 'I was' with the *present participle* is used, as 'I was speaking' = je parlais. For the other tenses, see Part III.

Conjugate in the same manner : aimer¹ (*ay-mēh*), to love or to like; penser (*pāng-sēh*), to think; donner (*dōn-nēh*), to give; arriver¹ (*ā-rēē-vēh*), to arrive; trouver (*trou-*

1) *Je* is apostrophed before a *vowel*, as j'aime; j'arrive; j'appor-tais, etc.

vēh), to find; *apporter*¹ (*ap-por-tēh*), to bring; *chercher* (*shēr-shēh*), to seek; *prier* (*prēē-ēh*), to pray *or* to beg; *tomber* (*tong-bēh*), to fall.

Words.

Chemin de fer (m.). (<i>shě-maing dě fair</i>).	Railroad.
la gare (<i>gār</i>),	the station, terminus, depot.
le billet (<i>bēē-yēh</i>),	the ticket.
le guichet (<i>ghēē-shay</i>),	the ticket <i>or</i> booking-office.
le surpoids (<i>sūr-pwoāh</i>),	the surplus, overweight.
le bagage } (<i>bā-gāhje</i>),	the luggage.
les bagages }	
le bulletin (<i>bül-taing</i>) de bagage,	the luggage-checke.
la salle d'attente (<i>sāhl dāt- tāngt</i>),	the waiting-room.
le quai (<i>kay</i>),	the platform.
le wagon (<i>vāh-gong</i>),	the railway-carriage.
le compartiment (<i>kong-par- tēē-māng</i>),	the railway-compartment
le coin (<i>cō-aing</i>),	the corner, corner-seat.
le train (<i>traing</i>),	the train.
le train express (<i>ex-pray</i>),	the fast-train.
le train omnibus (<i>ong-nēē- būs</i>),	the parliamentary train, slow train.
le conducteur (<i>kong-dük- teūr</i>),	the conductor.
le facteur (<i>fāk-teūr</i>),	the commissioner, porter.
la station (<i>stā-syong</i>),	the station.

le buffet (<i>bü-fay</i>),	the buffet.
le départ (<i>day-pâr</i>),	the departure.
le signal (<i>sin-yâhl</i>) du départ,	the starting-bell.
des hommes (<i>day zom</i>),	gentlemen.
des dames (<i>day dâhm</i>),	ladies.

Repas (*rêh-pâh*).

le déjeuner (<i>dây-jeü-nêh</i>),
le dîner (<i>dêe-nêh</i>),
le souper (<i>sou-pêh</i>),
le café (<i>kâh-fay</i>),
le lait (<i>lay</i>),
une tasse (<i>ün täs</i>),
une tasse de café au lait (<i>ôh lay</i>),
le thé (<i>tay</i>),
une tasse de thé.
la serviette (<i>sêr-vyêtt</i>),
le plat (<i>plâh</i>),
une assiette (<i>äs-syêtt</i>),
le couteau (<i>cou-tôh</i>)
<i>les couteaux</i> (<i>cou-toh</i>),
la fourchette (<i>fouër-shêtt</i>),
la cuiller (<i>kwêe-yêh</i>),
la carte du jour,
le couvert (<i>cou-vayr</i>),
le pain (<i>paing</i>),

Meals.

the breakfast.
the dinner.
the supper.
the coffee.
the milk.
a cup.
a cup of coffee (with milk).
the tea.
a cup of tea.
the napkin.
the dish.
a plate.
the knife.
the knives.
the fork.
the spoon.
the bill of fare.
the cover (the knife, fork, plate, spoon, and napkin)
the bread.

le beurre (<i>beūr</i>),	the butter.
le verre (<i>věrr</i>),	the glass.
un verre d'eau (<i>doh</i>),	a glass of water.
le sel (<i>sěll</i>),	the salt.
le poivre (<i>poāvr</i>),	the pepper.
le vinaigre (<i>věē-naygr</i>),	the vinegar.
l'huile (<i>lwēēl</i>),	the oil.

Exercise.

1) I should like (*je voudrais bien*) to go to the theatre with you this evening, but I have no time. — 2) Have you no time to go to church (*à l'église*) with me? — 3) Why have you no time to call at my tailor's? — 4) Will you please do me the favor to call at my friend's uncle when you pass by the post-office (*le bureau de poste*)? — 5) Speak¹ French to my sister-in-law; she does not understand (*elle ne comprend pas* = *ěll ně kong-prāng pāh*) English (*anglais* = *āng-glay*). — 6) How do you call in French (*Que veut dire* (say) *en français* = *āng frāng-say*)? — 7) Waiter, bring me (*apportez-moi*) a cup of coffee (with milk) and an English paper (*un journal anglais* = *joūr-nāhl āng-glay*). — 8) He arrives by (*par*) this train. — 9) When will you do your shopping (*vos emplettes* = *vo-zāng-plet*)? — 10) I should like to do my (*mes*) shopping this forenoon (*ce matin*); will you do me the favor to accompany me (*de m'accompagner*)? — 11) Will you please tell me, Sir (*veuillez me dire, monsieur*), if the tickets to B. are taken at

1) Parlez; the imperative form.

the (*au*) ticket-office on (*de*) this side (*ce côté*) (=if one takes (*si l'on prend*) the tickets at the ticket-office, etc.)? — 12) The tickets to B. are taken at the ticket-office on the other side (*de l'autre côté*)=(one takes [*on prend*] the tickets, etc.)

Exercise.

1. Parlez-vous français? — Je le parle un peu (eūng peū=*a little*).—Je le parle assez (ās-say=*sufficiently*) pour me faire comprendre (kong-prāng-dr=*to understand*). — 2) Ne parlez pas si (*so*) vite (vēēt=*quick, fast*).—3) Parlez-moi français. — J'ai beaucoup de peine (payne=*much difficulty*) à parler français. — Mais vous prononcez (prō-nong-sēh=*pronounce*) bien. — 4) Allez déjeuner. Le déjeuner est prêt (pray=*ready*). — J'ai grand faim. — J'ai bon appetit (āp-pay-tēē=*a good appetite*). — 5) Qu'avons-nous (*what have we*) à déjeuner? Voulez-vous déjeuner avec nous? Voulez-vous du café ou (*or*) aimez-vous mieux (m'yeū=*do you prefer*) du chocolat (*chocolat*)? Voulez-vous du jambon (jāng-bong = *some ham*) pour votre déjeuner? — 6) Il est temps de dîner.—A quelle heure (āh kell eūr=*at what o'clock*) dinez-vous aujourd'hui? — Où sont ('song' = *are*) les couteaux, les fourchettes, les cuillers, les verres et le tire-bouchon (tēēr-boū-shong = *cork-screw*)?

The Meisterschaft System.

FRENCH

PART II.

II.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE

Did not the physician whom we saw in the waiting-room of the Northern Railway-station tell him, that the persons with whom your sister-in-law came here from Cologne, bought a house in Church Street.

L

The physician whom we have seen at the waiting-room of the Northern Railway-station.

1) oū is to be pronounced like 'u' in 'rude', only somewhat shorter.

2) ǣ like 'a' in 'father'; ǣ is pronounced a little shorter.

3) ū-ēē is to be pronounced like *one* sound.

4) eū is pronounced like 'ea' in 'early', only much longer.

II.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Le médecin que nous avons vu à la salle
lě maid-saing kě nou¹⁾ zāvong vū ah²⁾ lā sāhl
d'attente de la gare du Nord, ne lui a-t-il pas dit
dāt tāngt dē lā gār dū nōr nē lū-ēē³⁾ ah tseel pah dēē
que les personnes avec lesquelles madame votre
kě lay pēr-sōn ā-věk lay-kěll mǎ-dām vōt
belle-sœur est venue ici de Cologne, ont-acheté
bēll - seur⁴⁾ ay vē-nū ēē-sēē dē kō lōn-yē⁵⁾ ōng tǎsh-tay
une maison dans la rue de l'église?
ūn may-zong dāng lāh rū dē lay-glēēze

1.

Le médecin que nous avons vu à la salle
lě maid-saing kě nou zāvong vū ah lā sāhl
d'attente de la gare du Nord.
dāt-tāngt dē lā gār dū nōr

5) The so-called liquid sounds are the most difficult ones in the French language. They are very sweet sounds. But it is almost impossible to show how they are produced. In the above word the 'yē' has a soft lingering sound.

The physician

whom (or *which, what*)

we have	I have	we have
	thou hast	you have
	he has	they have, <i>masc.</i>
	she has	they have, <i>fem.</i>

(Compare the table of *avoir, to have*, in the Grammatical Remarks.)

seen

whom we have seen

in the waiting-room of

the Northern Railway-station. (*Literally*: the station of the North.)

-
1. Did you not see my sister-in-law? (*or, Have you not seen, etc.?*)
 2. Has he not seen Mr. D. at the waiting-room?
 3. I saw (*or, I have seen*) the English physician.
 4. What (*que*) have you seen?
 5. What did you see (*or, What have you seen*) at his office (*à son bureau*)?
 6. What did he say? (*or, What has he said [dit]*)?
 7. What did you buy? (*or, What have you bought [acheté]*)?
 8. Why have you not written (*écrit*) to the French physician?
 9. When did you speak to Mrs. B. about (*de*) this affair (*cette affaire*)?

Le médecin (*lě maid-saing*)

que (*kě*) (There is only one form, viz. : *que*, for our relative pronouns *whom*, *which* and *what*.)

nous avons (*noū-xǎ-vong*). 1st person plural of :

J'ai (*jay*)

tu as (*tū āh*)

il a (*ēil āh*)

elle a (*ēll āh*)

nous avons (*noū-xǎ-vong*)

vous avez (*voū-xǎ-vēh*)

ils ont (*ēēl song*), *masc.*

elles ont (*ēll song*), *fem.*

vu (*vü*)

que nous avons vu

à la salle d'attente de (*āh lā sǎhl dāt-tāngt dē*)

la gare du Nord (*lǎ gār dü Nōr*).

-
1. N'avez-vous pas vu ma belle-sœur (*bēll-seūr*) ?
 2. N'a-t-il pas vu monsieur D. (*day*) à la salle d'attente ?
 3. J'ai vu le médecin anglais (*āng-lay*).
 4. Qu'avez-vous vu (*kā-vēh voū vü*) ?
 5. Qu'avez-vous vu à son bureau (*āh song bü-roh*) ?
 6. Qu'a-t-il dit (*kā-tēēl dēē*) ?
 7. Qu'avez-vous acheté (*kā-vēh voū zāsh-tay*) ?
 8. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas écrit (*pāh zay-crēē*) au médecin français ?
 9. Quand avez-vous parlé (*quāng tā-vēh voū pār-lay*) à madame B. (*bay*) de cette affaire (*sēt-tāf-fair*) ?

10. What have you done (*fait*), waiter (*garçon*)?
11. You have checked (*or* booked, *fait enregistrer*) my travelling-rug (*ma couverture de voyage*).
12. What is the matter with you? (*Literally*: What have you)?
13. What is the matter with him? (*or*, What ails him? = what has he)?
14. What is the matter with her? (*or*, What ails her)?
15. What is the matter with your sister-in-law?
16. *Nothing*¹ is the matter with me (=I have nothing).
- 17 I don't know (*je ne sais pas*) what (*ce que*) is the matter with me (=what I have).
18. What is the matter with you? You do not look well. (*Literally*: You have not good look, *bonne mine*.)
19. What in the world (*donc*) is the matter with your brother-in-law? He does not look well.
20. You are right. (*Literally*: You *have* right, *raison*). He looks badly. (*Literally*: he has bad look, *mauvaise mine*).
21. Your friend does not look well. Is he ill (*malade*)?
22. I have a (*or* the) headache (*mal à la tête*).
23. He has a headache and is obliged (*obligé*) to keep (*garder*) his room (= the room, *la chambre*).
24. Is she not pale (*pâle*)? Yes, Sir, she is looking ill.
25. Waiter, this fillet (*or* steak) does not look nice.

1) *Nothing* is always expressed by two words in French, viz.: *ne-rien*, the first of which, '*ne*,' must always be placed *before* the

10. Qu'avez-vous fait, garçon (*fay gār-song*)?
11. Vous avez fait enregistrer ma couverture de voyage (*voū sā-vēh fay tāng-ray-jīs-tray mäh cou-vēr-tiūr de voāh-jāsh*)?
12. Qu'avez-vous (*kā-vēh-voū*)?
13. Qu'a-t-il (*kā-tēl*)?
14. Qu'a-t-elle (*kā-tēll*)?
15. Madame votre belle-sœur qu'a-t-elle donc (*kā-tēll dong*)?
16. Je n'ai rien (*rē-āing*).
17. Je ne sais pas ce que j'ai (*jě nē say pāh s'kě jay*).
18. Qu'avez-vous? Vous n'avez pas bonne mine (*bōn mēēn*).
19. Monsieur votre beau frère qu'a-t-il donc? Il n'a pas bonne mine (*bōn mēēn*).
20. Vous avez raison (*ray-zong*). Il a mauvaise mine (*mō-vayz mēēn*).
21. Votre ami n'a pas bonne mine. Est-il malade (*ay-tēl mäh-lāhd*)?
22. J'ai mal à la tête (*māhl ā lā tait*).
23. Il a mal à la tête, et est obligé de garder la chambre (*ay tō-blē-jay dē gar-āēh lāh shāng-br*).
24. N'est-elle pas pâle (*pāhl*)? Oui (*ou-ēē*) monsieur, elle a mauvaise mine (*mō-vayz mēēn*).
25. Garçon, ce fillet (*fēē-lay*) n'a pas bonne mine (*mēēn*).

verb, as : *il n'a dit rien*, he said nothing, or he did not say anything.

26. Waiter, take this steak away (*empportez* = take away); it does not look nice.
27. *Why! what is the matter with you?*¹ I am suffering with the tooth-ache. (*Literally*: What have you then? I have pain [*mal*] in the teeth [*aux dents*].)
28. My brother is obliged to keep his room (*la chambre*); he is suffering with the tooth-ache.
29. My throat pains me. (*Literally*: I have pain [*mal*] in the throat [*à la gorge*].)
30. I should like to go to bed (*aller me coucher*); my throat pains me.
31. *Why! what is the matter with him?*
32. He feels sleepy; he wants to go to bed. (*Literally*: He has sleep [*il a sommeil*]; he will go to bed.)
33. She feels sick (= She has pain *at the heart* [*au cœur*]).
34. *I don't know* (*je ne sais*)² what is the matter with me; but I do not feel well (= I am ill [*mal*] at my ease [*à mon aise*].)
35. I feel sleepy (= I have sleep [*sommeil*]); I want to go to bed.
36. I am very thirsty (= I have great thirst [*bien soif*]); waiter, give me a glass of water (*un verre d'eau*).

1) All these idiomatic expressions with *avoir*, to have, must be very thoroughly studied. The French cannot say: *I am hungry*, but *I have hunger*, &c. I have given the most common idioms of *avoir*, to have, in the above sentences. The following list will be found useful:

j'ai faim (*faing*), *I am hungry*.

j'ai soif (*s'woâf*), *I am thirsty*.

j'ai raison (*ray-zong*), *I am right*.

j'ai tort (*tore*), *I am wrong*.

j'ai sommeil (*sôm-mê-yê*), *I feel sleepy*.

qu'avez-vous, what is the matter with you?

je n'ai rien, nothing is the matter with me.

j'ai mal à la tête, I have the headache.

26. Garçon, emportez ce filet, il n'a pas bonne mine.
27. *Qu'avez-vous*¹ donc ? J'ai mal aux dents (*mäll oh däng*).
28. Mon frère est obligé de garder la chambre (*shāng-br*) ;
il a mal aux dents (*mäll oh däng*).
29. J'ai mal à la gorge.
30. Je voudrais bien aller me coucher (*kōō-shay*) ; j'ai mal à
la gorge.
31. Qu'a-t-il donc ?
32. Il a sommeil (*sōm-mě-yě*) il veut aller se coucher.
33. Elle a mal au cœur (*ōh keūr*). (Only used of nausea.)
34. Je ne sais² ce que j'ai, mais je suis mal à mon aise (*jě
s'wēz mäll āh mon-naize*).
35. J'ai sommeil (*som-mě-yě*) ; je veux aller me coucher.
36. J'ai bien soif ; garçon, donnez-moi un verre d'eau (*eūng
vērr dōh*).

*J'ai mal aux dents (däng), I have
the tooth-ache.*

*J'ai mal à la gorge, my throat
pains me.*

J'ai mal aux oreilles (oh zō-rěyě), my ears pain me.

Compare the grammatical remarks on the 'idiomatic expressions of
avoir.'

2) *I do not know* is given either by : *je ne sais pas*, or oftener by :
je ne sais (jě ně say).

*J'ai mal au ventre (vāng-tr'), I
have the stomach-ache.*

*J'ai mal aux yeux (oh z'yēūh), my
eyes pain me.*

37. Give me the bill of fare (*la carte du jour*) waiter; I am very hungry (= I have great hunger [*grand' faim*]).
38. The tailor has not yet (*encore*) brought (*apporté*) your coat.
39. Has not the laundress (*la blanchisseuse*) brought (*rapporté*) my linen (*mon linge*) yet?
40. Yes, sir, she has brought it and I have put it on (*sur*) your bed (*lit*). (*Literally*: She *it*¹ has brought and I *it*¹ have put, &c.)
41. Did you speak to her when she brought my linen? (*Literally*: To *her* [*lui*] have you spoken, &c.?)
42. Did you see him last evening? (= *Him*¹ have you seen, &c.?)
43. We saw him (= *We him*¹ *have seen*) this morning as he was going (*il allait*) to the post office (*au bureau de poste*).
44. Did you understand me? (*Literally*: *Me*¹ have you understood?)
45. No, sir, I did not understand you (= I not you have understood).

1) The difficulty in the use of the 'conjunctive personal pronouns' is in their proper position. We give a table of them on page 102. Observe the following rules:

a) The nominative cases '*je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*' precede the verb, as in English, as: '*I speak, je parle*'; '*we go, nous allons*,' &c.

b) In *interrogative sentences* they are placed *immediately after* the verb, as *parlez-vous? voulez-vous? donne-t-il?* &c., while the auxiliary *do you, does he?* &c., is never expressed.

37. Donnez-moi la carte du jour, garçon (*lā cart dü jōūr, gār-song*); j'ai grand' faim (*grāng faing*).
38. Le tailleur n'a pas encore (*pāh-zāng-kōr*) apporté votre habit (*vōt-rā-bēē*).
39. La blanchisseuse (*blāng-shī-seūze*) n'a-t-elle pas encore rapporté mon linge (*pāh-zāng-kōr rāp-por-tay mong laingsh*) ?
40. Oui monsieur, elle l'a¹ apporté et je l'ai¹ mis (*mēē*) sur (*sūr*) votre lit (*lēē*).
41. Lui avez-vous parlé¹ quand elle a apporté mon linge (*kāng tēll-lū āp-por-tay mong laingsh*) ?
42. L'avez-vous vu¹ hier soir (*yair sivoār*) ?
43. Nous l'avons vu¹ ce matin (*sē mātaing*) quand il allait au bureau de poste.
44. M'avez-vous compris¹ (*cong-prēē*) ?
45. Non, monsieur, je ne vous¹ ai pas compris (*jē nē voū zay pāh cong-prēē*).

c) The *dative* and *accusative* cases, *me te, lui, le, la, nous, vous, leur, les*, are placed *immediately before* the verb in a *simple tense*, and before its *auxiliary* in a *compound one*, as: Je *vous* donne, I give you; il *me* comprend, he understands me; je *vous* ai compris, I have understood you; il *m'a* vu, he has seen me; je *leur* ai dit, I have told them.

d) In negative sentences *ne* is placed *directly after the subject* and *before the governed pronoun*, as: il *ne m'a* pas vu; vous *ne m'avez* pas compris; je *ne vous* ai pas vu; ne *lui* a-t-il pas donné? je *ne leur* ai pas dit; ne *lui* a-t-il pas dit?

46. I did not understand you. You are speaking too (*trop*) fast (*vite*). (*Literally*: I not *you* have understood, &c.)
47. My brother understood him; he speaks English (*anglais*) pretty well (*passablement*).
48. She is wrong (=She has wrong 'tort').
49. Your friend is (=has) wrong; Mr. N. has passed (*or* spent, lived) three (*trois*) years (*ans*) in Paris.
50. What do you think of the French language (*la langue*)? Do you not find it (=her¹) very difficult (*difficile*)?
51. Why did you not brush (*brossé*) my clothes, waiter?
52. Waiter, brush my clothes and black (*cirez*) my boots.
53. Why did you not bring me my breakfast? (= Why not *me* have you brought, &c.)

 2

Did he not tell him?

Not

to him (*or* to her). There is only *one* form for both pronouns,
viz. : ' *lui* '

has he

1) *her*, because it refers to ' *la* ' langue. fem.

46. *Je ne vous ai pas compris; vous parlez trop vite*
(*trô vëët*).
47. *Mon frère l'a compris; il parle passablement anglais*
(*pă-să-blë-mâng tâng-glây*).
48. *Elle a tort* (*tôr*).
49. *Votre ami a tort; monsieur N. a passé trois ans*
(*trô-âh zâng*) à Paris.
50. *Que pensez-vous de la langue (lâng) française? Ne lui*
trouvez-vous pas bien difficile (dî-fëë-sëël)?
51. *Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas brossé mes habits, garçon*
(*may zâ-bëë gar-song*)?
52. *Garçon, brossez mes habits et cirez (sëë-ray) mes*
bottes.
53. *Pourquoi ne m'avez-vous pas apporté mon déjeuner*
(*në mâ-vay vou pâh zâp-por-tay mong day-jeû-nay*)?

2

Ne lui a-t-il pas dit?

në lû-ëë a-tëël pâh dëë

ne-pas (The English negation *not* is almost always expressed by
ne-pas.)

lui

a-t-il (The "t" in questions is added for euphony, but only in the
3d person singular when the verb which precedes *il* or *elle* or *on*
[one] ends in a vowel.)

has he not to him

said; told

has he not told him; did he not tell him?

-
1. Did he not tell you to go to the station?
 2. Have I not told you to do it at once?
 3. Why did you not tell him to write this letter?
 4. I have told him so (= I *it to him*¹ have told), but he will not do it.
 5. Why did he not give you the knives (*les couteaux*)?
 6. Why did you give him my friend's address? (= the address of my friend)?
 7. Why did you not tell him that I did not understand him?
 8. Did you not understand me?
 9. Why have you not told him that we have no time to lose (*à perdre*)?
 10. Have I not told you that he will not send (*envoyer*) your coat?
 11. Why did you not tell him *not*² to go to his office?

1) When a verb governs *two* pronouns, they are both placed *immediately before* the verb, so that the one in the *dative comes first* and the *accusative follows*.

This rule applies only to the following pronouns: *me le*, it me (or to me); *te le*, it thee (or to thee); *nous le*, it us (or to us); *vous*

ne lui a-t-il pas

dit

ne lui a-t-il pas dit ?

-
1. Ne vous a-t-il pas dit d'aller à la gare ?
 2. Ne vous ai-je pas dit de le faire tout de suite
(*tōōt-'sūēēt*) ?
 3. Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas dit d'écrire cette
lettre ?
 4. Je le lui¹ ai dit, mais il ne veut pas le faire.
 5. Pourquoi ne vous a-t-il pas donné les couteaux (*koū-toh*) ?
 6. Pourquoi lui avez-vous donné l'adresse de mon ami
(*dě mōn nā-mēe*) ?
 7. Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas dit que je ne l'ai pas
compris (*cong-prēē*) ?
 8. Ne m'avez-vous pas compris ?
 9. Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas dit que nous n'avons
pas de temps à perdre (*tāng āh pēr-dr*) ?
 10. Ne vous ai-je pas dit qu'il ne veut pas envoyer
votre habit (*kēēl nē veū pāh zāng-voāh-yēh vot-rā-bēē*) ?
 11. Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas dit de ne pas² aller à
son bureau (*nē pāh zā-lay āh song bü-rōh*) ?

le, it you (or to you). Ex. Il *me* le donne, he gives it to me. Je *vous* l'ai donné, I gave it you. But observe that one always says: *le lui*, it to him (or to her), and *le leur*, it to them.

2) Ne pas is always placed together before the infinitive and not separated.

12. Why has he done so (= it) ?
13. He did not tell me that one (*que l'on*) takes (*prend*) the tickets at the ticket-office on (*de*) this side.
14. Did he not write to them (*leur*) that I wanted (*je veux*) a front room (*une chambre donnant sur la rue*) (= giving towards the street) ?
15. Why did you not write to them that we refused (*refusé*) the draft (*la traite*) ?
16. He wrote me about it (= he me it has written), but I forgot it (= I it have forgotten (*oublié*)).
17. He has not brought me my breakfast.
18. Why did you not bring him his (*son*) dinner ?
19. I told him so (= I it to him have said), but he will not do it.
20. My brother has asked (*chargé*) me to buy him three (*trois*) shirt-buttons (= buttons of shirt, *boutons de chemise*).
21. Did I not commission (*or order*) you to buy my gloves at the French glovemaker's (*le gantier*) ?
22. Waiter, did you order (= have you made come) a cab (*un fiacre*) ?
23. The servant (*le commissionnaire*) told me, that the carriage (*la voiture*) is at the door (*à la porte*).
24. Did you check my luggage (*mes effets*), and have you given him the check (*le bulletin*) ?
25. I gave it to him last evening (*hier soir*), but he mislaid it (= he it has mislaid, *égaré*).

1) **On** = one, they, people. For euphony's sake the French say

12. Pourquoi l'a-t-il fait (*lāh-t'ēl fay*)?
13. Il ne m'a pas dit que l'on¹ prend les billets au guichet de ce côté (*lōng prāng lay bēē-yēh ōh ghēē-shay dē sē kō-tay*).
14. Ne leur a-t-il pas écrit que je veux une chambre donnant (*dōn-nāng*) sur la rue?
15. Pourquoi ne leur avez-vous pas écrit que nous avons refusé (*rēfū-zay*) la traite (*trait*)?
16. Il me l'a écrit, mais je l'ai oublié (*ou-blēē-ay*).
17. Il ne m'a pas apporté mon déjeuner (*day-jeū-nay*).
18. Pourquoi ne lui avez-vous pas apporté son dîner (*song dēē-nay*)?
19. Je le lui ai dit, mais il ne veut pas le faire.
20. Mon frère m'a chargé (*shār-jay*) de lui acheter trois boutons de chemise (*bou-tong dē shē-mēēze*).
21. Ne vous ai-je pas chargé d'acheter mes gants (*gāng*) chez le gantier (*gāng-t'yay*) français?
22. Garçon, avez-vous fait venir un fiacre (*fēē-āk'*)?
23. Le commissionnaire (*cō-mīss-yō-nayr*) m'a dit que la voiture (*voāh-tūr*) est à la porte.
24. Avez-vous fait enregistrer mes effets, et lui avez-vous donné le bulletin (*bül-taing*)?
25. Je le lui ai donné hier soir, mais il l'a égaré (*ay-gā-ray*).

que l'on, that one ; si l'on, if one ; and où l'on, where one.

26. I saw you at the waiting-room.
27. Will you please tell them (viz. : it=*le*).
28. Of what (*de quoi*) did you speak to him when you saw him in the waiting-room?
29. I say yes.
30. He says no.
31. What did you say (*or*, I beg your pardon, what did you say)?
32. Why did you not write to them to send us a new (*une nouvelle*) collection (*collection*) of samples (*or* patterns, *d'échantillons*)?
33. My brother-in-law speaks French with our tailor.
34. Does he speak French? (*Parle-t-il*; the 't' is inserted for euphony).
35. Yes, sir, he speaks a little. (*Literally*: it a little = *un peu*).

that the persons with whom your sister-in-law came here from Cologne, bought a house in Church Street?

26. Je vous ai vu dans la salle d'attente (*dāt-tāngt*).
27. Veuillez le-leur dire (*veū-yēh lě leūr dēer*).
28. De quoi lui avez-vous parlé, quand vous l'avez vu dans la salle d'attente?
29. Je dis que oui (*jě dēē kě ou-ee*).
30. Il dit que non (*nong*).
31. Que disiez-vous (*kě dēē-zyēh vou*)?
32. Pourquoi ne leur avez-vous pas écrit de nous envoyer une nouvelle collection d'échantillons (*pāh zay-krēē dē nou zāng-voāh-yēh ün nou-vēl col-lēk-syong day-shāng-tēē-yong*)?
33. Mon beau-frère parle français avec notre tailleur.
34. Parle-t-il français (*pārl-tēēl frāng-say*)?
35. Oui (*ou-ēē*), monsieur, il le parle un peu (*eūng peū*).

3

que les personnes avec lesquelles madame votre
 kě lay pěr-sōn a-věk lay-kěll mādām vōt

belle-soeur est venue ici de Cologne, ont acheté
 běll seūr ay vě-nū eē-sēē dē Kō lon-yě ōng tāsh-tay

une maison dans la rue de l'église?
 ün may-zong dāng lā rú dē lay-glēēze

that

the persons, the parties

with

whom

Mistress ; Mrs.

your sister-in-law

is

come

here

from

Cologne

have bought

a house

in

the street

of

1) When a verb is conjugated with the auxiliary être (as in the above sentence), the participle must agree with its subject. *Votre belle-soeur est venue*, your sister came. *La Belle-soeur* being the

que (*kě*)

les personnes (*lay pěr-sǝn*) [Singular : *la personne.*]

avec (*ā-věk*)

lesquelles, (*lay-kěll*) [*Accusative Plural fem. of laquelle.*]

madame (*mā-dām*)

votre belle-sœur (*vǝt běll-seūr*)

est (*ay*)

venue¹ (*vě-nū*) [*Fem. of the Partisiple of venir, to come ; the masc. participle is venu without the final e.*]

ici (*ěě-sěě*)

de (*dě*)

Cologne (*kō-lǝn-yě*)

ont acheté (*ong tǝsh-tay*) [*Participle of acheter, to buy. The participle of all verbs conjugated with the auxiliary 'avoir,' is never changed, or rather inflected.*]

une maison (*ün may-zong*)

dans (*dāng*)

la rue (*lāh rü*)

de (*dě*)

subject of the sentence, the past participle *venue* must be placed in the feminine singular. But *Vos soeurs sont venues*, it must be feminine plural. *Votre frère est venu* (masculine singul.) *Vos frères sont venus* (mascul. plur.)

the church

Church-Street. (The definite article 'la' must be used in this connection.)

1. The chambermaid has told them that she saw the persons with whom your niece came from London the other day (*l'autre jour*).
 2. What does your father say of the person with whom he was in the waiting-room?
 3. Of what did he speak to the persons?
 4. What did he give to the persons to whose house (*chez lesquelles*) you are going?
 5. No one arrived (= is come) by (*par*) this train (*ce train*).
 6. Why did you not tell to *any one*¹ that my brother did not come by this train?
 7. No one told him to do it immediately (*tout de suite*).
 8. It is not allowed (*permis*) to *any one*¹ to stand about (*stationner*) on (*sur*) the wharf.
 9. Did any one inquire (*demander*) for me during (*pendant*) my absence (*absence*)? (*Literally*: Is one come to inquire, &c.)
 10. No one has inquired for you during your absence.
-

¹ *No one, nobody, not any one, not anybody* is always given by *personne* which must in this sense always be accompanied by the negation *ne* which must be placed *before* the verb. Observe that only

l'église [*fem.*] (*lay-glêze*)

la rue de l'église

-
1. La fille de chambre (*lâ fêe-yê de shâng-br*) leur a dit qu'elle (*kêll*) a vu les personnes avec lesquelles votre nièce est venue l'autre jour (*lâ-t jôur*) de Londres (*long-dr*).
 2. Que dit monsieur votre père de la personne avec laquelle il était dans la salle d'attente?
 3. De quoi (*dê quoâh*) a-t-il parlé aux personnes?
 4. Qu'a-t-il donné aux personnes chez lesquelles vous allez?
 5. *Personne n'est*¹ venu par ce train (*traing*).
 6. Pourquoi n'avez-vous dit à personne que mon frère n'est pas arrivé par ce train?
 7. Personne ne lui a dit de le faire tout de suite (*swêêt*).
 8. Il n'est permis (*pêr-mêe*) à personne de stationner (*stâ-syôn-nay*) sur le quai (*kay*).
 9. Est-on venu me demander pendant mon absence (*dê-mâng-day pâng-dâng môn nâb-sângs*)?
 10. Personne n'est venu vous demander pendant votre absence (*voû dê-mâng-day pâng-dâng vôt-râb-sângs*).

ne is used in this connection, while *pas* cannot be used, as: *No one is here, personne n'est ici.*— *Not any one has spoken, personne n'a parlé.*

11. Two of your compatriots (*or* countrymen = *compatriotes*) came to pay you a call (*or* to call on you = *vous rendre visite*).
12. Didn't they tell (*or* give) you their (*leurs*) names (*noms*), porter (*concierge*)?
13. Didn't they leave their cards with you? (= Not to you have they left (*laissé*) their cards (*leurs cartes*)?)
14. They told me their names, but upon my word! (*ma foi!*) I forgot them.
15. Did nobody call during my absence?
16. I must reproach you. (= I have reproaches [*des reproches*] to you to make).
17. Why? Because (*parce que*) you did not come to see me (*me voir*), since (*depuis que*) I moved. (*Literally*: I am moved = *Je suis délogé.*)
18. Who called? (*Literally*: Who is it who is come?)
19. To whom does this portmanteau belong? (*Literally*: To whom is this portmanteau?)
20. This portmanteau belongs to me. Will you please pass it to me?
21. Don't speak to him, if he is there.
22. Do not speak to them of this matter (*affaire*).
23. Who told you so? (*Literally*: Who is it who to you it has said?)
24. Who awakened you? (= Who is it who you has awakened [*éveillé*]?)

1) We have already seen (compare page 87 *Note* to: '*ont acheté*') that the *past participle* does not, under any circumstances, agree with the *subject* of its sentence when the verb is conjugated with the auxiliary '*avoir*' to have.

The *past participle* does, however, agree with the *object*, when the said object comes before it, which can only be the case when the object is a pronoun (*personal, relative, or other*), as: *Je les ai oubliés*,

11. Deux de vos compatriotes (*deū dē vōh cong-pā-trēē-ōt*) sont venus vous rendre visite (*rāng-dr vee-zeet*).
12. Ne vous ont-ils pas dit leurs noms (*nong*) concierge (*cong-syērsh*)?
13. Ne vous ont-ils pas laissé (*lays-say*) leurs cartes?
14. Ils m'ont dit leur noms, mais ma foi! je les ai oubliés¹ (*mā foāh jē lay zay oū-blēē-ay*).
15. N'est-on pas venu me demander pendant mon absence?
16. J'ai des reproches (*rē-prōsh*) à vous faire.
17. Pourquoi donc? Parce que (*pārsē-kē*) vous n'êtes pas encore (*nayt-pāh-zāng-kor*) venu me voir depuis que (*dē-pū-ēē-kē*) j'ai déménagé (*day-may-nāh-jay*).
18. Qui est-ce qui est venu² (*kēē ays kēē ay vēnū*)?
19. A qui est (*āh kēē ay*) ce sac de voyage?
20. Ce sac de voyage est à moi, veuillez me le passer.
21. Ne lui parlez pas s'il est là.
22. Ne leur parlez pas de cette affaire.
23. Qui est-ce qui² vous l'a dit (*kēē ays kēē vou lāh dēē*)?
24. Qui est-ce qui² vous a éveillé (*kēē ays kēē vou zā ay-vē-yēh*)?

I have forgotten them. The object of the sentence is 'les,' them. It precedes the past participle, consequently 'oubliés,' forgotten, must also be placed like 'les' in the masculine plural.

2) Instead of the simple interrogative pronoun 'qui' who? the French frequently use a more complicated form, viz.: 'qui est-ce qui?' (*kēē ays kēē*), who? This form is more emphatic than the simple 'qui?' Similarly they employ instead of **que** the more complicated form, *qu'est-ce que* (*kays-kē*).

25. The waiter woke me (*or* called me) very early (*de très-bonne heure*).
26. What do you want? (= What is it which you want?)
27. This gentleman is quite (*bien*) indisposed (*indisposé*); that's the reason why (= that is why) he did not come to your office this morning.
28. You are late (*vous êtes en retard*). Why didn't you come early (*de bonne heure*)?
29. If the tailor should bring (= if the tailor brings) my coat, please tell him to call again (*revenir*) tomorrow, because I have no time to try it on (*de l'essayer*) to-day (*aujourd'hui*).
30. What did your friend answer you, when you spoke to him about going (*d'aller*) to Cologne with us? (= What is it what to you has answered [*répondu*] your friend? &c.)
31. Tell him that I have no time to write this English letter now (*maintenant*).
32. It is quite vain for you to talk, as he will not do it. (= You will have fine talk, but, &c.)
33. Have you (really) bought this house?
34. Always buy in (the) large stores (*magasins*).
35. Will you have the kindness of coming with me after breakfast to do some (*des*) shopping (*emplettes*)?
36. What will you (then) buy?

25. Le garçon m'a éveillé de très-bonne heure (*dě tray bõn neür*).
26. Qu'est-ce que (*kays-kě*) vous voulez ?
27. Ce monsieur est bien indisposé (*aing-dīs-põ-zay*) ; c'est pourquoi il n'est pas venu à votre bureau ce matin (*sě mǎ-taing*).
28. Vous êtes en retard (*voũ zayt āng rě-tār*). Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas venu de bonne heure (*dì bõn neür*) ?
29. Si (*sěē*) le tailleur m'apporte mon habit, dites-lui, s'il vous plaît, de revenir (*rěvėnėēr*) demain, parce que je n'ai pas le temps de l'essayer (*ěs-say-yěh*) aujourd'hui (*oh-jouř-d'wėē*).
30. Qu'est-ce que vous a répondu (*kays-kě voũ zā ray-pong-dũ*) votre ami quand vous lui avez parlé d'aller à Cologne avec nous ?
31. Dites-lui que je n'ai pas le temps d'écrire maintenant (*day-krėēr maing-tě-nāng*) cette lettre anglaise.
32. Vous aurez beau (*voũ zō-ray bō*) dire,¹ mais il ne le fera pas. (Future of faire.)
33. Est-ce-que (*ays-kě*) vous avez acheté cette maison (*voũ zā-vay zūsh-tay sět may-zong*) ?
34. Achetez toujours dans les grands magasins (*ash-tay tou-jouř dũng lay grāng mǎ-gǎ-zaing*).
35. Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de venir avec moi après (*ǎ-pray*) le déjeuner faire des emplettes (*day zāng dĩt*) ?
36. Que voulez-vous donc acheter ?

1) Idiomatic phrase, which can only be given so.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

The beginner may learn the following tenses *first*, leaving the others for after-study: *Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future, Conditional.*

1.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

I. Avoir (*ă-voâr*) to have.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense (Présent).

J'ai (*jay*), I have

tu as (*tü ä*), thou hast

il	} a	[<i>ēēl</i>]	} <i>ā</i>	he	} has	
elle				[<i>ēll</i>]		she
on				[<i>on</i>]		one

nous avons (*noū ză-vong*), we have

vous avez (*voū ză-vēh*), you have

ils	} ont	[<i>ēēl</i>]	} <i>zong</i>	} they have
elles				

Imperfect (Imparfait).

past. v

J'avais (*jă-vay*), I had.
 tu avais (*tü ä-vay*), thou hadst.
 il avait (*ēēl ä-vay*), he had.
 nous avions (*noū ză-ryong*), we had.
 vous aviez (*voū ză-ryēh*), you had.
 ils avaient (*ēēl ză-vay*), they had.

Preterite (Défini).

J'eus (*iü*), I had.
 tu eus (*tü ü*), thou hadst.
 il eut (*ēēl ü*), he had.
 nous eûmes (*noū züm*), we had.
 vous eûtes (*voū züt*), you had.
 ils eurent (*ēēl zür*), they had.

Future (Futur).

J'aurai (*jō-rēh*), I shall *or* will have. ✓
 tu auras (*tü ô-rā*), thou wilt have.
 il aura (*ēēl ô-rā*), he will have.
 nous aurons (*noū zô-rong*), we shall have *or* will have.
 vous aurez (*voū zô-rēh*), you will have.
 ils auront (*ēēl zô-rong*), they will have.

1st Conditional (Conditionnel Présent).

J'aurais (*jō-ray*), I should have *or* would have.
 tu aurais (*tü ô-ray*), thou wouldst have.
 il aurait (*ēēl ô-ray*), he would have.
 nous aurions (*noū zô ryong*), we should have *or* would have.
 vous auriez (*voū zô-ryēh*), you would have.
 ils auraient (*ēēl zô-ray*), they would have.

COMPOUND TENSES.

eu (ü) had.

Perfect (Passé indéfini). ✓

J'ai eu (*jay ü*), I have had.
 tu as eu (*tü ā-zü*), thou hast had.
 il a eu (*ēēl ā ü*), he has had.
 nous avons eu (*noū zā-vong-zü*), we have had.
 vous avez eu (*voū zā-vēh zü*), you have had.
 ils ont eu (*ēēl zong-tü*), they have had.

Pluperfect (Plusqueparfait).

J'avais eu (*jā-vay-zü*), I had had.
 tu avais eu (*tü ā-vay-zü*), thou hadst had
 il avait eu (*ēēl ā-vay-tü*), he had had.
 nous avions eu (*noū zā-vyong-zü*), we had had.
 vous aviez eu (*voū zā-vyēh-zü*), you had had.
 ils avaient eu (*ēēl zā-vay tü*), they had had.

2nd Pluperfect (Passé antérieur).

J'eus eu (*jü zü*), I had had.
 tu eus eu (*tü ü-zü*), thou hadst had.
 il eut eu (*ēēl ü-tü*), he had had.
 nous eûmes eu (*noū züm-zü*), we had had.
 vous eûtes eu (*voū züt-zü*), you had had.
 ils eurent eu (*ēēl zür-tü*) they had had.

2nd Future (Fut. antérieur passé).

J'aurai eu (*jō-rēh-ü*), I shall have had.
 tu auras eu (*tü ō-rā-zü*), thou wilt have had.
 il aura eu (*ēēl ō-rā-ü*), he will have had.

nous aurons eu (*noū zō-rong zū*), we shall have had.
 vous aurez eu (*voū zō-rēh zū*), you will have had.
 ils auront eu (*ēēl zō-rong-tū*), they will have had.

2nd Conditional (Cond. passé).

J'aurais eu (*jō-ray-zū*), I should have had.
 tu aurais eu (*tū ô-ray-zū*) thou wouldst have had.
 il aurait eu (*ēēl ô-ray-tū*), he would have had.
 nous aurions eu (*noū zō-ryong-zū*) we should have had
 vous auriez eu (*voū zō-ryēh-zū*), you would have had.
 ils auraient eu (*ēēl zō-ray-tū*), they would have had.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (SUBJONCTIF).

Present.

Que j'aie (*kē jay*), that I may have.
 que tu aies (*kē tū ay*), that thou mayest have.
 qu'il ait (*kēēl ay*), that he may have.
 que nous ayons (*kē noū say-yong*), that we may have.
 que vous ayez (*kē voū say-yēh*), that you may have.
 qu'ils aient (*kēēl say*), that they may have.

Imperfect.

Que j'eusse (*kē jüss*), that I might have.
 que tu eusses (*kē tū üss*), that thou mightst have.
 qu'il eût (*kēēl ü*), that he might have.
 que nous eussions (*kē noū züs-yong*), that we might have.
 que vous eussiez (*kē voū züs-yēh*), that you might have.
 qu'ils eussent (*kēēl züss*), that they might have.

Perfect.

Que j'aie eu (*kě jay ü*), that I may have had.

que tu aies eu (*kě tü ay-zü*), that thou mayest have had.

qu'il ait eu (*kěel ay-tü*), that he may have had.

que nous ayons eu (*kě nou zay-yong zü*), that we may have had.

que vous ayez eu (*kě vou zay-yěh-zü*), that you may have had.

qu'ils aient eu (*kěel zay-tü*), that they may have had.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse eu (*kě jüss ü*), that I might have had.

que tu eusses eu (*kě tü süs-zü*), that thou mightst have had.

qu'il eût eu (*kěel ü tü*), that he might have had.

que nous eussions eu (*kě nou züs-syong-zü*), that we might
have had.

que vous eussiez eu (*kě vou züs-yěh-zü*), that you might
have had.

qu'ils eussent eu (*kěel züss-tü*), that they might have had.

IMPERATIVE MOOD (IMPÉRATIF).

aie (*ay*), have (*thou*).

ayons (*ay-yong*), iet us have

(qu'il ait [*kěel ay*], let him
have.)

ayez (*ay-yěh*), have (*you*).

INFINITIVE MOOD (INFINITIF).

*Present.**Past.*

avoir (*ā-voār*)
d'avoir (*dā-voār*)
à avoir (*ā ā-voār*)

} to have.

avoir eu (*ā-voār ü*)
d'avoir eu (*dā-voār ü*)
à avoir eu (*ā-ā-voār ü*)

} to
} have
} had.

PARTICIPLES, (PARTICIPES).

*Present.*ayant (*ay-yāng*), having.*Past.*eu (*ü*), *fem.* eue (*ü*), had.ayant eu (*ay-yāng-tü*), having had.

Idiomatical expressions with avoir.

There are a number of idiomatical expressions in connection with *avoir*, which cannot be translated literally and which the student should carefully commit to memory. I only mention the most important ones:

J'ai froid (*froāh*), I am cold.J'ai froid aux mains (*ō maing*), my hands are cold.J'ai chaud (*show*), I am warm.

J'ai mal à la tête, I have the headache.

J'ai besoin de (*bě zō-aiŋ*¹) I need.Il a cinq ans (*saing kāng*), he is five years old.J'ai peur (*peür*¹), I am afraid.J'ai faim (*faing*), I am hungry.J'ai soif (*swoāf*), I am thirsty.

Il a bonne mine, he looks well.

Il a mauvaise mine, he is looking ill.

J'ai envie de (*āng-vēē*), I desire I feel inclined to.J'ai sommeil (*sōmmē-yē*²), I am sleepy.

1) eū=ea in early.

2) bē-zō-aiŋ has to be pronounced like two syllables only.

3) Observe the vanishing liquid sound

The pupil must make himself acquainted with the

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

We distinguish between the:

Personal Conjunctive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

Nom.	je (jĕ)	I ¹⁾
Dat.	me (mĕ)	to me
Acc.	me (mĕ)	me

2nd Person.

Nom.	tu (tū)	thou
Dat.	te (tĕ)	to thee
Acc.	te (tĕ)	thee

3rd Person.

Masculine.

Nom.	il (ĕĭl)	he or it
Dat.	lui (lū ĕĕ)	to him or to it
Acc.	le (lĕ)	him or it

Feminine.

Nom.	elle (ĕll)	she or it
Dat.	lui (lū ĕĕ)	to her or to it
Acc.	la (lā)	her or it

Personal Disjunctive Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

Nom.	moi (mwoāh),	I
Gen.	de moi	of or from me
Dat.	à moi	to me
Acc.	moi	me

2nd Person.

Nom.	toi (twoāh),	thou
Gen.	de toi	of or from thee
Dat.	à toi	to thee
Acc.	toi	thee

3rd Person.

Nom.	lui (lū ĕĕ ²⁾),	he	elle, she
Gen.	de lui	of or from him	d'elle of or from her
Dat.	à lui	to him	à elle to her
Acc.	lui	him	elle her

1) The Genitive of the conjunctive pronouns is wanting, and is circumscribed by 'de moi, de toi,' &c.

2) The *ū-ĕĕ* must be pronounced as one sound only.

PLURAL.		
1st Person.		
N. nous		we
D. nous		to us
A. nous		us

2nd Person.		
N. vous		you
D. vous		to you
A. vous		you

3rd Person.		
Masculine.		
N. ils		they
D. leur		to them
A. les		them
Feminine.		
N. elles		they
D. leur		to them
A. les		them

PLURAL.		
1st Person.		
Nom. nous		we
Gen. de nous		of or from us
Dat. à nous		to us
Acc. nous		us

2nd Person.		
Nom. vous		you
Gen. de vous		of or from you
Dat. à vous		to you
Acc. vous		you

3rd Person.		
N. eux (eū ¹), they		elles (ɛlɛ) they
	(masc.)	
G. d'eux (deū) of or		d'elles of or
	from	from
	them	them
D. à eux to them		à elles to
		them
A. eux. them		elles them

We have already explained (comp. page 76, 77, 80 & 81) when and how the *conjunctive personal pronouns* are to be used.

The disjunctive personal pronouns are to be used :

1) after prepositions, as :

avec moi, with me ;
 sans (sāng) toi, without thee ;
 pour lui, for him ;
 par elle, by her ;

avec	{	eux (m.)	} with them.
		elles (f.)	

pour nous, for us ;
 de vous, of or from you ;

1) eū is pronounced like ea in 'early,' only much longer.

2) With the *affirmative imperative*, as:

parlez-moi, speak to me ;	apportez-lui, bring to him ;
donnez-moi, give me ;	parlez leur, speak to them ;
envoyez-lui, send him ;	envoyez-leur, send to them.

a) If, however, the *imperative* is used *negatively* then the *conjunctive pronouns* must be employed and placed before the verb; as:

ne me donnez pas, do not give to me ;
ne leur parlez pas ; do not speak to them ;
ne lui apportez pas, do not bring to him ;
ne leur envoyez pas, do not send to them.

b) Compare the rules on 'Two pronouns' (p. 77 & 81.)

3) *The disjunctive personal pronouns* must be used in answer to questions, as: Who will go with him? I. Qui veut aller avec lui? Moi. Who did it? I, thou, he, &c. Qui l'a fait? Moi, toi, lui, elle, &c.

4) When a *stress* is laid on the *personal pronoun*, as: *it is I*, the *disjunctives* used are preceded by *c'est, c'était* (instead of *ce est, ce était*) &c., or the *disjunctive personal pronoun* is first used, while the *conjunctive* is repeated; as:

C'est moi (say moâh) it is I	c'est nous	it is we
c'est toi	c'est vous	it is you
c'est lui	ce sont eux (sě song tɛll)	} it is they
c'est elle	ce sont elles (sě song ɛll)	

C'était nous (say tay nou), it was we; *est-ce vous* (ays-roü), is that you?—I say so, *c'est moi, qui le dis*; or *moi, je le dis*.—We have not said so, *nous, nous n'avons pas dit cela*; or *ce n'est pas nous qui avons dit cela*.—They have done it, *ce sont eux qui l'ont fait*.

3.

TWO PRONOUNS.

The following table will show the order in which conjunctive personal pronouns are to be placed when two different cases are governed by the same verb.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1st Person	2nd Person	3rd Person	1st Person	2nd Person	3d Person
<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	<i>Acc. Dat.</i>
me { le la les	te { le la les	le la les } lui	nous { le la les	vous { le la les	le la les } leur
<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	These forms are used in the affirmative imperative.		<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	After the affirmative imperative.	
le } la } moi les }			le } la } nous les }		

Examples :

I give it to thee (=I to thee it give), Je *te le* donne.—
He brings it to us (= he to us it brings), il *nous l'*apporte.—He has not told it to me (= he not to me it has told), il ne *me l'*a pas dit.—I gave it to you, je *vous l'*ai donné.—I did not give it to you, je ne *vous l'*ai pas donné.—Did he write it to you, *vous l'*a-t-il écrit?—Did he not write it to you, ne *vous l'*a-t-il pas écrit?—Je *le leur* ai dit, I told it to them.—Ne *le leur* avez vous pas écrit, did you not write it to them.—*Le lui* a-t-il envoyé, did he send it to him (or to her)?—Je *le lui* ai donné, I gave it to him or to her).

We see therefore that the dative (of the person) precedes the accusative, so that we always construe: **me le, te le, nous le, vous le.**

The exceptions to the foregoing remark are the two datives **lui**, to him *or* to her, and **leur**, to them, which always follow the accusative, and are placed thus: **le lui, le leur.** *Ex. :*

Je *le lui* donne, I give it to him. Pourquoi ne *le leur* prêtez-vous pas? Why don't you lend it to them?

With the Imperative they are used thus:

a) with the *affirmative*, as: *Donnez-le-moi*, give it to me; *apportez-le-lui (leur)*, bring it to him *or* her (to them); *prêtez -le-nous*, lend it to us; *passez-le-nous*, pass it to us.

b) with the *negative*, as: ne *me le* donnez pas, don't give it to me; ne *le (la) lui* apportez pas, don't bring it to him; ne *les leur* envoyez pas (*ně lě leūr āng-voāh-yay pāh*), do not send them to them.

Words.

Objets à l'usage du voyageur.

Objects for a tourist's use.

*ōb-jay āh lū-sāhsh dū voāh-yā-
jeūr.*

la malle (*māll*),

the trunk.

le sac de voyage (*sāc dē
voāh-yāsh*).

the portmanteau.

les bagages (<i>bă-gāsh</i>)	}	the luggage.
les effets (<i>lay-zay-fay</i>)		
la boîte (<i>b'woāt</i>),		the box.
la boîte à chapeau, (<i>b'woāt</i> <i>āh shā-pō</i>),		the hatbox.
la couverture (<i>cou-vēr-tür</i>).		the cover.
la couverture de voyage (<i>dě</i> <i>voāh-yāsh</i>),		the travelling-rug.
la brosse (<i>brōs</i>),		the brush.
la brosse à chapeau (<i>shā-pō</i>),		the hat-brush.
la brosse à cheveux (<i>shě-</i> <i>veū</i> ¹),		the hair-brush.
la brosse à dents (<i>dāng</i>),		the tooth-brush.
la brosse à ongles, (<i>ongl</i>),		the nail-brush.
le démêloir (<i>day-may-l'woār</i>),		the large comb.
le peigne (<i>běn-yě</i> ²),		the comb.
le morceau de savon (<i>mōr-</i> <i>sō dē sāh-vong</i>),		the cake of soap.
le porte-monnaie (<i>port-mo-</i> <i>nēh</i>),		the purse.
le porte-feuille (<i>port-feū-yě</i> ²),		the pocket-book.
le parapluie (<i>pāh-rāh-plü</i>),		the umbrella.
le parasol (<i>pāh-rāh-sol</i>),		the parasol.
la canne (<i>kān</i>),		the cane.

1) eū like 'ea' in *early*.

2) Observe the liquid sound in 'ye.' Compare page 50

Translate the following :

Exercise.¹

1) Waiter, did you² order a cab?—Have you brought all my luggage downstairs (brought downstairs, *descendu*=*dě-sāng-dü*)? — 2) Your trunk is downstairs (*en bas*=*āng-bāh*), sir; I am taking now (*maintenant*) your portmanteau and travelling-rug down (I am taking down, *je descends*=*jě dě-sāng*). — 3) Cab (*cocher*=*kō-shay*), to the Northern railway-station.— Drive quick (*allez vite*), we have no time to lose (*à perdre*). — 4) Will you please pay the fare (*la course*=*lā koūrs*) now; it is forbidden (*defendu*) to stop (*de stationner*) at the entrance gate (*à l'entrée*) of the station. — 5) Have you any (*des*) luggage, sir?—I have a trunk, a portmanteau, and a hatbox.— Will you have the three pieces (*les trois colis*=*lay troāh kōlee*) checked, sir?— No, only (*seulement*=*seül-māng*), the trunk, please — 6) Is this (*est-ce ici*) the waiting-room? — Yes, sir, please take (*veuillez prendre*) your ticket and go into the waiting-room. — 7) One first class ticket to London (*une première, Londres*=*ün prēm-yēhr, Long-dr*). — 8) Have I any (*du*) overweight?—Yes sir, you have five francs worth of overweight (=you have for five (*cing*) francs of (*de*) overweight). — 9) Is that (*there*) (*est-ce là*) our train? Yes, that is the express (*or fast*) train for Calais and London.

1) This exercise contains a dialogue of a traveller who is departing from Paris.

2) Take the perfect=Have you ordered?

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART III.

III.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Do not forget to call me at a quarter to five to-morrow morning, or even earlier, if you can ; and tell the waiter, if you please, to bring me, at five o'clock precisely, a cup of coffee with milk, some slices of bread and butter, and some soft-boiled eggs.

1.

Do not forget to call me at a quarter to five to-morrow morning, or even earlier, if you can.

III.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

N'oubliez pas de me réveiller demain matin à
nou-blee-ay pah də mə ray-vě-yěh də-maing mā-taing ah
cinq heures moins un quart, ou plus tôt si vous
saing keur mo-aing zeung kahr, ou plü tō sēē von
pouvez ; et dites au garçon, s'il vous plaît, de
pou-věh ; ay deēt oh gār-song, sēē vcʻ play, də
m'apporter à cinq heures précises une tasse de
mā-por-těh ah saing keur pray-sēēze ün tās də
café au lait, des tartines de beurre et des œufs à
käh-fay oh 'av. dav tār-tēēn də beurr ay day zeu ah
la coque.
lā cock

1.

N'oubliez pas de me réveiller demain matin à
nou-blee-ay pah də mə ray-vě-yěh də-maing mā-taing ah
cinq heures moins un quart, ou plus tôt si vous
saing keur mo-aing zeung kahr, ou plü tō sēē von
pouvez.
pou-věh.

Do not forget [to forget, *oublier*. Compare the table of 'donner,'
page 59.]

to [*de* before the infinitive means *to*]

me

to wake

to-morrow

morning

at

five

hour

at five o'clock

less

a quarter

at a quarter to five [*Literally*: at five less a quarter.]

or [*où* means 'where,' and *ou* 'or']

more

soon

sooner, earlier

if

you can [Irregular verb. It means 'I am able' or 'I can'; I cannot,
'je ne puis,' or 'je ne peux pas.']

N'oubliez pas (*noū-blēz-ay pāh*) [Imperative of the regular verb 'oublier ;' compare page 59.]

de (*dē*)

me (*mē*)

réveiller (*ray-vē-yēh*)

demain (*dē-maing*)

matin (*mā-taing*) [Le matin, the morning]

à (*āh*)

cinq (*saingk*)

heure (*eūr*) [une heure (*fem.*), an hour, or one o'clock]

à cinq heures (*āh saing keūr*)

moins (*moaing*)

un quart (*cūng kāhr*)

à cinq heures moins un quart

ou (*oū*) [The pupil must distinguish well between 'ou,' or, and 'où,' where, which is always written with an accent grave.]

plus (*plū*)

tôt (*tō*)

plus tôt

si

vous pouvez [Second person plural of je peux or je puis, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent (*peūv*).]

1. Have you forgotten anything (*quelque chose*)?
2. You forgot to mail this letter. (*Literally*: to put [*mettre*] this letter into the post office.)
3. Who called you?
4. No one called me.
5. Did you wake (*or call*) your brother?
6. No, sir, not yet (*pas encore*).
7. Well (*eh bien*)! You will miss (*vous manquerez*) the train. Do you not know (*ne savez-vous pas*) that the fast train leaves (*part*) at five o'clock?
8. Call me early, if you please.
9. What o'clock is it?
10. Tell me, please, what o'clock it is?
11. Do you know what o'clock it is?
12. What o'clock do you think (*or fancy=croyez-vous*) it is?
13. I cannot tell you; I have not my watch (*ma montre*) with me (*sur moi*).
14. I forgot to wind up (*remonter*) my watch.
15. It is late (*tard*).
16. It is early (*de bonne heure*).
17. I fancied it was later; *or*, I thought it was later.
18. It is one o'clock.
19. It is two (*deux*) o'clock.

1) *Avez-vous oublié* would also be correct, but the French often

1. *Est-ce que vous avez oublié¹ quelque chose (ays'-kě voũ zā-věh zoũ-blě-ay kělkě shows) ?*
2. Vous avez oublié de mettre cette lettre à la poste.
3. Qui vous a réveillé? or, Qui est-ce qui vous a réveillé?
4. Personne ne m'a réveillé.
5. Avez-vous réveillé votre frère?
6. Non monsieur, pas encore (*pāh zāng-kor*).
7. Eh bien (*ay byaing*)! vous manquerez (*māng-kě-rěh*) le train. Ne savez-vous pas (*ně sǎ-věh voũ pāh*) que le train express part à cinq heures (*traing ex-prěh pārtah saing keũr*)?
8. Réveillez-moi de bonne heure, s'il vous plaît.
9. Quelle heure est-il (*kěl leũr ay-těel*)?
10. Dites-moi, s'il vous plaît, quelle heure il est (or l'heure qu'il est)?
11. Savez-vous l'heure qu'il est?
12. Quelle heure croyez-vous qu'il soit (*kroāh-yěh voũ kěel s'woāh*)?
13. Je ne puis (*pũ-ěe*) vous le dire; je n'ai pas ma montre sur moi (*māh mong-tr sũr m'woāh*).
14. J'ai oublié de remonter (*rě-mong-tay*) ma montre.
15. Il est tard (*tār*).
16. Il est de bonne heure.
17. Je croyais (*kroāh-yěh*) qu'il était (*ay-tay*) plus tard.
18. Il est une heure (*ěel ay tũn neũr*).
19. Il est deux heures (*deũ zeũr*).

employ the more complicated form of asking a question, introducing it by *est-ce que*?

20. It is three (*trois*) o'clock.
21. It is four (*quatre*) o'clock.
22. It is five (*cinq*) o'clock.
23. It is six (*six*) o'clock.
24. It is seven (*sept*) o'clock.
25. It is eight (*huit*) o'clock.
26. It is nine (*neuf*) o'clock.
27. It is ten (*dix*) o'clock.
28. It is eleven (*onze*) o'clock.
29. It is twelve o'clock (*midi*=noon¹).
30. It is twelve o'clock (*minuit*=midnight¹).

2.

1. Tell him to bring me my dinner at three o'clock precisely (*précises.*)
2. Come to me at eleven o'clock to-morrow morning.
3. If it is later than five (*or past five*) o'clock (*plus de cinq heures*), don't go to him.
4. It is one o'clock.
5. It is five minutes (*minutes*) past one.
6. It is ten (*dix*) minutes past one.
7. It is a quarter (*quart*) past one.
8. It is twenty (*vingt*) minutes past one.
9. It is twenty-five (*vingt-cinq*) minutes past one.
10. It is half-past one. (*Literally* : It is one o'clock and half [*demie*].)

¹) The number *douze*, twelve, is never used in regard to the time of day. But instead of 12 A.M. they say '*midi*,' and 12 P.M. '*minuit*.'

20. Il est trois heures (*troāh zeūr*).
21. Il est quatre heures (*kāt-reūr*).
22. Il est cinq heures (*saing keūr*).
23. Il est six heures (*sēē-zeūr*).
24. Il est sept heures (*sēt-teūr*).
25. Il est huit heures (*wēē-teūr*).
26. Il est neuf heures (*neū-veūr*).
27. Il est dix heures (*dēē-zeūr*).
28. Il est onze heures (*zēl lay tong zeūr*).
29. Il est midi (*mēē-dēē*).¹
30. Il est minuit (*mēē-n'wēē*).¹

2.

1. Dites-lui de m'apporter mon dîner à trois heures précises (*āh troāh zeūr pray-sees*).
2. Venez (*vè-nēh*) chez moi demain matin à onze heures (*ōng-zeūr*).
3. S'il est plus de cinq heures, n'allez pas chez lui.
4. Il est une heure (*zēl lay tūn neūr*).
5. Il est une heure cinq (minutes = *mēē-nūt'*).²
6. Il est une heure dix (minutes).
7. Il est une heure et quart (*ay kār*).
8. Il est une heure vingt (*vaing*).
9. Il est une heure vingt-cinq (*vaing saing*).
10. Il est une heure et demie (*dē-mēē*).

² *minutes* may be left off.

11. It is twenty-five minutes to two (= it is two o'clock less [*moins*] twenty-five).
12. It is twenty minutes to two.
13. It is a quarter to two.
14. It is ten minutes to two.
15. It is five minutes to two.
16. It is two o'clock exactly.
17. Will you have the kindness (*la bonté*) to tell me, sir, what o'clock it is?
18. My watch (*ma montre*) is ten minutes slow (*is slow = retarde*).
19. Your watch is five minutes fast, sir (=You advance [*vous avancez*] five minutes). On the contrary (*au contraire*), it is three minutes slow.
20. Cab, drive (*allez*) quickly. We have no time to lose (*à perdre*). The train leaves (*part*) at half past 12.
21. Tell the tailor, if you please, to send me my black (*noir*) trousers about (*vers*) a quarter to seven at the latest (*au plus tard*).
22. The town-clock (*l'horloge*) is just now (*à présent*) striking (*sonne*).
23. The town-clock struck two; but I think it is rather slow (*retarde de beaucoup = much*).
24. My watch does not agree (*s'accorde*) with your clock.
25. Why can he not come earlier?

1) I beg that the student will go in the same manner through

11. Il est deux heures moins vingt-cinq (*ēēl ay deū zeūr mo-aiŋ vaing saing*).
12. Il est deux heures moins vingt.
13. Il est deux heures moins un quart (*or* moins le quart).
14. Il est deux heures moins dix.
15. Il est deux heures moins cinq.
16. Il est deux heures précises.¹
17. Voulez-vous avoir la bonté (*bong-tay*) de me dire, monsieur, quelle heure il est (*kēl-leūr-ēēl-ay*) ?
18. { Ma montre retarde de dix minutes,
 { *or* Je retarde de dix minutes.
19. Vous avancez (*voū zāh-vāng-say*) de cinq minutes, monsieur. Au contraire (*ōh cong-trayr*) je retarde de trois.
20. Allez vite cocher (*āh-lēh vēēt cō-shēh*); nous n'avons pas de temps à perdre. Le train part à midi et demi (*lē traing pār tāh mēē-dēē ay dē-mēē*).
21. Dites au tailleur, s'il vous plaît, de m'envoyer mon pantalon noir vers sept heures moins un quart au plus tard (*dēēt zōh tā-yeūr, sēē voū play, dē māng-voāh-yēh mong pāng-tāh-long n'woāhr vayr sēt teūr mo-aiŋ zeūng kār ōh plū tār*.)
22. L'horloge (*lōr-lōhje*) sonne à présent (*āh pray-zāng*).
23. L'horloge a sonné deux heures, mais je crois qu'elle retarde de beaucoup (*kēll rē-tār dē bōh-coū*).
24. Ma montre ne s'accorde pas avec la pendule (*pāng-dūl*).
25. Pourquoi ne peut-il venir plus tôt ?

the different hours, so that he may become thoroughly familiar with the French way of expressing the time of day.

26. I cannot tell you, madam.
 27. Can't you make it at once?
 28. Waiter, can we have a private room (*un cabinet particulier*)?

 3

And tell the waiter, if you please, to bring me, at five o'clock exactly, a cup of coffee with milk, some slices of bread and butter, and some soft-boiled eggs.

And

tell [Irregular imperative of the verb *dire*, to say]

to the waiter

if you please; please; pray.

pleases [Irregular present of the verb, *plaire*, to please]

to bring me

a cup of coffee

some slices of bread (*tartines*) and butter

and

some eggs

26. Je ne puis vous le dire, madame.
 27. Ne pouvez-vous le faire tout de suite (*toût s'wêêt*)?
 28. Garçon, pouvons-nous avoir un cabinet particulier (*căh-bêe-nêh pār-têe-kü-lyêh*)?

3

Et dites au garçon, s'il vous plaît, de m'apporter
 ay dēēt zōh gār-song sēē voū play dē mā-por-

ter à cinq heures précises une tasse de café au
 tēh ah saing keūr pray-sēēze ün tāsē dē kăh-fay ôh

lait, des tartines de beurre et des oeufs à la coque.
 lay day tăhr-tēēn dē beūrē ay day zeū ah lă cock.

Et

dites (*dēēt*) [Irregular imperative of dire (*dēer*), to say]

au garçon

s'il vous plaît (*or* je vous prie [= *prēē*])

plaît (*play*) [The present is conjugated thus: Je plais, tu plaît, il
 plaît, nous plaîsons, vous plaîsez, ils plaîsent=*playse*.]

de m'apporter (*dē māp-por-tēh*)

une tasse de café (*ün tass dē kăh-fay*)

des tartines de beurre (*day tăhr-tēēn de beūrē*)

et

des oeufs (*day zeū*)

shell; egg-shell

soft-boiled eggs.

1. Can you give us lodging for to-night? (*Literally*: Can you lodge us [*nous loger*] for this night [*cette nuit*]?)
2. Do you want a double bed (= a bed for two persons), gentlemen?
3. No, we should like (*nous désirerions*) to have a room with two beds.
4. This room does not please me; *or*, I do not like this room.
5. Show me another room in the second story (*au second*), please.
6. What is the price of this room per day (= of which price [*de quel prix*] is this room a [*par*] day)?
7. Five francs.
8. Attendance (*le service*) included?
9. No, sir, attendance is charged (*se paye*) extra (*à part*).
10. How much (*combien*) a day?
11. One franc daily.
12. All right (*c'est bien*); I will take (*j'arrête*) the room.
13. Have my luggage brought up (*monter*) and pay the cab, please; I have no change (*monnaie*) with me (*sur moi*).
14. I have paid for it already (*déjà*); it was four francs.
15. What!? That cannot be! *or*, That is impossible!
16. Waiter, bring me in the first place (*avant tout*) a little warm water. I want to wash myself (*me laver*).

la coque (*lǎ cock*)

des œufs à la coque (*day zeū āh lǎ cock*).

1. Pouvez-vous nous loger (*lōh-jay*) pour cette nuit (*n'wēē*) ?
2. Voulez-vous un lit (*zeūng lēē*) pour deux personnes, messieurs ?
3. Non, nous désirerions avoir une chambre à deux lits (*noū day-zeē-rē-ryong zā-v'woār ün shāng-br āh deū lēē*).
4. Cette chambre ne me plaît pas.
5. Montrez-moi une autre chambre au second, s'il vous plaît (*ōh sē-cong sēē vou play*).
6. De quel prix (*prēē*) cette chambre est-elle par jour ?
7. Elle est de cinq francs (*el lay dē saing frāng*).
8. Le service compris (*lē sēr-vēēs cong-prēē*) ?
9. Non, monsieur, le service se paye (*pay*) à part (*āh pār*).
10. Combien (*kong-byaing*) par jour ?
11. C'est un franc par jour (*say teūng frāng pār jour*).
12. C'est bien (*byaing*) ; j'arrête la chambre.
13. Faites monter mes effets et veuillez payer (*pay-yēh*) le cocher ; je n'ai pas de monnaie (*mō-nay*) sur moi.
14. Je l'ai déjà (*day-jāh*) payé ; c'était quatre francs.
15. Comment ! ? Cela ne se peut pas (*com-māng ! sē-lā nē sē peū pār*) !
16. Garçon, apportez-moi avant tout (*āh-vāng tou*) un peu d'eau chaude (*eūng peū dōh shōhd*) ; je veux me laver (*lāh-vēh*).

17. Bring me some¹ fresh (*fraîche*) water, some soap (*du savon*) and towels (*des serviettes*). Above all things (*avant tout*) I want to wash.
18. The chambermaid shall bring you (*vous apportera*) everything (*tout ça*) in an instant.
19. Take care (*ayez soin*) to give me clean (*blancs*) sheets (*draps*), and be sure they are well aired (=and very dry [*secs*]).
20. Any other orders, sir? (*Literally*: Have you yet something else (*autre chose*) to command (*à commander*)?)
21. Yes; please give us two mattresses (*matelas*); we do not like feather-beds (*lits de plume*).
22. You shall have everything, gentlemen.
23. And do not forget to tell the boy to wake us early to-morrow.
24. Have you brought us some fresh water?
25. As (*aussi*) fresh as (*que*) one can have it in Paris where the water is not drinkable. (*Literally*: Where the wells [*puits*] do not give drinkable [*potable*] water.)
26. Are my boots blacked (*cirées*)?
27. Yes, sir; please give me your clothes; I am going (*je vais*) to brush them.
28. Don't forget to call me at half past six.

1) The French have a peculiar form of the *article*, not found in English. This is the so-called *partitive article*, in which *du*, *de la* and *des* are employed before nouns used in a *partitive sense*; that is to say, when only a *part of the thing or person* spoken of is referred to.

This explanation of the *partitive article* is strictly grammatical, but hardly lucid. The pupil will therefore observe that expressions in which we employ the words *some* or *any* are rendered in French by

17. Apportez-moi de ¹ l'eau fraîche (*fraysk*), du savon (*sāh-vong*) et des serviettes (*sēr-vyēt*); avant tout je veux me laver.
18. La fille vous [^]apportera tout ça (*toū sāh*) dans [^]un instant (*dāng zeūng aing-stāng*).
19. Ayez soin (*sō-aiṅ*) de me donner des draps blancs (*drāh blānk*) et bien secs (*sēck*).
20. Avez-vous [^]encore autre chose (*ōht shows*) à commander (*com-māng-day*)?
21. Oui, veuillez nous donner deux matelas (*mā-tě-lāh*); nous n'aimons pas les lits de plume (*plüm*).
22. Vous [^]aurez tout cela, messieurs.
23. Et n'oubliez pas de dire au comissionnaire de venir nous réveiller demain de bonne [^]heure.
24. Nous [^]avez-vous déjà apporté de l'eau fraîche?
25. Aussi (*ōh-sēē*) fraîche qu'on peut l'avoir à Paris où les puits (*pü-ēē*) ne donnent pas (*ně don pāh*) de l'eau potable (*de lō pō-tāh-bl*).
26. Mes bottes sont-elles cirées (*sēē-ray*)?
27. Oui, monsieur; donnez-moi vos [^]habits, s'il vous plaît; je vais (*vay*) les broser.
28. N'oubliez pas de me réveiller à six [^]heures et demie.

du (for the masc. sing.); by de la (for the fem. sing.) and by des (for the plural of both genders).

Give me **some** bread

Bring me **some** eggs,

He is drinking beer (*or* some beer),

Have you **any** towels?

Has he written **any** letters?

Donnez-moi **du** pain

Apportez-moi **des** oeufs

Il boit **de** la bière.

Avez-vous **des** serviettes?

A-t-il écrit **des** lettres?

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Learn the following tenses first, leaving the others for after-study: *Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future, and Conditional.*

AUXILIARY VERBS.

II. Être (*ay-tr*), to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je suis (*jě s'w-ěē*), I am.

tu es (*tü ay*), thou art.

il est (*ěēl ay*), he is.

nous sommes (*noū sòm*), we are.

vous êtes (*voū zayt*), you are.

ils sont (*ěēl song*), they are.

Imperfect.

J'étais (*jai-tay*), I was

tu étais (*tü ay-tay*), thou wast.

il était (*ěēl ay-tay*), he was.

nous étions (*noū zay-tyong*), we were.

vous étiez (*voū zay-tyěh*), you were.

ils étaient (*ěēl zay-tay*), they were.

Preterite.

Je fus (*jě fü*), I was.

tu fus (*tü fü*), thou wast.

il fut (*ěēl fü*), he was.

nous fûmes (*noû fûm*), we were.

vous fûtes (*voû fût*), you were.

ils furent (*êl fûr*), they were.

Future.

Je serai (*jě sě-rěh*), I shall or will be.

tu seras (*tü sě-rā*), thou wilt be.

il sera (*êl sě-rā*), he will be.

nous serons (*noû sě-rong*), we shall or will be.

vous serez (*voû sě-rěh*), you will be.

ils seront (*êl sě-rong*), they will be.

1st Conditional.

Je serais (*jě sě-ray*), I should be.

tu serais (*tü sě-ray*), thou wouldst be.

il serait (*êl sě-ray*), he would be.

nous serions (*noû sě-ryong*), we should be.

vous seriez (*voû sě-ryěh*), you would be.

ils seraient (*êl sě-ray*), they would be.

COMPOUND TENSES.

été (*ay-tay*), been.

Perfect.

J'ai été (*jay ay-tay*), I have been.

tu as été, thou hast been.

il a été, he has been.

nous avons été, we have been.

vous avez été, you have been.

ils ont été, they have been.

Pluperfect.

J'avais été (<i>jă-vay-zay-tay</i>),	I had been.
tu avais été,	thou hadst been.
il avait été,	he had been.
nous avions été,	we had been.
vous aviez été,	you had been.
ils avaient été,	they had been.

2nd Pluperfect.

J'eus été (<i>jü zay-tay</i>),	I had been.
tu eus été,	&c.
il eut été,	&c.
nous eûmes été,	we had been.
vous eûtes été,	&c.
ils eurent été,	&c.

2nd Future.

J'aurai été (<i>jö-ray-ay-tay</i>),	I shall or will have been.
tu auras été,	&c.
il aura été,	&c.
nous aurons été,	we shall or will have been.
vous aurez été,	&c.
ils auront été,	&c.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais été (<i>jö-ray-zay-tay</i>),	I should have been.
tu aurais été,	&c.
il aurait été,	&c.
nous aurions été,	we should have been.
vous auriez été,	&c.
ils auraient été,	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je sois (<i>kě jě s'woāh</i>),	that I may be.
que tu sois (<i>kě tü s'woāh</i>),	&c.
qu'il soit (<i>kēēl s'woāh</i>),	&c.
que nous soyons (<i>kě nou s'woā-yong</i>),	&c.
que vous soyez (<i>kě vou s'woā-yēh</i>),	&c.
qu'ils soient (<i>kēēl s'woāh</i>),	&c.

Imperfect.

Que je fusse (<i>kě jě füs</i>),	that I might be.
que tu fusses (<i>kě tü füs</i>),	&c.
qu'il fût (<i>kēēl fü</i>),	&c.
que nous fussions (<i>füs-yong</i>),	&c.
que vous fussiez (<i>füs-yēh</i>),	&c.
qu'ils fussent (<i>füs</i>),	&c.

Perfect.

Que j'aie été (<i>kě jay ay-tay</i>),	that I may have been.
que tu aies été,	&c.
qu'il ait été,	&c.
que nous ayons été,	&c.
que vous ayez été,	&c.
qu'ils aient été,	&c.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse été (<i>kě jüs ay-tay</i>),	that I might have been.
que tu eusses été,	&c.
qu'il eût été,	&c.
que nous eussions été,	&c.
que vous eussiez été,	&c.
qu'ils eussent été (<i>kēēl züs tay-tay</i>),	&c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

sois (*s'woâh*) be. soyons (*s'woâh-yong*) let us be.
 qu'il soit let him be. soyez (*s'woân-yêh*) be (you).

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
être (<i>ay-tr</i>)	avoir été (<i>ă-voâr-ay-tay</i>)
d'être (<i>day-tr</i>)	d'avoir été (<i>dă-voâr-ay-tay</i>)
à être	à avoir été
} to be.	} to } have } been.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
étant (<i>ay-tāng</i>) being.	été (<i>ay-tay</i>) been, [fem. unchanged.]
	ayant été (<i>ay-yāng tay-tay</i>) having been.

Words.

Hôtel (<i>ôh-tell</i>).	Hotel.
le maître de l'hôtel (<i>may-tr</i>),	the landlord.
le concierge (<i>kong-syêrsh</i>),	the porter (night-porter).
le garçon (<i>gar-song</i>),	the waiter.
le commissionnaire,	the servant, the commissioner.
la bonne,	} the housemaid.
la fille (de chambre),	
la salle à manger (<i>māng-jay</i>),	the dining-room.
la salle des voyageurs (<i>voā-yā-jeūr</i>),	the coffee-room, the break- fast-room; the parlor.
la chambre (<i>shāng-br</i>),	the room.
la chambre donnant sur la rue (<i>sür lā rü</i>),	the front-room.

la chambre donnant sur la	the back-room.
cour (<i>coūr</i>),	
la table d'hôte (<i>tāhbl dote</i>),	the ordinary, table d'hôte,
la note,	
l'addition (<i>ād-dēē-syong</i>), }	the bill.
au premier (<i>prē-myēh</i>),	on the first floor.
au second (<i>sē-gong</i>),	on the second floor.
au troisième (<i>troāh-zyēhm</i>),	on the third floor.
le vestibule (<i>vē-stēē-bül</i>),	the hall.
l'escalier (<i>lēs-kāh-lyēh</i>),	the staircase.
la marche (<i>marsh</i>),	the step.

Translate the following

Exercise

into English, and then again, without assistance of the book, into French.

LE DÎNER.

Bon jour, cher ami. Vous voilà (*beho'd, then*), revenu (*returned*) de voyage? Depuis (*since*) quand êtes-vous à Paris? Depuis hier soir. Ma première visite est pour vous. C'est bien aimable (*amiable*) de votre part (*on your part=of you, in you, &c.*). J'espère que vous me ferez (*future of faire*) l'amitié (*friendship, favor*) de dîner avec moi.

Comment trouvez-vous ce potage (*soup*)? Excellent; je vois (*I see*) que votre cuisinier (*cook, kwēē-zēē-nyēh*), est un homme de goût. Permettez-moi (*permit, allow me*) de vous verser (*pour out*) un verre de Madère (*Madeira*). Un petit verre de madère après la soupe (*soup*) ne fait

jamais (*never*) de mal (*does never any harm*). Bien, au contraire.—Puis-je vous offrir (*offer*) une tranche de boeuf (*beef*), ou préférez-vous un biftek (*beefsteak*, often called *chateaubriand*)? J'aime bien le biftek cuit à point (*well done*, *kwee ah pō-aing*). Veuillez donc vous servir (*to help yourself*). Voici des pommes de terre (*potatoes*), des épinards (*spinach*) et des choux-fleurs (*cauliflower*). Aimez-vous les épinards? Non, monsieur, pas du tout (*not at all*). Dans ce cas (*then, in that case*) prenez (*take*) des choux-fleurs ou un autre légume (*vegetables*). Quel magnifique (*măn-yēē-fēēk = magnificent*) saumon (*salmon*) on apporte là (*there*). C'est vraiment (*really*) une belle pièce (*pēē-ayse*). Voici (*there is*) de la sauce aux capres. Je l'aime mieux (*mee-eū, better*) à l'huile et au vinaigre. N'oubliez pas que les poissons (*fish*) demandent à nager (*swim*). Ne craignez rien (*ně krěn-yēh rēē-aing, don't be afraid, never fear!*); votre vieux bordeaux (*claret*) se recommande tout seul (*alone*). Jean (*John*), passez-moi le sel et le poivre, l'huile et le vinaigre.

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART IV.

IV.

(Continuation.)

29. You may depend (*compter*) on it (*y*).
30. Good morning, sir; how did you pass the first night (*la première nuit*) in our house?
31. Was the bed quite to your taste? (*Iterally*: Was the bed arranged [*arrangé*] according to [*d'après*] your habits [*vos habitudes*]?)
32. Not quite (*pas tout à fait*), madam; I should like to have another pillow (*un oreiller de plus*).
33. Please put on (*mettez*) another blanket (*une couverture de plus*).
34. Pray, give me a bolster (*traversin*); I cannot sleep (*dormir*), when my head lies so low (= when I have the head too [*trop*] low [*basse*]).
35. This evening you will find everything arranged to your liking (*goût*).
36. To-morrow morning, precisely at eight o'clock, you will bring me some coffee with milk and some rolls.
37. Do you keep (*tenez-vous*) an ordinary (*table d'hôte*)?
38. At what o'clock is the table d'hôte?

IV.

(Continuation.)

29. Vous pouvez y (sêê) compter (cong-têh).
30. Bonjour (bong-jouër), monsieur; comment avez-vous passé la première nuit (prêm-yêhr n'wêê) dans notre maison?
31. Le lit était-il arrangé (âr-râng-jay) d'après vos habitudes (dâh-pray vo zâh-bee-tüü)?
32. Pas tout à fait (tou-tâh-fay) madame; je voudrais avoir un oreiller de plus (eün noh-rê-yêh dê plü).
33. Mettez-moi (mê-tay-m'woâh), je vous prie, une couverture de plus (ün cou-vêr-tür dê plü).
34. Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, un traversin (trâ-vêr-saing); je ne puis dormir (dor-mêêr), quand j'ai la tête trop basse (trôh bâss).
35. Ce soir (sê s'woâr) vous trouverez tout cela arrangé à votre goût (gou).
36. Demain matin à huit heures précises vous m'apporterez du café au lait et des petits-pains (day p'têê paing).
37. Tenez-vous table d'hôte (täbl dôt)?
38. A quelle heure dîne-t-on à la table d'hôte (dêên-long âh lâ täbl dôt)?

39. You can have lunch (*déjeuner à la fourchette*) in the breakfast room (*la salle des voyageurs*).
40. Would you be kind enough to register (*or enter*) your name and profession (*profession*) in the traveller's book?
41. Did you leave the key (*clef*) in your door, or have you it with (*sur*) you?
42. Will you please give it to me, so that the housemaid may (*puisse*) clean (*faire*) your room?
43. Waiter, did you order a cab?
44. Have you brought all my luggage downstairs (brought downstairs = *descendu*)?
45. Is this the waiting-room?
46. Yes, sir; please take your ticket at the office and go into the waiting-room.
47. Is that our train?
48. Yes, that is the express-train for London.
49. I beg your pardon, sir; which is the way to St. Honoré Street? (*Literally*: Street St. Honoré, if you please?)
50. I beg your pardon, sir; which is the way to the opera-house?
51. Go straight ahead (*tout droit*).
52. Pass (over) the bridge (*le pont*) and then (*puis*) go right ahead.
53. What do you want to buy?
54. Different things (*différentes choses*); linen (*de la toile*) in the first place (*d'abord*), to make some shirts, and then (*puis*) neckties, handkerchiefs, and stockings.
55. Does Mr. N. live (*or dwell* = *demeure-t-il*) in this house?

39. Dans la salle des voyageurs vous pouvez déjeuner à la fourchette (*fouër-shët*).
40. Auriez-vous la bonté (*ör-yêh voü lâ bong-tay*) d'écrire votre nom et votre profession (*proh fës-yong*) sur le livre des voyageurs (*vo-âh-yâ-jeür*) ?
41. Avez-vous laissé la clef (*klay*) de la chambre à votre porte, ou l'avez-vous sur vous ?
42. Veuillez me la donner pour que la bonne puisse (*pü-ls*) faire votre chambre ?
43. Garçon, avez-vous fait (*fay*) venir un fiacre (*fëë-â-k'r*) ?
44. Avez-vous descendu (*dě-sāng-dü*) tous mes effets (*may-zay-fay*) ?
45. Est-ce ici (*ay-sëë-sëë*) la salle d'attente ?
46. Oui, monsieur; veuillez prendre votre billet au guichet, et passez à la salle d'attente.
47. Est-ce là (*there*) notre train ?
48. Oui, monsieur, c'est l'express (*lex-pray*) pour Londres.
49. Pardon (*par-dong*), monsieur; la rue St. Honoré, s'il vous plaît (*rü saing-to-no-ray, sëë voü play*) ?
50. Pardon, monsieur; l'opéra, s'il vous plaît ?
51. Allez tout droit (*toü droâh*).
52. Passez le pont et puis (*pü-ëë*) allez tout droit.
53. Que voulez-vous acheter ?
54. Différentes choses (*dif-fay-rāngt shows*); de la toile (*twoâhl*) d'abord (*dä-bör*) pour me faire des chemises, et puis (*pü-ëë*) des cravates, des mouchoirs (*mou-shwoâr*) et des bas (*bâh*).
55. Monsieur N. demeure-t-il (*dě-meür-tëël*) dans cette maison ?

56. Is Mr. N. at home, porter?
57. Does Mr. B. live here? (*Literally*: Is it here at Mr. B.'s?)
58. Is Mr. N. at home (*i.e.* for callers)? (*Literally*: Is Mr. N. visible?)
59. Yes, sir, walk in (*entrez*), pray.
60. Have I the honor of speaking to Mr. D.?
61. I have the honor of addressing Mr. D. (I think)?
62. That's my name. (These last eight phrases are idiomatic expressions, and can be given only so.)

IV.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Always make your purchases in Paris in the large stores, where everything is sold very cheap and at fixed prices. For instance, here is a ball-dress which I have just bought for less than fifty francs.

56. Monsieur N. est-il chez lui, concierge?
57. Est-ce ici (*ays-sē-sē*) chez Monsieur B. (*bay*)?
58. Monsieur N. est-il visible (*vē-sēbl*) ?
59. Oui monsieur; entrez (*āng-tray*) s'il vous plaît (*sē voū play*).
60. Est-ce à (*ays ā*) monsieur D. (*day*) que j'ai l'honneur (*lōn-neūr*) de parler ?
61. C'est à monsieur D. que j'ai l'honneur de parler ?
62. (C'est) moi-même (*say mwoāh-maim*).

 IV.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

À Paris faites toujours vos emplettes dans les
 āh pārēē fate tou-jour voh zāng-plēt dāng lay
grands magasins, où tout se vend très-bon marché
 grāng mā-gā-zaing oū tou sē vāng tray bong mār-shay
et à prix fixe. Par exemple, voici une robe de bal
 ay ah prēē fix. pārr ēg-zāng-pl voāh-sēē ün robe dē bāhl
que je viens d'acheter pour moins de cinquante
 kē jē vyaing dāsh-tēh pour mō-aing dē saing-kāng
francs.
 frāng

1.

Always do your shopping in Paris in the large stores, where everything is sold very cheap and at fixed prices.

At; in; to; [Distinguish between à (*with accent*) *at, in,* and a (*without accent*) *has.*]

Paris

make; do¹

your²

purchases

always

in

the

1) **Faire**, to make, to do, is an irregular verb, of which the pupil may now learn the following tenses :

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Je fais (<i>fay</i>).	Je faisais.	Je ferai.
tu fais (<i>fay</i>).	tu faisais.	tu feras.
il fait (<i>fay</i>).	il faisait.	il fera.
nous faisons (<i>fay-zong</i>).	nous faisions.	nous ferons.
vous faites (<i>fate</i>).	vous faisiez.	vous ferez.
ils font (<i>fong</i>).	ils faisaient.	ils feront.
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>
J'ai fait.	J'avais fait.	Fais.
tu as fait.	tu avais fait.	faisons.
&c.	&c.	faites.

2) The so-called possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives

1.

À Paris faites toujours vos emplettes dans
 āh pā-rēē fate toū-jouūr voh zāng-plēt dāng
 les grands magasins, où tout se vend très-bon
 lay grāng mā-gā zaing oū toū sē vāng tray bong
 marché et à prix fixe.
 mār-shay ay āh prēē fīx

À (*āh*) [The accent on capital letters is usually omitted.]

Paris (*pā-rēē*)

faites¹ (*fate*) [Imperative of the irregular verb *faire*, to make, to do.]

vos² (*voh*) [Plural of *votre* ;

emplettes (*āng-plēt*)

toujours (*toū-jouūr*)

dans (*dāng*)

les (*lay*)

must always agree in gender and number with the noun they qualify
 They are :

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Masculine.

Feminine.

Both genders.

Mon (*mong*).

Ma (*māh*).

Mes (*may*), my.

ton (*tong*).

ta (*tāh*).

tes (*tay*), thy.

son (*song*).

sa (*sāh*).

ses (*say*), his, her.

notre (*nōt*).

notre (*nōt*).

nos (*nōh*), our.

votre (*vōt*).

votre (*vōt*).

vos (*vōh*), your.

leur (*leūr*).

leur (*leūr*).

leurs (*leūr*), their.

Examples : *Mon* livre (masc.), my book ; *ma* maison (fem.), my house ; *mes* emplettes, my purchases.

Remark : For euphony *mon*, *ton*, and *son* are used before *feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or unspirated 'h'*, as : *mon* opinion (*mon nō-pēt-nyong*), my opinion ; *son* humeur, his humor.

large¹

stores

where

all; everything

itself

sells

very

good

market; market-price

very cheap; at a very cheap price

and

at

price

fixed

1. What do you want to do this forenoon?
2. I should like to do my shopping; will you accompany me?
3. Why do you want to make your purchases in this small shop (*cette boutique*)?
4. Buy always in the large stores, where everything is sold at fixed rates.

1) The *adjective* must always agree in number and gender with the noun it relates to; i.e., *grand*, when it refers to a masculine noun;

grands ¹ (*grāng*)

magasins (*mā-gā-zaing*)

où (*ou*) [Distinguish between où, where, and ou (*without* accent),
or.]

tout (*toū*)

se (*sé*)

vend (*vāng*) ²

très (*tray*)

bon (*bong*)

marché (*mār-shay*)

très-bon marché

et (*ay*)

à (*āh*)

prix (*prēē*)

fixe (*fix*)

1. Que voulez-vous faire ce matin ?
2. Je voudrais faire mes^emplettes. voulez-vous m'accompagner (*mā-cong-pān-yēh*) ?
3. Pourquoi voulez-vous faire vos^emplettes dans cette boutique (*boū-tēēk*) ?
4. Achetez toujours dans les grands magasins, où tout se vend à prix fixe.

grande, when referring to feminines ; *grands*, when referring to several masculines, and *grandes*, when relating to several feminines.

2) See the conjugation of *vendre*, Grammatical Remarks in No. VI.

5. I should like to buy some cloth (*du drap*) to make a coat of (= of which [*de quoi*] to make a coat).
6. What sort (*quelle sorte*) of cloth do you wish, sir?
7. Have you any samples (*or patterns*)?
8. Yes, sir; here are (*voici*) samples (*or patterns*) of all the pieces of cloth (*de tous les draps*) which we have in stock (*en magasin*).
9. What (*quel*) is the price of this one (*celui-ci*)?
10. That costs (*il est de*) eighteen (*dix-huit*) francs a meter (*le mètre*).
11. That (*ça*) seems (*semble*) very dear (*cher*) to me.
12. That seems rather (= a little, *un peu*) dear.
13. I beg your pardon, sir, this (*ce*) is not dear for the quality (*la qualité*); on the contrary (*au contraire*), it is very cheap.
14. How much does this cost?
15. That costs ten (*dix*) francs.
16. What (*quel*) is the price of this (= of this object [*de cet objet*])?
17. What is the price of these gloves (*ces gants*)?
18. What is the price of this silk dress (*cette robe de soie*)?
19. How (*combien*) do you sell this (*cela*)?
20. How (*or at what price, combien*) do you sell this silk?
21. How much do you charge for this? (*Literally: How much this object?*)

1) We have the following pronouns for our **this**, viz., **ce** (masc.); **cette** (fem.); **ces** (plural, both genders), as: *ce train (sè traing) this train*; *cette couverture, this cover*; *ces enfants (say sāng-fāng) these children*.

5. Je voudrais acheter du drap (*drāh*) de quoi faire un habit.
6. Quelle sorte de drap désirez-vous, monsieur?
7. Avez-vous des échantillons (*day zay-shāng-tēē-yong*)?
8. Oui, monsieur; voici (*voāh-sēē*) des échantillons de tous les draps que nous avons en magasin.
9. Quel est le prix de celui-ci (*kēll ay lē prēē dē cē-lūēē-sēē*)?
10. Il est de dix-huit francs le mètre (*ēēl lay dē dēē zwēēt frāng lē maytr*).
11. Ça me semble très-cher (*sā mē sāngbl tray shayr*).
12. Ça me semble un peu cher (*eūng peū shayr*).
13. Pardon, monsieur; pour la qualité (*kā-lēē-tay*), ce n'est pas cher, au contraire (*cong-trayr*), c'est très-bon marché.
14. { Combien cela coûte-t-il (*kong-byaing sē-lah cōūt-tēēl*)?
 { Combien ça (*sāh*) coûte-t-il?
15. { Cela coûte dix (*dēē*) francs.
 { C'est de dix francs.
16. Quel est le prix de cet¹ objet (*kēll lay lē prēē dē sēt tob-jēh*)?
17. Quel est le prix de ces¹ gants?
18. Quel est le prix de cette¹ robe de soie (*robe dē s'woāh*)?
19. Combien vendez-vous cela (*kong-byaing vāng-dēh vou sē-lāh*)?
20. Combien vendez-vous cette soie?
21. Combien cet¹ objet (*kong-byaing sēt tob-jēh*)?

Remark: Instead of *ce*, this, we must write *cet* before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or a silent *h*, as: *cet* enfant (*sē-lāng-fāng*), this child; *cet* homme (*sē tōm*), this man.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Of the Negative and Interrogative forms of the Auxiliaries.

Whereas in English the *negation* is simply expressed by the particle *not*, the French use *two* negative words, viz. **ne** and **pas**, the first of which is placed before the simple verb, the other after it, as: *Je ne suis pas*, I am not.—In compound tenses, the participle *follows pas*, as: *Je n'ai pas eu*, I have not had.

In interrogations, the pronoun which is the subject of the verb is placed after it, and they are joined by a hyphen, as: *as-tu? avez-vous?* — When the third person singular ends with a vowel, *-t-* is placed between the verb and *il, elle* or *on*: *a-t-il? a-t-elle? a-t-on? aura-t-on?*

The proper use of the French negation being somewhat difficult, the pupil will do well to study thoroughly the

I. Negative Form of the Auxiliaries.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Avoir, to have.

Être, to be.

Present Tense.

Je n'ai pas, I have not.

Je ne suis pas, I am not.

tu n'as pas, thou hast not.

tu n'es pas, thou art not.

il n'a pas, he *or* it has not.il n'est pas, he *or* it is not.

elle n'a pas, she has not.

elle n'est pas, she is not.

nous n'avons pas, we have not. nous ne sommes pas, we are not.

vous n'avez pas, you have not. vous n'êtes pas, you are not.

ils n'ont pas, they have not. ils ne sont pas, they are not.

Imperfect.

Je n'avais pas, I had not, &c. Je n'étais pas, I was not, &c.

Preterite.

Je n'eus pas, I had not, &c. Je ne fus pas, I was not, &c.

Future.

Je n'aurai pas, I shall not have, &c. Je ne serai pas, I shall not be, &c.

1st Conditional.

Je n'aurais pas, I should not have, &c. Je ne serais pas, I should not be, &c.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Perfect.

Je n'ai pas eu, I have not had, &c. Je n'ai pas été, I have not been, &c.

Pluperfect.

Je n'avais pas eu, I had not had, &c. Je n'avais pas été, I had not been, &c.

2nd Future.

Je n'aurai pas eu, I shall not have had, &c. Je n'aurai pas été, I shall not have been, &c.

2nd Conditional.

Je n'aurais pas eu, I should not have had, &c. Je n'aurais pas été, I should not have been, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je n'aie pas, that I (may) not have, &c. Que je ne sois pas, that I (may) not be, &c.

Preterite.

Que je n'eusse pas, that I might not have, &c. Que je ne fusse pas, that I were not, &c.

Perfect.

Que je n'aie pas^{eu}, that I (may) not have had, &c. Que je n'aie pas^{été}, that I (may) not have been, &c.

Pluperfect.

Que je n'eusse pas^{eu}, that I (might) not have had, &c. Que je n'eusse pas^{été}, that I (might) not have been, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

N'aie pas, have not. Ne sois pas, be not, do not be.
 n'ayons pas, let us not have. ne soyons pas, let us not be.
 n'ayez pas, have not. ne soyez pas, be not.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

N'avoir pas, } not to have. N'être pas, } not to be.
 ne pas avoir, } ne pas être, }

Perfect.

N'avoir pas^{eu}, not to have had. N'avoir pas^{été}, not to have been.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

N'ayant pas, not having. N'étant pas, not being.

Past.

N'ayant pas eu, not having had. N'ayant pas été, not having been.

II. Interrogative Form of the Two Auxiliaries.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Ai-je, have I?	Suis-je, am I?
as-tu, hast thou?	es-tu, art thou?
a-t-il, has he?	est-il, is he?
a-t-elle, has she?	est-elle, is she?
avons-nous, have we?	sommes nous, are we?
avez-vous, have you?	êtes-vous, are you?
ont-ils, } have they?	sont-ils, } are they?
ont-elles, }	sont-elles, }

Imperfect.

Avais-je, had I? &c. Étais-je, was I? &c.

Pret. rite.

Eus-je, had I? &c. Fus-je, was I? &c.

Future.

Aurai-je, shall I have? &c. Serai-je, shall I be? &c.

1st Conditional.

Aurais-je, should I have? Serais-je, should I be? &c.
&c.

Perfect.

Ai-je eu, have I had? &c. Ai-je été, have I been? &c.

Pluperfect.

Avais-je eu, had I had? &c. Avais-je été, had I been? &c.

2nd Future.

Aurai-je eu, shall I have Aurai-je été, shall I have
had? been?

2nd Conditional.

Aurais-je eu, should I have Aurais-je été, should I have
had? &c. been? &c.

III. Negative and Interrogative Form.**INDICATIVE MOOD.***Present.*

N'ai-je pas, have I not?	Ne suis-je pas, am I not?
n'as-tu pas, hast thou not?	n'es-tu pas, art thou not?
n'a-t-il pas, has he not?	n'est-il pas, is he not?
n'avons-nous pas, have we not?	ne sommes-nous pas, are we not?
n'avez-vous pas, have you not?	n'êtes-vous pas, are you not? ne sont-ils pas, are they
n'ont-ils pas, have they not?	not?

Imperfect.

N'avais-je pas, had I not? &c. N'étais-je pas, was I not? &c.

Preterite.

N'eus-je pas, had I not? &c. Ne fus-je pas, was I not? &c.

1st Future.

N'aurai-je pas, shall I not Ne serai-je pas, shall I not
have? &c. be? &c.

1st Conditional.

N'aurais-je pas, should I not Ne serais-je pas, should I
have? &c. not be? &c.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Perfect.

N'ai-je pas eu, have I not had? &c. N'ai-je pas été, have I not been? &c.

Pluperfect.

N'avais-je pas eu, had I not had? &c. N'avais-je pas été, had I not been? &c.

2nd Future.

N'aurai-je pas eu, shall I not have had? &c. N'aurai-je pas été, shall I not have been? &c.

2nd Conditional.

N'aurais-je pas eu, should I not have had? &c. N'aurais-je pas été, should I not have been? &c.

2.

The pupil must make himself now familiar with the principal tenses of the

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Donner, to give.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je donne (<i>dôn</i>), I give.	nous donnons (<i>don-nong</i>), we give.
tu donnes (<i>dôn</i>), thou givest.	vous donnez (<i>don-nêh</i>), you give.
il donne (<i>dôn</i>), he gives.	ils donnent (<i>dôn</i>),
elle donne, she gives.	elles donnent (<i>dôn</i>), } they give.

Imperfect.

Je donnais (<i>don-nay</i>), I gave.	nous donnions (<i>don-nyong</i>), we gave.
tu donnais, thou gavest.	vous donniez (<i>don-nyēh</i>), you gave.
il donnait (<i>don-nay</i>), he gave.	ils donnaient (<i>don-nay</i>), they gave.

Preterite.

Je donnai (<i>don-nēh</i>), I gave.	nous donnâmes (<i>don-nāhm</i>), we gave.
tu donnas (<i>don-nāh</i>), thou gavest.	vous donnâtes (<i>don-nāht</i>), you gave.
il donna (<i>don-nāh</i>), he gave.	ils donnèrent (<i>don-nayr</i>) they gave.

1st Future.

Je donnerai (<i>dōn'-ray</i>), I shall give.	nous donnerons (<i>don-ně-rong</i>), we shall give.
tu donneras (<i>dōn'-rāh</i>), thou wilt give.	vous donnerez (<i>don-ně-rēh</i>), you will give.
il donnera (<i>dōn'-rāh</i>), he will give.	ils donneront (<i>don-ně-rong</i>), they will give.

1st Conditional.

Je donnerais (<i>don-ně-ray</i>), I should give.	nous donnerions (<i>don-ně-ryong</i>), we should give.
tu donnerais (<i>don-ně-ray</i>), &c.	vous donneriez (<i>don-ně-r-yēh</i>), &c.
il donnerait (<i>don-ně-ray</i>), &c.	ils donneraient (<i>don-ně-ray</i>), &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Donne (*dôn*), give. donnons (*don-nong*), let us
give.
donnez (*don-nêh*), give.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Donner, to give. de or à donner, to give.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je donne (*dôn*), that I que nous donnions (*dôn-*
(may) give. *nyong*), that we (may) give.
que tu donnes (*dôn*), &c. que vous donniez (*don-nyêh*),
&c.
qu'il donne (*dôn*), &c. qu'ils donnent (*dôn*) &c.

Imperfect.

Que je donnasse (*dôn-nâss*), que nous donnassions (*don-*
that I might give. *nâs-syong*), we might give.
que tu donnasses (*dôn-nâss*), que vous donnassiez (*dôn-*
&c. *nâs-syêh*), &c.
qu'il donnât (*don-nâh*), &c. qu'ils donnassent (*dôn-nâss*),
&c.

PARTICIPLES.

Donnant (*don-nâng*), giving. Donné (*don-nay*), f. donnée
en donnant, (*âng don-nâng*) (*don-nay*), given.
by giving.

COMPOUND TENSES.

In active verbs, these are formed with the Participle past and the auxiliary *avoir*, to have.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Avoir donné, to have given.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect (Compound of the Present).

J'ai donné, I have given.
 tu as donné, thou hast given.
 il a donné, he has given.
 nous avons donné, we have given.
 vous avez donné, you have given,
 ils ont donné, } they have given.
 elles ont donné, }

Pluperfect (Compound of the Imperfect).

J'avais donné, I had given, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus donné, I had given, &c.

2nd Future (Compound of the Future).

J'aurai donné, I shall have given, &c.

2nd Conditional.

J'aurais donné, I should have given.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Que j'aie donné, that I (may) have given.

Que tu aies donné, that thou (mayst) have given, &c.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse donné, that I (might) have given, &c.

ne donnes-tu pas? doest thou not give?
 ne donne-t-il pas? does he not give? &c.

Perfect.

Ai-je donné? as-tu donné? a-t-il donné? &c.

Have I given *or* did I give? &c.

Je n'ai *pas* donné, tu n'as pas donné, &c.

N'ai-je pas donné? n'as-tu pas donné? &c.

Conjugate in the same manner: *parler*, to speak; *porter*, to carry, to take; *admirer*, to admire; *aimer*, to love, &c.

N.B.—Je is apostrophed before a vowel, as: J'aime, j'admire.

Translate the following

Letter

into English and then render it again into French:

*Monsieur Gustave Fournier à Paris.*¹

Londres, le treize (13) Juin (June), 1881.

MONSIEUR,

Nous avons l'honneur de vous remettre (*remit*) ci-inclus (*inclosed*) 5000 francs (cinq mille francs) sur (*on*) Paris, dont (*wherewith*) veuillez créditer (*credit*) notre compte² (*account*) et nous accuser réception³ (*and inform us of receipt thereof*).

Nous avons l'honneur de vous saluer,⁴

(*Yours very respectfully*)

R. & C.

1) This exercise is a sample of a simple French business-letter.

2) Pronounce=*kray-dē-tēh nôt kongt.*

3) Pronounce=*noū ză-kū-zēh ray-sēps-yong.*

4) *Literally*: 'We have the honor to salute you.' This phrase corresponds to our: 'Very respectfully.' Pronounce=*noū ză-vong lôn-neūr dē vou sâ-tū-ēh.*

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART V.

V.

(Continuation.)

22. That is very dear (*cher*).
23. That's awfully dear (*horriblement cher*).
24. Quite the contrary (*au contraire*), madam, that's very cheap.
25. Why' t'ake this article (*cet objet-ci*); that is cheaper (*meilleur marché*).
26. Tell me your lowest price, if you please (= tell me the last [*le dernier*] price, if you please)
27. I do not like to bargain with people (= I do not like to bargain [*à marchander*]).
28. Please, tell me your lowest price, sir, I do not like to bargain with people.
29. We have only (*ne-que*)¹ one price, madam.
30. I have only *one* price, madam.
31. I cannot give it you at a lower price (= for less [*à moins*]) I assure you (*je vous assure*), madam.
32. I can give it you cheaper (=less dear [*moins cher*]), but not in the same (*même*) quality (*qualité*).
33. Can't you give it to me any cheaper (*moins cher*), sir?
34. I can get it (*procurer*) cheaper somewhere else (*ailleurs*).
35. I beg your pardon, madam, you are mistaken (*vous*

1) *Only* is often expressed by *ne-que*. The construction is the same as *ne-pas*.

V.

(Continuation.)

22. C'est bien cher (*say byaing shayr*).
23. C'est horriblement cher (*say tor-rēe-blē-māng shayr*).
24. Au contraire, madame, c'est très bon marché.

25. Prenez donc (*prē-nēh dong*) cet objet-ci, c'est meilleur marché (*sě tob-jēh sēē, say mē-yeūr mar-shay*).
26. Dites-moi le dernier prix, s'il vous plaît (*or je vous prie = dēēt m'woāh lē dēr-nyēh prēē jě vou prēē*).
27. Je n'aime pas à marchander (*jě naym pāh āh mār-shāng-dēh*).
28. Dites-moi le dernier prix, s'il vous plaît, monsieur; je n'aime pas à marchander.
29. Nous n'avons qu'un² prix, madame (*noū nā-vong keūng prēē mā-dām*).
30. Je n'ai qu'un prix (*je nay keūng prēē*), madame.
31. Je ne puis (*pū-ēē*) vous le donner à moins (*mō-aiŋg*) je vous assure (*jě vou zās-sūr*), madame.
32. Je peux vous le donner moins cher; mais cela ne sera pas la même (*maym*) qualité (*kā-lēē-tay*).
33. Ne pouvez-vous pas me le donner moins cher, monsieur?
34. Je peux me le procurer (*prō-cū-ray*) ailleurs (*āh-yeūr*) à meilleur marché (*āh mē-yeūr mār-shay*).
35. Pardon (*pār-dōng*), madame, vous vous trompez

vous trompez); you will surely (= at least [*du moins*]) get an inferior (*inférieure*) quality.

36. How can you ask me to let you have it (*que je vous le laisse*) at this price?
37. I cannot sell with loss (*à perte*). (*Pourtant* means yet, however, nevertheless, and cannot be rendered into English in this phrase.)
38. I assure you, I give it you at cost-price (*au prix coûtant*).
39. Tell me your lowest (*le juste*) price, please.
40. I assure you, sir, that is the very lowest (*c'est tout au juste*, idiomatic French expression).
41. Is that your lowest price?
42. I cannot give it you any cheaper (*à moins*). I never ask too much (= overcharge [*je ne surrais jamais*]). That is a fixed price.
43. Did you sell your horse?
44. For how much did you sell it?
45. This book sells (*se vend*) very well.
46. I should like to have a bonnet of white satin (*satin blanc*) trimmed (*garni*) with lace (*dentelles*):
47. Try (*essayez*) this one, if you please, madam; it is very becoming to you (*il vous va très-bien*), I assure you.
48. Do you think so? Well, to speak frankly (*franchement*), I am of the same (= of your) opinion (*avis*).
49. This hat is exceedingly (*à merveille*) becoming to you.
50. This dress does not fit you.

- (*trong-pay*); du moins vous aurez une qualité inférieure (*dù mô-aing vou xō-rēh ùn kâ-lē-tay aing-fay-ryeur*).
36. Comment pouvez-vous demander que je vous le laisse (*layss*) à ce prix ?
37. Je ne peux pourtant (*tāng*) pas vendre à perte (*vāng-dr rā pērt*).
38. Je vous le donne au prix coûtant, je vous assure (*jě vou lē dōn oh prēē cou-tāng jě vou zā-sūr*).
39. Dites-moi le juste prix (*lě just prēē*), je vous prie.
40. Monsieur, je vous assure, que c'est tout au juste (*kě say tout tōh just*).
41. Est-ce là votre dernier prix (*dēr-nyēh prēē*) ?
42. Je ne puis vous le donner à moins. Je ne vous sur fais (*sūr-fay*) pas. C'est un prix fixe (*say teūng prēē fix*).
43. Avez-vous vendu (*vāng-dù*) votre cheval (*shē-vāhl*) ?
44. Combien (*or. à quel prix*) l'avez-vous vendu ?
45. Ce livre se vend très-bien.
46. Je voudrais avoir un chapeau de satin blanc (*sā-taing blāng*) garni de dentelles (*garnēē dē dāng-tell*).
47. Essayez-le (*es-say-yēh lě*), s'il vous plaît, madame. Je vous assure, qu'il vous va très-bien.
48. Vouz trouvez ? Eh bien ! Franchement (*frāng-shē-māng*) je suis de votre avis (*vot-rāh-vēē*).
49. Ce chapeau vous va à merveille (*āh mer-vē-yē*).
50. Cette robe ne vous va pas.

2.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

**For instance, here is a ball-dress which I have
just bought for less than fifty francs.**

Through

example ; pattern ; sample ; instance (*par exemple* means *for instance*).

here is ; there is ; there are ; behold¹

a ball-dress²

which³

1) *Voilà, here is, and voilà, there is,* are peculiarly construed in connection with pronouns. The French always say for instance : *Here I am, me voilà, or me voici. There he is, le voilà. There they are, les voilà. Here we are, nous voilà. There we are arrived, nous voici arrivés.*

2) Why must this construction be used ?

3) We have only **one relative pronoun for who, which and that, viz., qui.**—*Qui,* however, is always the *nominative case* and refers both to *persons* and *things* whether they are in the *singular* or the *plural*. For instance :

Le garçon qui l'a fait, est parti, the boy who has done it, is gone.

Les garçons qui l'ont fait, sont partis, the boys who have done it, are gone.

2.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Par exemple, voici une robe de bal, que je

pār ěg-sā gpl voāh-sēē ün robe dē bāhl kē jē

viens d'acheter pour moins de cinquante francs.

vyaing dāsh-tay poür mo-aing dē saing kāng frāng.

Par (*pār*)

exemple (*ěg-sāng-pl*) [masc.]

voici¹ (*voāh-sēē*)

une robe de bal² (*ün robe de bāhl*)

que³ (*kē*)

Le livre qui est sur la table, est à mon frère, the book which is on the table, belongs to my brother.

Les livres qui sont sur la table, sont à mon frère, the books which are on the table, belong to my brother.

There is also only one relative pronoun for whom, which and that when in the accusative case, viz., que; as:

L'homme que vous avez vu, l'a fait, the man whom you saw has done it.

Le livre que vous avez lu, est à ma sœur, the book which you have read, belongs to my sister.

Remark: The French must always express the relative, though we frequently omit it in English.

I come ; I am coming¹

from buying

I have just bought (The literal translation is: *I come from buying*).

for

less

of

fifty

francs

for less than fifty francs (Than after a *comparative* is usually expressed by *que* ; but after *moins* and *plus* we have to use *de* when a *numeral* follows, as is the case here).

3.

1. Tell me the lowest price for (*de*) this bonnet.

2. Fifty francs, madam.

1) *Je viens, I come, I am coming*, is the *present tense* of the regular verb *venir* of which the pupil may learn the following most important tenses :

Present.

Je viens (*vyaing*),
tu viens (*vyaing*),
il vient (*vyaing*),
nous venons (*vě-nong*),
vous venez (*vě-něh*),
ils viennent (*vyěn*).

Imperfect.

Je venais (*vě-nay*),
tu venais,
il venait,
nous venions (*vě-nyong*),
vous veniez (*vě-nyěh*),
ils venaient (*vě-nay*).

je viens¹ (*vyaiŋg*)

d'acheter (*dāsh-tay*)

je viens d'acheter (The English 'just, just now' must be given by *venir de*, as : I have just seen, je viens de voir ; I have just received, je viens de recevoir).

pour (*poür*)

moins (*mô-aiŋg*)

de (*dě*)

cinquante (*saing-kāng*)

francs (*frāng*)

pour moins de cinquante francs.

3.

1. Dites-moi le dernier prix de ce chapeau (*lě děr-nyēh prēē dě sě shā-po*).
2. C'est cinquante francs, madame.

Future.

Je viendrai (*vyaiŋg-drēh*),
tu viendras (*vyaiŋg-drāh*),
il viendra (*vyaiŋg-drāh*),
nous viendrons (*vyaiŋg-drong*),
vous viendrez (*vyaiŋg-drēh*),
ils viendront (*vyaiŋg-drong*),

Perfect.

Je suis venu (*vě-nū*), &c.

Imperative. Viens (*vyaiŋg*), venons (*vě-nong*), venez (*vě-něh*).

Conditional.

Je viendrais (*vyaiŋg-dray*),
tu viendrais,
il viendrait,
nous viendrions (*vyaiŋg-drēē ong*),
vous viendriez (*vyaiŋg-drēē-ēh*),
ils viendraient (*vyaiŋg-dray*).

Pluperfect.

J'étais venu (*vě-nū*), &c.

3. You will surely let me have it for forty? (= You will pass [*vous passerez*] it me well at forty [*quarante*]?)
4. No madam, that is the lowest (*c'est tout au juste*).
5. I cannot let you have it at a lower figure. I never make any overcharges (= I cannot give it you at less (*à moins*), I overcharge never, [*ne — jamais* ¹]).
6. I can get (*procurer*) it cheaper somewhere else (*ailleurs*).
7. You are mistaken (= you mistake yourself [*vous vous trompez*]), madam; at least [*du moins*] you will get an inferior quality [*une qualité inférieure*]).
8. We sell at stated prices only (*ne — que*).
9. Very well (*eh bien*), let us split (= divide, *partageons*) the difference (*le différent*). I will give you forty-five (*quarante-cinq*) francs.
10. Quite impossible. We never ask too much. All our prices are marked (*sont marqués*) in plain figures (*en chiffres connus*).
11. The postman (*facteur*) has just brought a letter for you (= comes from bringing, &c.).
12. I just received this telegram and hope (*j'espère*) its contents (*contenu*) will prove satisfactory to you (= will satisfy you, *vous satisfera*).
13. My brother has just sold his furniture (*meublier*).

1) Never is always expressed by *ne — jamais*; nothing or not anything by *ne — rien*; no one, not any one by *ne — personne*. Ob-

3. Vous me le passerez bien à quarante (*ah kâh-rângt*) ?
4. Non, madame, c'est tout au juste (*say toû toh jüst*).
5. Je ne puis vous le donner à moins. Je ne surrais jamais¹ (*jâh-may*).
6. Je peux me le procurer ailleurs à meilleur marché (*prö-kü-reh ah-yeür ah më-yeür mâr-shay*).
7. Vous vous trompez (*trong-pêh*), madame; du moins vous aurez une qualité inférieure (*ün kâh-lê-tây aing-fay-ryeür*).
8. Nous ne vendons qu'à prix fixe (*ně vâng-dong kâh prêe fix*).
9. Eh bien, partageons le différent. Je vous donnerai quarante-cinq francs (*par-tâh-jong lě dif-fay-râng. Jě vou dön-ně-rêh kâh-râng saing frâng*).
10. C'est impossible (*taing-pôh-séebi*). Nous ne surraisons jamais (*sür-fay-zong jâ-may*). Tous nos prix (*prêe*) sont marqués (*mâr-kay*) en chiffres connus (*âng shifr cõn-nü*).
11. Le facteur vient d'apporter une lettre pour vous.
12. Je viens de recevoir ce télégramme et j'espère que son contenu (*cong-tě-nü*) vous satisfera (*să-tis-fě-râh*).
13. Mon frère vient de vendre son mobilier (*mô-bêe-yêh*).

serve that *ne* must be always placed before the verb (*without pas* accompanying it).

- Did I tell you that he is going (*qu'il va*¹) to live in the country ?
14. It just struck nine. (= Nine hours come from sounding).
 15. Is Mrs. L. within? No, madam, she has just gone out.
 16. Did you call on Mrs. T. ?
 17. I went to her house, but did not find her. She had just gone out (*trouvée* must be placed in the feminine, because the auxiliary is preceeded by *la*).
 18. I just met (*rencontrer*) Mr. A.
 19. Does he get on well (*fait-il bien*) in business ?
 20. Yes, his business goes very well.
 21. I have my breakfast every day (= all the days, *tous les jours*) for less than two francs.
 22. If it is later than (*plus de*) five o'clock, do not go to my physician's, for (*car*²) he is not at home.
 23. I have bought for less than one franc some very beautiful (*beau*) writing paper (*du papier à lettres*) and five dozens (*douzaines*) of envelopes (*d'enveloppes*).

1) **Aller, to go**, is an *irregular* verb, the principal tenses of which the student *must* know :

Present.

Je vais (*vais*),
 tu vas (*vāh*),
 il va (*vāh*),
 nous **allons** (*zā-long*),
 vous **allez** (*zā-lēh*),
 ils vont (*vong*).

Future.

J'irai (*jēē-rēh*),
 tu iras (*tū ēē-rāh*),

Imperfect.

J'allais (*jā-lay*),
 tu allais,
 il allait,
 nous **allions** (*zā-lyong*),
 vous **alliez** (*zā-lyēh*),
 ils **allaient** (*zā-lay*).

Conditional.

J'irais (*jēē-ray*),
 tu irais (*ēē-ray*),

Vous^ai-je dit qu'il va¹ demeurer à la campagne
(*kāng-pān-yě*)?

14. Neuf^heures viennent (*vyěn*) de sonner.
15. Madame L. est^elle chez^elle? Non Madame, elle vient de sortir (*sor-teer*).
16. Avez-vous^été voir Madame T. (*tay*)?
17. Je suis^allé chez^elle, mais je ne l'ai pas trouvée. Elle venait (*vě-nay*) de sortir.
18. Je viens de rencontrer (*rāng-cong-tray*) monsieur A. (*āh*).
19. Fait^il bien ses^affaires?
20. Oui, son commerce va très-bien.
21. J'ai tous les jours (*toū lay jōūr*) mon déjeuner [*Or*: Je déjeûne tous les jours] pour moins de deux francs.
22. S'il est plus de cinq heures, n'allez pas chez mon médecin, *car*² il n'est pas chez lui.
23. J'ai acheté pour moins d'un franc (*deūng frang*) du papier à lettres très-beau et cinq douzaines d'enveloppes (*dū pāp-yěh āh lett tray boh ay saing doū-zayn dāng-vě-lōp*).

Future.

il ira (*zēl zē-rāh*),
nous irons (*zēē-rong*),
vous irez (*zēē-rěh*),
ils iront (*zēē-rong*),

Perfect.

Je suis^allé, &c.
Imperative. Va (*vāh*), go (thou), allons (*ā-long*) let us go, allez (*ā-lay*), go (vous).

Conditional.

il irait (*zēē-ray*),
nous irions (*zēē-ryong*),
vous iriez (*zēē-ryěh*),
ils iraient (*zēē-ray*).

Pluperfect.

J'étais^allé &c.

2) The student must distinguish between *for* as *preposition*=*pour*, and *for* as *conjunction of cause or reason*=*car*.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

A.

**Remarks on the Orthography of some verbs of
the first conjugation.¹**

Some regular verbs ending in **er** are, for the sake of euphony, liable to the following modifications:

1. Some verbs ending in **ter** as: jeter, to throw; rejeter, to throw back; and verbs ending in **eler**, as: appeler, to call; renouveler, to renew etc., double the **t** or **l**, when they are followed by an **e** mute. This is the case in some persons of the Present, Future and Imperative, viz:

Pres. Je jette, tu jettes, il jette, nous jetons, vous jetez, ils jettent.

Imper. Jette, Pl. jetons, jetez.

Fut. Je jetterai, tu jetteras, &c.

Pres. J'appelle, tu appelles, il appelle, nous appelons, vous appelez, ils appellent.

Imper. Appelle, Pl. appelons, appelez.

Fut. J'appellerai, tu appelleras, &c.

N.B. The verb **acheter**, to buy, is not conjugated in this manner; it never doubles the **t**, but takes the grave accent **è**:

Pres. J'achète, tu achètes, il achète, nous achetons, vous achetez, ils achètent (*d-shayt*).

Fut. J'achèterai.

Imper. Achète, Pl. achetez.

1) These remarks on orthography may be studied later.

2. Verbs of two syllables ending in **eler**, as: **geler** to freeze, and all others that have an **e** *mute* in the last syllable but one, such as :

Semer, to sow ; mener, to lead ; lever, to lift up,
take the grave accent **è**, when followed by an **e** *mute*.

Ex. :

Infinitive : **Mener**, to lead.

Pres. Je mène, tu mènes, il mène, nous menons, vous menez,
ils mènent.

Imperf. Je menais, tu menais, &c.

Fut. Je mènerai, tu mèneras, &c.

Imper. mène, menons, menez

The same change takes place with those verbs which have on the last syllable but one the *accent aigu* = **é**. They, however, retain the **é** in the Future and Conditional.

Ex.:

Infinitive . **Espérer**, to hope.

Pres. J'espère, tu espères, il espère, nous espérons, vous espérez,
ils espèrent.

Imperf. J'espérais.

Imper. Espère, espérons, espérez.

Fut. J'espérerai.

Such are: **préférer**, to prefer; **posséder**, to possess, &c.

3. In verbs ending in **ger**, as: **juger** (*jü-jêh*), to judge; **partager** (*pâr-tâh-jêh*), to share or divide, the **e** is retained in those tenses where **g** is followed by the vowels **a** or **o**, in order to give the **g** the same soft sound as in all other tenses and persons. Ex. :

Infinitive : **Manger** (*mâng-jay*), to eat.

Pres. Je mange (*mâng-sh*), — *Plur.* nous mangeons (*mâng-jong*).

Part. pr. Mangeant (*māng-jāng*).

Imperf. Je mangeais (*māng-jay*), tu mangeais, il mangeait, nous mangions, vous mangiez, ils mangeaient.

Pret. Je mangeai (*māng-jay*), tu mangeas, il mangea, nous mangeâmes, vous mangeâtes, ils mangèrent.

Imper. Mangeons.

Part. past. Mangé (*māng-jay*).

4. In verbs ending in **œr**, as: commencer, to begin, a cedilla must be placed under the **c**, when this letter is followed by **a** or **o**. Ex.:

Infinitive : **Placer** (*plāh-sēh*), to place.

Pres. Je place (*plāhs*), tu places, &c. — *pl.* nous plaçons (*plāh-song*), &c.

Imperf. Je plaçais (*plāh say*), tu plaçais, il plaçait, nous plaçons, vous placiez, ils plaçaient (*plāh-say*).

Imper. Plaçons (*plāh-song*), &c.

Pret. Je plaçai, tu plaças, il plaça, nous plaçâmes (*plāh-sāhm*), &c.

Part. pr. Plaçant (*plāh-sāng*).

Part. passé, Placé.

5. Verbs ending in *ayer*, *oyer*, *uyer* change the *y* into *i*, whenever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute. Such are:

Payer (*pay-yēh*), to pay; *employer* (*āng-ploāh-yēh*), to employ;

effrayer (*ēf-fray-yēh*), to frighten; *essuyer* (*ēs-s'wēē-yēh*), to wipe.

Pres. Je paie (*pay*), tu paies, il paie, *pl.* nous payons, vous payez, ils paient (*pay*).

Part. pres. Payant (*pay yāng*).

Part. passé. Payé.

Pres. J'emploie (*jāng-ploāh*), tu employes, il emploie, *pl.* nous employons, vous employez (*voū sāng-ploāh-yēh*), ils emploient.

Part. pres. employant.

Pres. J'essuie (*jes-s'wee*), tu essuies, &c. — *pl.* ils essuient.

Imperf. Je payais, &c. — *pl.* nous payions, vous payiez, &c.

J'employais, &c. — *pl.* nous employions, &c.

J'essuyais, &c. — *pl.* nous essuyions, &c.

Fut. Je paierai, &c. ; j'emploierai, etc. ; j'essuierai, &c.

Imper. Paie — payez. Emploie — employez. Essuie — essuyez.

6. Verbs which in the Infinitive end in *ier*, as: *prier* (*prēē-ēh*), to pray ; *crier* (*krēē-ēh*), to cry, are in some cases spelt with double *ii*. This happens in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and of the Present of the Subjunctive. Ex. :

Infinitive : Oublier (*ou-blēē-ēh*), to forget.

Ind. Imperf. pl. Nous oubliions, vous oubliiez, ils oubliant.

Subj. Pres. pl. Que nous priions, que vous priiez, &c.

B.

Formation of the Plural of Nouns.

The plural of nouns is generally formed, as in English, by adding *s* to the singular. *This s is not sounded.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Ex. :</i>	l'homme,	les hommes,	the man,	the men
	le livre,	les livres,	the book,	the books.
	la personne,	les personnes,	the person,	the persons.
	la banque,	les banques,	the bank,	the banks.

Exceptions :

1. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* remain *unchanged* in the plural.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Ex. :</i>	le fils,	les fils,	the son,	the sons.
	le pas,	les pas,	the step,	the steps.
	la noix (<i>n'woāh</i>)	les noix,	the nut,	the nuts.

2. Nouns ending in *au* or *eu* take *x* in the plural,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Ex.</i> : le tableau (<i>tāh-blō</i>),	les tableaux,	the picture, the pictures.
le bateau (<i>bāh-tō</i>),	les bateaux,	the boat, the boats.
le feu (<i>feū</i>),	les feux,	the fire, the fires.

3. The greater part of the nouns ending in *al* or *aïl* form their plural in **aux** (*ōh*).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Ex.</i> : le cheval (<i>shē-vāhl</i>),	les chevaux (<i>shē-vōh</i>),	the horse, the horses.
l'animal, (<i>lā-nēē-māhl</i>),	les animaux (<i>lā-sā-nēē-mōh</i>),	the animal, the animals.
le travail (<i>trā-vāye</i>),	les travaux (<i>trā-vōh</i>),	the work, the works.

4. Most nouns ending in *ou* take **s** in the plural, except the following, which take **x**:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Ex.</i> : le bijou (<i>bēē-jou</i>),	les bijoux,	the jewel, the jewels.
le genou (<i>jē-nou</i>),	les genoux,	the knee, the knees.
le chou (<i>shou</i>),	les choux,	the cabbage, the cabbages.

5. The following *plurals* are **irregular**:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Ex.</i> : le ciel (<i>syēl</i>),	les cieux (<i>syēū</i>),	the heaven. ¹
l'oeil (<i>leūyē</i>),	les yeux (<i>lay syēū</i>),	the eye.
l'aïeul (<i>lā-yeūl</i>),	les aïeux (<i>lay sā-yeū</i>),	the ancestor.

C.

The Partitive Article.

Such expressions as: 'Give me *some* wine.'— 'Have you *any* books?'— 'Bring me *some* eggs'— etc., are

1) *Ciel* forms also a regular plural with another signification, viz., *les ciels* = skies (in a picture), or = the heads, or testers (of a bed).

rendered in French by the so-called *partitive article*. 'Donnez-moi *du* vin.' — 'Avez-vous *des* livres?' — 'Apportez-moi *des* oeufs.'

Now the *partitive article* is really the *genitive of the definite article*, as for instance: *du* vin, some wine; *de* l'eau, some water; *de la* bière, some beer; *des* magasins, some stores (or simply 'stores').¹

Compare our *Sentence III.* and the remarks on the *partitive article*: 'Dites au garçon de m'apporter *des* tartines de beurre et *des* oeufs à la coque.'

In *questions*, the English use *any* instead of *some*, but in French this must always be rendered by the *partitive article*, as: "Have you *any* bread? Avez-vous *du* pain?" — "Has he bought *any* handkerchiefs? A-t-il acheté *des* mouchoirs?" — "Has he made *any* purchases? A-t-il fait *des* emplettes?"

Important Remarks on the use of the *partitive article*.

1. Sometimes (but not often) the *adjective precedes the French noun*. In such cases the *partitive article* is expressed simply by *de*; as:

Good bread (or some [any] good bread), *de bon* pain)².

Bad coffee (or some [any] bad coffee), *de mauvais* café.

Beautiful flowers (or some [any] fine flowers), *de belles* fleurs.

2. In the same manner *de* is used when a *negative* occurs in a French sentence.

1) *Some* is not always used in English, but in French we must employ the *partitive article*, whenever we imply that we mean *some part* or *parts* of a *totality*.

2) We have already seen that in French the *adjective* is usually placed *after the noun* so that the above rule holds good but in few cases.

Examples.

I do not drink (bois) wine,	Je ne bois (<i>b'woāk</i>) pas de vin.
I drink no water,	Je ne bois pas d'eau.
I have no change,	Je n'ai pas de monnaie.
I have no money,	Je n'ai pas d'argent (<i>dār-jāng</i>).

3. **De** is used after nouns expressing *measure, weight, quantity* or *number* where *of* is used in English.

Examples.

une bouteille de vin (<i>ün bou-tē-yé</i>)	a bottle of wine.
<i>dē vaing</i>),	
une tasse de café,	a cup of coffee.
une paire de bas (<i>ün pair dē bāk</i>),	a pair of stockings.

4. **De** must be employed after the following *adverbs of quantity* :

Assez (<i>ā-say</i>), enough.	quelque chose (<i>kel-kē shohs</i>) something.
beaucoup (<i>bō-kou</i>), much, many, a great many, a great deal.	trop (<i>trōh</i>), too much, too many.
combien (<i>kong-byaing</i>), how much, how many.	trop peu (<i>trōh peū</i>), too little, too few.
peu (<i>peū</i>), little, few.	tant (<i>tāng</i>), so much, so many.
plus (<i>plū</i>), more.	autant (<i>ōh-tāng</i>), as much, as many.
moins (<i>mō-aing</i>), less.	
rien, nothing.	

Examples.

Je n'ai pas assez d'argent sur moi (<i>pāk sās-say dār-jāng sür m'woāk</i>).	I have not money enough with me (= enough of money).
J'ai vu beaucoup de personnes,	I have seen a great many persons (= many of persons).
Combien d'échantillons avez-vous reçu (<i>kong-byaing day-shāng-tēē-yong a-vēh vou rē-sū</i>) ?	How many patterns have you received (= how many of patterns) ?
Il a lu peu de livres.	He has read few books (= few of books).

Vous avez fait <i>trop de fautes</i> (foht).	You have made <i>too many mis-</i> <i>takes</i> (=too many of mistakes).
Apportez-moi <i>plus d'eau chaude</i> , garçon.	Waiter, bring me <i>more hot water</i> (= more of hot water).

5. **De** is used in the place of our *English adjective describing a material*, as :

- Une bague *d'or* (ün bāg dōr), a gold ring.
 Une cuiller *d'argent* (ün k'wēē yēh dār-jāng), a silver spoon.
 Une robe *de soie*, a silk dress.
 Un chapeau *de velours* (eūng shā-pōh dē vē-loūr), a velvet bonnet.
 Une table *de bois* (ün tāhbl dē b'woāh), a wooden table.

N.B.—After numerals *no article at all* is used ; the same as in English :

- Deux *enfants* (deū sāng-fāng), two children.
 Dix *écoliers* (dēē xay-kō-lyēh), ten pupils.
 Vingt *francs* (vaing frāng), twenty francs.

The most important Verbs of the first Conjugation :

parler (pār-lēh), to speak, to say.	prouver (prou-vēh), to prove. approuver (āp-prou-vēh), to approve.
causer (kō-zēh), to chat.	assurer (ās-sü-rēh), to assure douter, (dou-tēh), to doubt.
raconter (rā-kong-tēh), to tell, to narrate.	répéter (ray-pay-tēh), to re- peat.
affirmer (af-fir-mēh) to af- firm.	déclarer (day-clā-rēh), to de- clare.
nier (nēē-ēh), to deny.	penser (pāng-sēh), to think.
démander (dē-māng-dēh), to ask.	considérer (cong-sēē-day-rēh), to consider.
répliquer, (ray-plēē-kēh), to reply, to answer.	

avouer (*ǎ-vou-ēh*), to avow, to acknowledge.
 objecter (*ob-jĕk-tĕh*), to object.
 refuser (*rĕ-fü-zĕh*), to refuse.
 accorder (*ac-cor-dĕh*), to accord.
 expliquer (*ex-plĕē-kĕh*), to explain.
 réciter (*ray-sĕē-tĕh*), to recite.
 ignorer (*ĭn-yŏ-rĕh*), to ignore, to be ignorant of.
 oublier (*ou-blĕē-ĕh*), to forget.
 deviner, (*dĕ-vĕē-nĕh*), to divine, to guess.
 louer (*lou-ĕh*), to praise, to let, to hire (dwellings).
 admirer (*ād-mĕē-rĕh*), to admire.
 blâmer (*blāh-mĕh*), to blame.
 imiter (*ĕē-mĕē-tĕh*), to imitate.
 enseigner (*āng-sĕn-yĕh*), to teach, to instruct.
 éviter (*ay-vĕē-tĕh*), to avoid.
 reprocher (*rĕ-prŏ-shĕh*), to reproach.
 crier (*krĕē-ĕh*), to cry, to scream.

disputer (*dis-pū-tĕh*), to dispute.
 persuader (*pĕr-sü-ā-dĕh*), to persuade.
 aimer (*ay-mĕh*), to love, to like.
 caresser (*cā-rĕs-sĕh*), to caress.
 flatter (*flāt-tĕh*), to flatter.
 embrasser (*āng-brās-sĕh*), to embrace.
 mépriser (*may-prĕē-zĕh*), to despise.
 dédaigner (*day-dĕn-yĕh*), to disdain.
 offenser (*of-fāng-sĕh*), to offend.
 insulter (*aing-sül-tĕh*), to insult.
 quereller (*kĕ-rĕl-lĕh*), to quarrel.
 braver (*brā-vĕh*), to brave.
 céler (*say-lĕh*), to conceal.
 jurer (*jü-rĕh*), to swear, to take an oath.
 apaiser (*ā-pay-zĕh*), to appease.
 baiser (*bay-zĕh*), to kiss.
 espérer (*ĕs-pay-rĕh*), to hope.
 donner (*don-nĕh*), to give.
 honorer (*ŏ-nŏ-rĕh*), to honor.

désirer (<i>day-zē-rēh</i>), to de- sire.	remercier (<i>rē-mēr-syēh</i>), to thank.
souhaiter (<i>sou-ay-tēh</i>), to wish.	estimer (<i>ēs-tēc-mēh</i>), to es- teem.

Translate the following

Exercise

into French, and then again, without assistance of the book, into English:

What o'clock is it?—It is half-past seven.—Do you know what o'clock it is?—I do not know (*je ne sais*) what o'clock it is. I forgot to wind up (*remonter*) my watch; it (*elle*) has stopped (*s'est arrêtée*).—Have you a time-table (=the hours of departure, *les heures du départ*)? Please see at what o'clock the first train leaves (*part*).—Did you write to him?—Why did you not write to them?—Why did you not write to him to send us another (*une autre*) set (*collection*) of samples (*d'échantillons*, day-shāng-tēē-yong)?—Why did you not write to them that we have refused (*refusé*) the draft (*la traite*)?—Have the kindness (*ayez la bonté*) to give us some information (*des renseignements*, rāng-sēn-yē-māng) about (*sur*) Mr. B.—I take the liberty (*je prends* [prāng] *la liberté*) to recommend (*recommander*, rē-com-māng-dēh) him to you.—Does Mr. N. live here?—Yes sir, but master (*monsieur*) is not to be seen now; he is very busy (*très-occupé*) at present (*à présent*, āh pray zāng). Will you please give him my card (*ma carte*)?

Translate the following

Exercise.

Buying some Cloth.

1) I should like to buy some cloth. — 2) I should like to buy some good cloth. — 3) Will you be kind enough (*donnez-vous la peine*=*donnēh voū lā pain*) to pass to the rear (*au fond*=*oh fong*) of the store, sir? — 4) Will you please show (*montrer*=*mong-trēh*) some cloth to the gentleman? — 5) What (*quelle*) sort of cloth do you wish, sir? — 6) Have you any samples (*or patterns*)? — 7) Yes, sir, here are (*voici*) samples of all the pieces of cloth (*de tous les draps*) which we have in stock. — 8) What is the price of this (*celui-ci*)? — 9) It costs twenty-five francs a metre (*le mètre*=*maytr*). — 10) That (*ça*=*sāh*) seems rather dear to me. — 11) I beg your pardon (*pardonnez-moi*), sir, that (*ce*) is not dear for this (*cette*) quality. Feel (*tâtez*), if you please, how fine it is (=how [*comme*] it is fine=*fin, faing*). — 12) And that one (*celui-là*), what do you charge for that (=of what price is it)? — 13) The blue (*ce bleu-là*=*sě bleū lāh*)? I could not (*je ne pourrais*=*jě ně poūr-ray*) give it to you for (*à*) less than thirty (*trente*=*trāngt*) francs. — 14) That is very dear; it does not seem to me finer (*plus fin*=*plū faing*) than (*que*) the other. — 15) You are right, sir; it is similar (*semblable*=*sāng-blā-bl*) in (*pour*) quality (=the quality); but blue (=the blue) is always a little dearer (*plus cher*) than other colors (=the other colors, *couleurs*).

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART VI.

VI.

(Continuation.)

24. For less than a franc I bought in a large (*grand*) Vienna store (*un magasin de Vienne*), where every thing is sold (*se vend*¹) very cheap, a quire (= a hand, *une main*) of this English paper, some excellent steel-pens (*des plumes métalliques*) and six dozens of envelopes.
25. You wish (*or want*) a silk dress, madam? Will you please step up (*monter*) to the 'entre-sol'?
26. Have you received any beautiful novelties (*nouveautés*)?
27. I can suit your taste (*or serve you to your taste*). We have just received a very large assortment (*assortiment*).
28. I do not like this shade (*nuance*) very much. I want something darker (*plus foncé*, i.e. with a deeper, richer color).
29. You have there (*là*) some brocaded silk (*de la soie moirée*). Please let me see it (*voyons-la*).
30. Here, madam. We have the same quality with a large satin stripe (*à large raie satinée*).
31. It is the most beautiful thing you can see.

1. The *passive voice* is often expressed by the *active with se*.

VI.

(Continuation.)

24. J'ai acheté pour moins d'un franc dans un grand magasin de Vienne où tout *se vend*¹ très-bon marché, une main (*ün maing*) de ce papier anglais, des plumes métalliques excellentes (*day plüm may-tā-lēēk zēg-sēl-lāngt*) et six (*sēē*) douzaines d'enveloppes (*doū-zayn dāng-vē-lōp*).
25. C'est une robe de soie que vous désirez (*day-zee-ray*), madame? Veuillez monter à l'entre-sol (*lāng-tr-sōl*)? [The *entre-sol* is an apartment between the ground-floor and the first story.]
26. Avez-vous reçu de belles nouveautés (*noū-voh-tay*)?
27. Je puis vous servir (*sēr-vēēr*) à votre goût. Nous venons de recevoir un très-grand assortiment (*tās-sor-tēē-māng*).
28. Cette nuance (*nü-āngs*) ne me plaît pas trop. Je désire quelque chose de plus foncé (*fong-say*).
29. Vous avez là de la soie moirée (*m'woāh-ray*). Voyons-la (*voāh-yong lāh*), s'il vous plaît.
30. Voici, madame. Nous avons la même qualité à large raie satinée (*ray sã-tēē-nay*).
31. C'est tout ce qu'on peut voir de plus beau. [Idiomatic phrase which is used very frequently.]

32. Is this Lyons-silk ?
33. Certainly (*certainement*), madam. It would be impossible to find similar goods (*pareille marchandise*) among (*dans*) English products (*les produits d'Angleterre*).
34. Will you please give me your address and I will send the package (*le paquet*).
35. I should like to have some writing- (*or* note) paper (*papier à lettres*), sir.
36. You wish small-sized paper (*petit format*), madam ?
37. How do you sell the quire (*la main*) of this English paper ?
38. We sell a great deal (*beaucoup*) of this paper to a number (*or* several, *plusieurs*) of offices.
39. Show me some good steel-pens (*plumes métalliques*).
40. How do you sell the gross (*la grosse*) ?
41. I should like to see (= to have) some linen (*de la toile*) for shirts.
42. Do you want something nice (*or* beautiful) ?
43. Of the best quality.
44. Here is some Dutch linen (*de la toile de Hollande*) which is excellent.
45. How do you sell it ?
46. Four francs a metre.
47. A dozen would cost me (*me reviendra*) therefore (*ainsi*) ?
48. You will (*surely*) make me a reduction (*une diminution*) on the price ?

32. Est-ce là de la soie de Lyon (*lĕē-ong*) ?
33. Certainement (*sĕr-tain'-māng*) madame; il serait impossible (*taing-pos-sĕēbl*) de trouver pareille marchandise (*pā-rĕ-yĕ mār-shāng-deeze*) dans les produits d'Angleterre (*prō-dwĕēt dāng-lĕt-tayr*).
34. Veuillez me donner votre adresse et je vous enverrai le paquet (*je voū zāng-vĕr-rĕh lĕ pā-kay*).
35. Je voudrais avoir du papier (*pā-pyĕh*) à lettres, monsieur.
36. Est-ce de petit format (*formāh*) que vous le désirez, madame ?
37. Combien vendez-vous (*vāng-day-voū*) la main (*maing*) de ce papier anglais ?
38. Nous vendons beaucoup de ce papier à plusieurs (*plū-z'yĕūr*) bureaux (*bū-roh*).
39. Montrez-moi de bonnes plumes métalliques (*māy-tā-lĕĕk*).
40. Combien vendez-vous la grosse ?
41. Je voudrais avoir de la toile pour chemises (*twoāhl poūr shĕ-mĕēze*).
42. Voulez-vous quelque chose de beau (*bō*) ?
43. De la meilleure qualité (*mĕ-yĕūr kā-lĕē-tay*).
44. Voici de la toile de Hollande qui est excellente (*tĕg-sĕl-lāngt*).
45. Combien la vendez-vous ?
46. Quatre francs le mètre (*mayt'r*).
47. Ainsi la douzaine me reviendra (*aing-sĕē lā dou-zayn mĕ rĕ-vyāing-drā*) ?
48. Vous me ferez bien une diminution (*dĕē-mĕē-nū-syong*) sur ce prix (*prĕē*) ; or : Vous me rabattrez bien quelque chose ?

2.

Terms of politeness.¹*A. Terms of asking.*

1. May I ask (*or* beg) you to tell me....?
2. May I ask a favor of you?
3. I have to make a request of you.
4. Be so kind (*or* Have the kindness) to tell me....
5. I have to ask you for a favor.
6. Would you be so kind as to do me a service?
7. If I were not afraid of troubling you (*d'être indiscret*)
I would beg you to....
8. Would you have the kindness to....?
9. Would you be so kind as to grant me (*de m'accorder*) a moment's conversation (*or* interview)?
10. If it were convenient to you to....
11. Do me this favor.
12. I beg (you) for it.
13. You would greatly oblige me if....

1) These phrases will be found very useful in every day conversation. I have often observed that foreigners are at a loss how to express themselves gracefully and naturally, not knowing how to make use of the words they really have mastered, and I beg that stu-

2.

Formules de politesse.¹A. Formules de demande (*for-mül dē dē-māng*).

1. Puis-je vous demander (*or prier = prē-ēh*) de me dire (*dēer*)....?
2. Pourrais-je vous demander une faveur (*dē-māng-dēh ün fā-veūr*)?
3. J'ai une prière (*prē-air*) à vous faire.
4. Ayez la bonté (*ay-yēh lā bong-tay*) de me dire....
5. J'ai une grâce à vous demander.
6. Voudriez-vous me rendre un service (*rāng-dr cūng sēr-vēēs*)?
7. Si je ne craignais pas (*crēn-yay pāh*) d'être indiscret (*aing-dis-cray*), je vous prierais de (*jē vou prē-ē-rēh dē*)....
8. { Auriez-vous la bonté de....?
 { Auriez-vous l'obligeance de....?
9. Auriez-vous la bonté de m'accorder un moment d'entretien (*mo-māng dāng-tr'-tyaing*) (*or un moment d'audience [do-dyāngs]*)?
10. S'il vous convenait de....
11. Faites-moi ce plaisir.
12. Je vous en prie (*jē vou zāng prēē*).
13. Vous m'obligeriez (*mo-blē-jē-ryēh*) beaucoup (*or infiniment [aing-fēē-nēē-māng]*) si....

dents will study these phrases very thoroughly, as they are continually used in polite society, and serve to introduce various requests and statements. Similiar phrases will be given in the succeeding parts.

14. Count on (*sur*) my gratitude.
15. I should be very grateful (*reconnaissant*) to you if ..
16. Would you please repeat what you were saying?
17. I beg your pardon, sir?
18. What was it you said, madam?
19. Please, listen to me (*écoutez-moi*).

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

As I must leave for Germany to-night, I should be very much obliged to you, if you were to ask him to please send me the patterns at once, which I selected three days ago.

1.

As I am obliged to leave for Germany to-night.

1) Liquid sound.

2) $\widehat{o-\bar{a}}$ is only one sound.

14. Comptez sur ma reconnaissance (*cong-tay sūr mā rě-cō-nais-sāngs*).
15. Je vous serais très-reconnaissant (*rě-con-nai-sāng*) si..
16. Veuillez répéter ce que vous avez dit (*dēē*)?
17. Plaît-il (*play-tēēl*), monsieur?
18. Vous disiez (*voū dēē-zyēh*), madame?
19. { Ecoutez-moi (*ay-kōō-tēh m'woāh*), s'il vous plaît.
 { Daignez m'écouter (*dain-yēh may-coū-tay*).

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Comme il faut que j'aïlle en Allemagne ce soir,
 kōm eēl fōh kē jā yē¹ āng a-lē-mān-yē sē swoār²

je vous serais bien obligé si vous lui demandiez
 jē voū sēray byāing ob-lēē-jay sēē voū lū.ēē³ dē-māng-dyēh

de m'envoyer sur-le-champ les échantillons que
 dē māng-voāh-yēh sūr lē shāng lay zay-shāng-tēē-yong kē

j'ai choisis il y a trois jours.
 jay sh'woāh-zēē eēl eē ā trō-āh jōūr

1.

Comme il faut que j'aïlle en Allemagne ce soir.
 kōm eēl fōh kē jā-yē āng a-lē-mān-yē sē s'woār.

3) tī-ēē is only one sound.

As

it is necessary *Présent* : il faut (föh). *Part. passé* : fallu.
Imp. : il fallait. *Futur* : il faudra (föh-dräh).
Défini : il fallu. *Prés. Subj.* : qu'il faille (këel
 fä-yé).
 English expressions as 'I must ; we are obliged,'
 &c., must be rendered by 'il faut' !)

that I may go

I go ; I am going ; (thou goest ; he goes, &c.)

I shall (or I will) go

that I may go (that thou mayst go, that he may go, that we may
go, that you may go, that they may go)

I must go, or I am obliged to leave

for (*aller* must be followed by *en* when one travels to *countries*, as :
Je vais en Angleterre)

Germany.

1. Mr. Daudet has gone (or left) ; and that is the reason why his brothers must go to France.
2. Did you not tell any one why I am obliged to go to England ?
3. How much must I pay to the cab ?

1) RULE : 'il faut' is used in the following way :

a) With the *simple infinitive* : il faut travailler (I, he, we, you, or they) must work.

b) With a *personal conjunctive pronoun and the infinitive* : il me faut vendre, I must sell ; il nous faut aller, we must go ; il vous faut partir, you must leave.

c) With *que and the subjunctive mood* : Il faut que j'aille, I must go. Il faut que le tailleur fasse mon habit, the tailor must make my coat. Il faut que je donne ce livre à votre frère, I must give this book to your brother.

Comme (*kõm*)

il faut¹ (*ēēl fōh*) (Is an irregular verb derived from the infinitive, *falloir*. It is used only in the third person singular)

que j'aille (*kě-jǎ-yě*) (Prés. Subjonc. of the irregular verb *aller*)

je vais (Present of *aller*), tu vas, il va, nous[^]allons, vous[^]allez, ils vont)

j'irai (*jēē-rēh*) (Future of *aller*)

que j'aille, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous[^]allions, que vous[^]alliez, qu'ils[^]aillent (*kēēl zǎ-yě*)

il faut que j'aille (*ēēl fōh kě jǎ-yě*)

en (*āng*) (*aller* is followed by *à*, when one travels to *towns*, as: Je vais *à* Londres)

Allemagne (*ǎ-lě-mān-yě*)

1. Monsieur Daudet (*dō-day*) est parti; c'est pourquoi il faut que ses frères aillent en France (*ā-yě āng frāngs*).
2. N'avez-vous dit à personne pourquoi il faut que j'aille en Angleterre (*ān-nāng-glě-tayr*)?
3. Combien faut-il que je donne² au cocher (*dōn ōh cō-shay*)?

Any of these constructions may be used when the *subject* of the sentence happens to be a *pronoun*. But the *third construction* only is admissible when the subject is a *noun*.

2) The pupil must now make himself familiar with the *subjunctive mood*. He ought now to learn, or rather to repeat *all* the tenses of *avoir*, *être* and *donner*. Then take *finir* (2d conjugation), and *vendre* (3d conjugation), which are given in the Grammatical Remarks of Part VI. A table giving the principal peculiarities of the French grammar accompanies the next lessons.

4. As I am obliged to go to Paris, please tell your brother to give me this address.
5. Where must I go this forenoon?
6. Tell him, if you please that he must make my coat to-day.
7. That *must* be so.
8. What must I get for dinner, madam?

9. The shoemaker must make my boots at once, as (*parce que*) I am going to leave.
10. What? You did not hear the thunder? (*Literally*: the clap [*le coup*] of thunder [*de tonnerre*])? You must sleep [*que vous dormiez* ?] very heavily [*profondément*].

11. Must I send the silk and velvet (*le velours*) to your house?
12. Am I obliged to pay beforehand (*d'avance*)?
13. What do you need? [*Il faut* signifies also *to need*.]
14. Waiter, give me another room. I need more air and light (*i. e.*, day-light = *jour*).
15. I need some money.
16. How much do you need (*or* are you in need of)?
17. I need 33 (*trente-trois*) francs.
18. Did you breakfast?
19. I took (*j'ai pris*) a cup of coffee with milk.

1) Learn the *subjunctive mood of the present of faire* :
 Que je fasse, that I may make. que nous fassions, that we may make.
 que tu fasses, &c. que vous fassiez, &c.
 qu'il fasse, &c. qu'ils fassent, &c.

4. Comme il faut que j'aïlle à Paris, dites à votre frère, je vous prie, de me donner cette adresse (*sēt tā-drēs*).
5. Où faut-il que j'aïlle ce matin ?
6. Dites-lui, s'il vous plaît, qu'il faut faire mon habit aujourd' hui (*mōn nā-bēē ō-jōūr-d'wēē*).
7. Il faut que cela soit (*s'woāh*).
8. Que faut-il que je fasse¹ pour le dîner (*dēē-nay*) ma-dame ?
9. Il faut que le cordonnier fasse¹ mes bottes tout de suite, parce que je vais partir.
10. Comment ? Vous n'avez pas entendu (*zāng-tāng-dū* = heard) le coup de tonnerre (*coū dē ton-nayr* = thunder) ? Il faut que vous dormiez² bien profondément (*pro-fong-day-māng* = deeply, profoundly).
11. Faut-il envoyer (*āng-voāh-yēh*) la soie et le velours (*vēloūr*) chez vous ?
12. Faut-il payer d'avance (*dā-vāngs*) ?
13. Que vous faut-il (*kē voū fō-tēēl*) ?
14. Garçon, donnez-moi une autre chambre, il me faut plus d'air et plus de jour (*plū dair ay plū dē jōūr*).
15. Il me faut de l'argent (*lārr-jāng*).
16. Combien vous faut-il ?
17. Il me faut trente-trois francs (*trāngt troāh frāng*).
18. Avez-vous déjà déjeuné ?
19. J'ai pris (*prēē*) une tasse de café au lait (*oh lay*).

2) The *subjunctive mood* of the present of *dormir*, to sleep :
 Que je dorme, that I sleep. que nous dormions, that we sleep.
 que tu dormes, &c. que vous dormiez, &c.
 qu'il dorme, &c. qu'ils dorment, &c.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

A.

Second Conjugation : **Finir**, to finish.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

SINGULAR.

Je *finis* (*fēē-nēē*), I finish.
 tu *finis*, thou finishest.
 il *finit*, he finishes.
 elle *finit*, she finishes.

PLURAL.

nous *finissons* (*fēē-nīs-song*),
 we finish.
 vous *finissez*, you finish.
 ils *finissent* (*fēē-nīs*) } they
 elles *finissent*. } finish.

Imperfect.

Je *finissais* (*fēē-nī-say*), I finished.
 finished.
 tu *finissais*, &c.
 il *finissait*, &c.
 nous *finissions*, we finished.
 vous *finissiez*, &c.
 ils *finissaient* (*fēē-nī-say*), &c.

Preterite.

Je *finis* (*fēē-nēē*), I finished.
 nous *finîmes* (*fēē-nēm*), we
 finished.
 tu *finis*, &c.
 il *finit*, &c.
 vous *finîtes*, &c.
 ils *finirent* (*fēē-nēēr*), &c.

¹) Be careful to always pronounce *finir* = *fēē-nēre*; *je finissais* = *fēē nīs say*; nous *finîmes* = *fēē-neme*, &c.

1st Future.

Je finirai (<i>fēē-nēē-rēh</i>), I	nous finirons, we shall
shall finish.	finish.
tu finiras, &c.	vous finirez, &c.
il finira, &c.	ils finiront, &c.

1st Conditional.

Je finirais (<i>fēē-nēē-ray</i>), I	nous finirions, we should
should finish.	finish.
tu finirais, &c.	vous finiriez, &c.
il finirait, &c.	ils finiraient, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Finir, to finish.	de <i>or</i> à finir, to finish.
-------------------	----------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Finis, finish.	finissons (<i>fēē-nī-song</i>), let us
	finish.
	finissez, finish.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je finisse (<i>fēē-niss</i>), that I (may) finish.
que tu finisses, &c.
qu'il finisse, &c.
que nous finissions, that we (may) finish.
que vous finissiez, &c.
qu'ils finissent (<i>fēē-niss</i>), &c.

Imperfect.

Que je finisse, that I (might) finish.
 que tu finisses, &c.
 qu'il finît (*fēē-nēē*), &c.
 que nous finissions, that we (might) finish.
 que vous finissiez, &c.
 qu'ils finissent (*fēē-nīss*), &c.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.**Past.*

Finissant, finishing. *Fini* (*fēē-nēē*), *f. finie*,
 en *finissant*, by finishing, &c. finished.

COMPOUND TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Avoir fini (*fēē-nēē*), to have finished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

J'ai fini (*fēē-nēē*), I have finished.
 tu as fini, thou hast finished.
 il a fini, he has finished.
 nous avons fini, we have finished, &c.

Pluperfect.

J'avais fini, I had finished, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus fini, I had finished, &c.

2d Future.

J'aurai fini, I shall have finished, &c.

2d Conditional.

J'aurais fini, }
J'eusse fini, } I should have finished, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Que j'aie fini, that I (may) have finished, &c.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse fini, that I (might) have finished, &c.

PARTICIPLES.

Ayant fini, having finished, &c.

Conjugate in the same manner: *bâtir*, to build; *choisir*, to choose; *remplir* (*rāng-pleer*), to fill, &c.

Remarks.

1) The verb *haïr*, to hate, loses in the *Present* and *Imperative singular* its *diæresis*. Otherwise it is quite regular and retains the two dots.

Pres. Je haïs, tu hais, il hait, nous haïssons, vous haïssez, &c. *Imper.* Hais; *Pl.* haïssons, haïssez. *Pret.* Je haïs I hated.

2) The verb *fleurir*, to flourish, has a second form for the *Imperfect tense*, Je florissais, and also a second for the *Part. present*, florissant, e, both of which are only used in a figurative sense, as: une ville florissante, a flourishing city, &c.

B.

Third Conjugation: Vendre, to sell.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Je vends (<i>vāngd</i>), I sell.	nous vendons, we sell.
tu vends, thou sellst.	vous vendez, you sell.
il vend, he sells.	ils vendent (<i>vāngd</i>), } they
elle (on) vend, she (one) sells.	elles vendent, } sell.

Imperfect.

Je vendais (<i>vāng-day</i>), I sold.	nous vendions, we sold.
tu vendais, thou soldst.	vous vendiez, you sold.
il vendait, he sold.	ils vendaient, they sold.

Preterite.

Je vendis (<i>vāng-dēē</i>), I sold.	nous vendîmes, we sold.
tu vendis, &c.	vous vendîtes, &c.
il vendit, &c.	ils vendirent (<i>vāng-dēēr</i>), &c.

Future.

Je vendrai (<i>vāng-drēh</i>), I	nous vendrons, we
shall sell.	shall sell.
tu vendras, &c.	vous vendrez, &c.
il vendra, &c.	ils vendront, &c.

1) Pronounce *vāng-dr*; nous vendons = *vāng-dong*; ils vendent = *vāng-d*, &c.

1st Conditional.

Je vendrais, (<i>vāng-dray</i>), I should sell.	nous vendrions, we should sell.
tu vendrais, &c.	vous vendriez, &c.
il vendrait, &c.	ils vendraient, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Vends, sell.	vendons, let us sell.
	vendez, sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que je vende (<i>vāngā</i>), that I (may) sell.	
que tu vendes,	&c.
qu'il vende,	&c.
que nous vendions,	&c.
que vous vendiez,	&c.
qu'ils vendent,	&c.

Imperfect.

Que je vendisse (<i>vāng-dīss</i>), that I might sell.	
que tu vendisses,	&c.
qu'il vendît,	&c.
que nous vendissions,	&c.
que vous vendissiez,	&c.
qu'ils vendissent,	&c.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Présent.</i>	<i>Passé.</i>
Vendant, selling.	vendu (<i>vāng-dū</i>), <i>f.</i> vendue,
en vendant, by selling.	

COMPOUND TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Avoir vendu, to have sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

J'ai vendu, I have sold.

tu as vendu, thou hast sold.

il a vendu, he has sold.

nous avons vendu, we have sold, &c.

Pluperfect.

J'avais vendu, I had sold, &c.

Preterite.

J'eus vendu, I had sold, &c.

2d Future.

J'aurai vendu, I shall have sold, &c.

2d Conditional.

J'aurais vendu,	} I should have sold, &c.
J'eusse vendu,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Que j'ai vendu, that I (may) have sold, &c.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse vendu, that I (might) have sold, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

Ayant vendu, having sold.

Conjugate after this model: perdre, to loose; attendre (ât-tāng-dr), to wait, to expect; répondre, to answer, &c.

The most Important Verbs of the First Conjugation.—Continued.

- Traiter (*tray-tēh*), to treat.
 maltraiter (*māhl-tray-tēh*), to illtreat, to abuse.
 pleurer (*pleū-rēh*), to weep.
 soupirer (*sou-pēē-rēh*), to moan.
 consoler (*cong-sōh-lēh*), to console.
 regretter (*rě-grēt-tēh*), to regret.
 pardonner (*pār-don-nēh*), to pardon.
 excuser (*ex-cū-zēh*), to excuse.
 venger (*vāng-jēh*), to revenge.
 railler (*rā-yēh*), to joke, to make fun of.
 toucher (*toū-shēh*), to touch.
 goûter (*goū-tēh*), to taste.
 regarder (*rě-gār-dēh*), to regard.
 écouter (*ay-coū-tēh*), to listen to.
 aller (*ā-lēh*), to go.
 marcher (*mār-shēh*), to walk.
 retourner (*rě-toūr-nēh*), to return.
 rencontrer (*rāng-cong-trēh*), to meet, to encounter.
 échapper (*ay-shāp-pēh*), to escape.
 sauter (*sōh-tēh*), to jump.
 tomber (*tong-bēh*), to fall.
 danser (*dāng-sēh*), to dance.
 jouer (*joū-ēh*), to play.
 monter (*mong-tēh*), to mount, to bring up stairs; to get in.
 songer (*song-jēh*), to dream.
 rêver (*ray-vēh*), to dream.
 manger (*māng-jēh*), to eat.
 déjeuner (*day-jeū-nēh*), to breakfast.
 dîner (*dēē-nēh*), to dine.
 souper (*sou-pēh*), to sup.
 mâcher (*māh-shēh*), to chew.
 régaler (*ray-gā-lēh*), to regale, to treat.
 couper (*kōō-pēh*), to cut.
 découper (*day-kōō pēh*), to carve, to cut up.
 allumer (*ā-lū-mēh*), to light.
 fûmer (*fū-mēh*), to smoke.
 bâiller (*bā-yēh*), to yawn.
 siffler (*sif-flēh*), to whistle.
 tousser (*toūs-sēh*), to cough.

traîner (*tray-nēh*), to pull.
 trembler (*trāng-blēh*), to tremble.
 tirer (*tēē-rēh*), to draw, to drag.
 montrer (*mong-trēh*), to show.
 présenter (*pray-zāng-tēh*) to present.
 accepter (*āc-cēp-tēh*), to accept.
 gâter (*gāh-tēh*), to spoil.
 jeter (*jē-tēh*), to throw, to throw away.
 ramasser (*rā-mās-sēh*), to pick up.
 chercher (*shēr-shēh*), to seek, to search.
 trouver (*trou-vēh*), to find.
 cacher (*cā-shēh*), to hide.
 nettoyer (*nēt-t'wōā-yēh*), to clean.
 déchirer (*day-shēē-rēh*), to tear.
 briser (*brēē-zēh*), to pick to pieces.
 porter (*por-tēh*), to carry.
 apporter (*āp-por-tēh*), to bring.
 amener (*ā-mē-nēh*), to bring along.

mener (*mē-nēh*), to lead.
 voyager (*voā-yā-jay*), to travel.
 arriver (*ār-rēē-vēh*), to arrive.
 sonner (*sōn-nēh*) to strike (of the clock), to ring (the bell).
 entrer (*āng-trēh*), to enter.
 fermer (*fēr-mēh*), to lock.
 marchander (*mār-shāng-dēh*) to bargain.
 commander (*cōm-māng-dēh*), to order, to command.
 envoyer (*āng-voāh-yēh*), to send, to forward.
 renvoyer (*rāng-voāh-yēh*) to send back.
 dédommager (*day-dom-māh-jay*), to indemnify.
 acheter (*āsh-tēh*), to buy.
 prêter (*pray-tēh*), to lend, to loan.
 emprunter (*āng-preūng-tēh*), to borrow.
 rembourser (*rāng-boūr-sēh*), to reimburse, to repay.
 déboursier (*day-boūr-sēh*), to disburse, to pay out.
 bonifier (*bō-nēē-fyēh*), to better.

payer (*pay-yēh*), to pay.
 emballer (*āng-pā-kě-tēh*),
 to pack up.
 déballer (*day-pā-kě-tēh*),
 to unpack.
 envelopper (*āng-vē-lop-pēh*),
 to envelop, to wrap up.
 gagner (*gān-yēh*), to gain.
 tromper (*trong-pēh*), to de-
 ceive.
 voler (*vōh-lēh*), to steal.
 étudier (*ay-tū-dyēh*), to study
 compter (*kong-tēh*) to count,
 to reckon.
 chiffrer (*shif-frēh*), to reck-
 on.
 additionner (*ad-dēē-syon-nēh*),
 to add.
 multiplier (*mül-tēē-plēē-ēh*),
 to multiply.
 diviser (*dēē-vēē-zēh*), to di-
 vide.
 copier (*kō-pyēh*), to copy.

signer (*sīn-yēh*), to sign.
 dicter (*dīc-tēh*), to dictate.
 plier (*plēē-ēh*), to put to-
 gether.
 plisser (*plīs-sēh*) to fold.
 cacheter (*cāsh-tēh*), to seal.
 commencer (*com-māng-sēh*),
 to commence, to begin.
 continuer (*cong-tēē-mū-ēh*), to
 continue.
 cesser (*sēs-sēh*), to cease.
 achever (*ā-shē-vēh*), to per-
 fect, to fulfil.
 travailler (*trā-vā-yēh*), to
 work.
 colorer (*co-lo-rēh*), to color.
 dessiner (*dēē-sēē-nēh*), to de-
 sign.
 laver (*lā-vēh*), to wash.
 enregistrer (*āng-ray-jīs-trēh*),
 to book, to check.
 peser (*pē-zēh*), to weigh.
 planter (*plāng-tēh*), to plant

Observation.

The student will see that most of these French verbs, which are originally derived from the Latin, are also found in the English tongue, though our pronunciation differs materially from the French. The pupil, with very little effort, can, therefore, put himself in possession of 160 of the most necessary French verbs.

Translate the following

Exercise

into English, and then render it into French without the help of the book :

1. On a Steamer.

1) Quand le bateau à vapeur (bā-tō āh vā-peūr = *steamer*), partira-t-il (par-tee-rā-teel = *going to leave ; start*) ? — Le bateau partira dans une heure. — 2) Quel est le prix du passage ? — Les premières places (*plāhs*) sont de deux guinées et les secondes d'une guinée. — 3) Est-ce que tout est prêt (pray = *ready*) ? — Oui, monsieur. — Eh bien, allons à bord ! — 4) Nous voici. Voyez (voāh-yēh = *look ; see*) quelle heure il est, pour savoir (sā-v'woār = *in order to know*) combien de temps nous aurons été à la traversée (trā-ver-say = *crossing*). — Il est deux heures précises. — 5) Combien de temps serons-nous en voyage ? — Huit heures, je crois (kroāh = *I think*), si le temps (*weather*) est favorable (fā-vō-rābl = *favorable*). — 6) Avez-vous déjà été sur mer (*on sea*) ? — 7) Oui, monsieur. Et vous ? — J'ai été aussi (ō-sēē = *also*) plusieurs fois (plū-zyeūr-foāh = *several times*) sur mer ; mais je ne suis pas sujet (sū-jay = *subject*) au mal de mer (*seasickness*). — 8) Vous changez (shāng-jay) de couleur. Qu'avez-vous ? — La tête me tourne (*whirls ; swims*) ; j'ai mal au cœur. — 9) Vous paraissez (pā-rays-sēh = *seem*) vous trouver mal (*to feel bad*) ; ne vaudrait-il pas mieux (ne vō-dray-tēēl pāh myeū = *would it not be better*) rentrer (rāng-tray) dans la cabine (*kā-bēēn* = *cabin*) et vous coucher (*lie down*) ? — Je préfère (pray-fayr = *prefer*) rester sur le pont (pong = *deck*).

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART VII.

VII.¹

(Continuation.)

20. That is not sufficient (*assez*); you must eat something before dinner. (*Literally*: While [*en*²] awaiting [*attendant*] the dinner).
21. Have you any wine? Yes, sir; I have some.
22. If you need good sugar, we can furnish (*fournir*) you some at a very low price.
23. Show me some good steel pens. Here are some excellent ones.
24. Waiter, I have no napkin. Here is one, sir.
25. I do not like this room. Have you not (got) another one which you can give me? (*Literally*: to give to me.)
26. Yes, sir, we have several (*plusieurs*) unoccupied ones (= several free [*de libres*]).

1) To avoid breaking up the several tables in the Grammatical Remarks they have been consolidated into one part, thus shortening the Foundation Sentences for this Number.

2) *En* is a 'supplying pronoun,' and is used very frequently in French, though it cannot always be given in English. It is used

a) to express the words *some* and *any*, when they refer to some previously used substantive, as: Voici du jambon (ham): *en* voulez-vous? Donnez m'en, s'il vous plait. Here is some ham; do you want some? Give me *some*, please.

b) *En* is used instead of *it* or *them*, when the *French verb* requires *de* (i.e., governs the genitive). This rule refers almost only to *things*, rarely to persons. (It is immaterial what preposition is used in English.) *Ex.*: Vous parlez de son malheur (*má-leúr*)?

VII.

(Continuation.)

20. Ce n'est pas assez ; il vous faut manger (*māng-jay*) quelque chose, en attendant (*ān-nāt-tāng-dāng*) le dîner.
21. Avez-vous du vin (*vaing*)? Oui monsieur, j'en¹ ai (*jān-nai*).
22. S'il vous faut de bon sucre, nous pouvons vous^{en} fournir (*foūr-nē̄r*) à bien bon-marché.
23. Montrez-moi de bonnes plumes métalliques. En voici d'excellentes (*dēg-sēl-lāngt*).
24. Garçon, je n'ai pas de serviette. En voici une, monsieur. (*'En' can frequently not be expressed in English, but must be given in French.*)
25. Cette chambre ne me plaît pas. N'en avez-vous pas^{une} autre à me donner (*nān-nā-vēh voū pāh zūn nōtr āh mē don-nēh*)?
26. Oui, monsieur, nous^{en} avons plusieurs de livres (*plū-zyeūr dē lēēbr*).

Non monsieur, je n'en parle pas. You are speaking of his misfortune? No, sir; I am not speaking of it. — J'ai fait une faute (*fōht*), et j'en suis puni (*pū-nēē*). I have committed a fault and I am punished for it. — Vous m'avez rendu service (*rāng-dū sēr-vēēse*); je vous en remercie (*rē-mēr-sēē*). You have rendered me a service; I thank you for it.

En is always placed before the verb (like the personal conjunctive pronouns). But when *en* meets with another personal pronoun it is placed last, as: Je m'en souviens (*soū-vyāing*). I remember. It is placed, however, after the affirmative imperative, as: Donnez-lui-en, give him some. (*Moi* and *toi* with the affirmative imperative are changed into *m'* and *t'* before *en*, as: Donnez-m'en, give me some.

27. Do you need a large room, or will you be satisfied (*vous contenterez-vous*) with a (*d'une*) room (*pièce*) with (*d*) one window?
28. I have received a letter from Paris and must answer it at once.
29. Will you please do your correspondence (*faire votre courrier*) in the coffee-room? You will find writing materials there. (*Literally*: You find there [*y*] everything which you need for writing.)
30. It is of the utmost importance (= *il faut absolument*) that this letter leaves to-day.
31. Waiter, a decanter of ice-water (*une carafe frappée*), if you please.
32. We have not any, sir, but I'll bring you (*or* get you) some ice (*de la glace*) on a plate, if you like it.
33. This roast duck is excellent. May I help you to some? (*Vous en servirai-je?*) [*May I*, in such and similiar phrases, must be rendered through the future tense.]
34. This roast-beef looks very nice. Will you please cut me a slice of it (*m'en couper une tranche*)?
35. This meat (*cette viande*) is very tender; may I offer you another small piece (*un petit morceau*)?
36. Give me a very small piece only (*seulement*).
37. You are giving me too much (*trop*); give me only (*ne-que*) half of it (*la moitié*).
38. Do you want a fork? Thanks, I have one.
39. I must go to London for some weeks (*semaines*) on family-business (*pour affaires de famille*).

27. Vous faut-il une grande chambre, ou vous contenteriez-vous (*cong-tāng-tě-rēh-voū*) d'une pièce à une fenêtre (*dūn pēē-ays āh ün fě-naytr*) ?
28. J'ai reçu une lettre de Paris, et il faut que j'y réponde tout de suite (*ray-pongđ toūd' s'wēēt*).
29. Veuillez faire votre courrier dans la salle des voyageurs; vous y (*voū-zēē*) trouverez tout ce qu'il faut pour écrire (*ay-krēēr*).
30. Il faut absolument (*tāb-so-lü-māng*) que cette lettre parte aujourd'hui.
31. Garçon, une carafe frappée, s'il vous plait.
32. Nous n'en avons pas, monsieur, mais si vous voulez je vous apporterai de la glace sur une assiette.
33. Ce caneton (*kā-ně-tong*) est excellent; vous en servirai-je encore (*ay-těg-sěl-lāng; voū zāng sēr-vēē-rēh-jě āng-kor*).
34. Ce filet a très-bonne mine; veuillez m'en couper une tranche (*trāngsh*) ?
35. Cette viande (*vēē-āngđ*) est très-tendre (*tāng-dr*), vous en offrirai-je encore un petit morceau (*voū zāng nōf-frēē-rēh-jě āng-kor cūng p'tēē mor-soh*) ?
36. Donnez-m'en seulement (*seül-māng*) un tout petit morceau.
37. Vous m'en donnez trop; ne m'en donnez que la moitié (*m'woāh-tyēh*).
38. Voulez-vous une fourchette? Merci, j'en ai une.
39. Il faut que j'aille à Londres pour quelques semaines (*sě-mayn*) pour affaires de famille (*fā-mēē-yě*).

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

A.

The Adjective.

The adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun it relates to. *Le bon enfant* (*bon nāng-fāng*), the good child. *La bonne femme* (*fām*), the good woman. *Elle est heureuse* (*èl lay teū-reūse*), she is happy.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE FORM.

The feminine of adjectives and participles is generally formed by the addition of the letter *e*.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
vrai,	vraie,	true.
joli,	jolie,	pretty.
connu,	connue,	known.
général (<i>jay-nay-rāh</i>),	générale,	general.
charmant (<i>shār-māng</i>)	charmante,	charming.

Exceptions.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute remain unchanged in the feminine, as :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
sage,	sage,	wise.
aimable (<i>ay-māhhl</i>),	aimable,	amiable.

Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve* in the feminine.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
actif (<i>āc-tēēf</i>),	active,	active.
bref,	brève,	short.
neuf,	neuve,	new.
vif (<i>vēēf</i>),	vive,	quick.

Adjectives ending in *l* double it in the feminine :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
cruel (<i>krü-ël</i>),	cruelle,	cruel.
pareil (<i>pä-rê-yê</i>)	pareille,	similar.
nul (<i>nüh</i>),	nulle,	no or null.
éternel, (<i>ay-ter-nêl</i>),	éternelle,	eternal.
gentil (<i>jäng-têël</i>),	gentille (<i>jäng-têê-yê</i>),	pretty.
tel,	telle,	such.
vermeil (<i>ver-mê-yê</i>),	vermeille,	vermillion.

In the same manner monosyllables in *s*, *n* and *t* are formed ; viz., doubling *s*, *n* and *t* in the feminine :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
bon (<i>bong</i>),	bonne, (<i>bönn</i>),	good.
gros (<i>grô</i>),	grosse (<i>gröss</i>),	big.
sot (<i>sô</i>),	sotte (<i>sött</i>),	stupid.

To these belong also the following :

épais (*ay-pay*), *fem.* épaisse, thick.
 exprès (*ex-pray*), *fem.* expresse, express.
 muet (*mü-ay*), *fem.* muette, dumb.
 sujet (*sü-jay*) *fem.* sujette, subject.

Adjectives ending in *x* change the same into *se* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
heureux (<i>eü-reü</i>),	heureuse (<i>eü-reüse</i>),	happy.
jaloux (<i>jâ-loü</i>),	jalouse (<i>jâ-loüse</i>),	jealous.
paresseux (<i>pâ-rês-seü</i>),	paresseuse (<i>pa-rê-seüse</i>),	lazy.

But *faux* (*fô*), false, makes its feminine *fausse* (*föss*).

Adjectives ending in *er* and *et* take in the feminine the *grave accent* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
léger (<i>lay-jay</i>),	légère (<i>lay-jayr</i>),	light.
complet (<i>cong-plêh</i>),	complète (<i>cong-playt</i>),	complete.

Of the adjectives ending in *c* the following three change this *c* into *ch* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
blanc (<i>blāngk</i>),	blanche (<i>blāngšk</i>),	white.
franc (<i>frāngk</i>),	franche (<i>frāngšk</i>),	frank.
sec (<i>sĕck</i>)	sèche (<i>saysk</i>),	dry.

The others ending in *c* take *que* :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
public (<i>pū-blĕĕk</i>),	publique,	public.
turc (<i>türk</i>),	turque,	Turkish.
caduc (<i>kā-dūk</i>),	caduque,	decrepit.
grec (<i>grĕk</i>),	grecque,	Greek.

The following adjectives do not follow any of the above rules :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
long,	longue,	long.
aigu (<i>ai-gū</i>),	aiguë,	acute.
frais (<i>fray</i>),	fraîche (<i>fraysk</i>),	fresh.
doux (<i>dōō</i>),	douce (<i>doōs</i>),	sweet, soft.
malin (<i>mā-laing</i>),	maligne (<i>mā-lĕĕn-yĕ</i>),	wicked.
bénin (<i>bai-naing</i>),	bénigne (<i>bai-nĕĕn-yĕ</i>),	benign.

The following are more irregular in the formation of their feminine, as :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
Beau [bel] (<i>bōk</i>),	belle,	beautiful.
nouveau [nouvel] (<i>noū-vōk</i>),	nouvelle (<i>noū-vĕl</i>),	new.
mou [mol] (<i>moū</i>),	molle (<i>mōll</i>),	soft.
fou [fol] (<i>foū</i>),	folle (<i>fōll</i>),	foolish.
vieux [vieil] (<i>vyēū</i>),	vieille (<i>vyĕ-yĕ</i>),	old.

N.B. The above words in parentheses, *bel*, *nouvel*, etc., are used before *masculine nouns* beginning with a *vowel* or *h* *mute*, as: *un bel arbre*, a fine tree; *un nouvel ordre*, a new order; *un fol espoir*, a foolish hope, etc.

B.

Of the Plural of Adjectives.

The rules given for the plural of substantives apply also to adjectives. *Ex.:*

	<i>Plural.</i>
Grand, <i>f.</i> grande ; grand.	grands, <i>f.</i> grandes.
gras, <i>f.</i> grasse ; fat.	gras, <i>f.</i> grasses.
royal (<i>roāh-yāhl</i>), <i>f.</i> royale ; royal.	royaux (<i>roāh-yoh</i>), <i>f.</i> royales.
beau (<i>bōh</i>), <i>f.</i> belle ; beautiful.	beaux (<i>bōh</i>), <i>f.</i> belles.
vieux (<i>vyēū</i>), <i>f.</i> vieille (<i>vyē-yē</i>) ; old.	vieux, <i>f.</i> vieilles.

Fou, *mou* and *bleu* (blue) make in the plural *fous*, *mous* and *bleus*.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES IN A SENTENCE.

Adjectives are generally placed *after* the nouns which they qualify ; as, for instance :

le tailleur français,	the French tailor.
l'homme heureux (<i>eū-reū</i>),	the happy man.
de l'eau fraîche,	some fresh water.

But the following, in their common acceptation, are generally placed *before* their nouns :

autre, other.	demi (<i>dē-mē</i>), half.
beau, fine.	grand, great.
bon, good.	gros, large.
brave (<i>brāhv</i>), brave.	jeune, young.
cher, dear.	joli, pretty.
méchant (<i>may-shāng</i>), wicked.	petit (<i>p'-tē</i>), small.
mauvais (<i>mō-vāh</i>), bad.	saint (<i>saing</i>), holy.
meilleur (<i>mē-yēūr</i>), better.	tout (<i>toū</i>), all.
moindre (<i>mō-āing-dr</i>), less.	vieux (<i>vyēū</i>), old.
nouveau (<i>noū vōh</i>), new.	vrai (<i>vray</i>), true.

Many of these, however, may be constantly found in French books placed *after*, and many of the others may be found *before* their nouns. The safe rule is to place the adjective *after* its noun.

The **following adjectives** have a **different meaning**, according as they stand *before* or *after* their noun :

Mon <i>cher</i> ami, my dear friend (denoting affection).	Un livre <i>cher</i> , a dear book (denoting the price).
un <i>brave</i> homme, an honest man.	un homme <i>brave</i> , a brave (= courageous) man.
un <i>onhête</i> homme, an honest man.	un homme <i>honnête</i> , a civil or polite man.
une <i>fausse</i> clef, a false key, skeleton-key, a picklock.	une clef <i>fausse</i> , a wrong key.
une <i>sage</i> -femme, a midwife.	une femme <i>sage</i> , a wise woman.
la <i>dernière</i> année, the last year (of certain space of time). ¹	l'année <i>dernière</i> , last year (the past year).

C.

Degrees of Comparison.

The *Comparative* is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before the adjective, while *le plus* or *la plus* (fem.) is prefixed to denote the *Superlative*.

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>
haut (<i>ôh</i>), (<i>m.</i>)	} high.	plus haut
haute (<i>ôht</i>) (<i>f.</i>)		plus haute } higher.
beau (<i>bôh</i>), (<i>m.</i>)	} beautiful.	plus beau
belle (<i>bêl</i>), (<i>f.</i>)		plus belle } beautiful.

1) For instance: He spent the last year of his life at Paris, il passa la *dernière année de sa vie* à Paris.

Superlative.

le plus haut	}	the highest
la plus haute		
le plus beau	}	the most beautiful.
la plus belle		

There is in French also a *lower* and *lowest degree* which is formed by the words *moins*, less, for the Comparative, and *le (la) moins*, the least, for the Superlative.

	<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>
cher (<i>m.</i>)	} dear.	moins cher	} less dear, <i>i.e.</i> , cheaper.
chère (<i>f.</i>)		moins chère	

Superlative.

le moins cher	}	the least dear, <i>i.e.</i> , the cheapest.
la moins chère		

The following three adjectives have an

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

Bon, *f.* bonne, good ; *comp.* meilleur, *e.* better ; *super.* le meilleur, la meilleure, the best.

Mauvais, *e.* (*môh-vay*), in the meaning wicked ; *comp.* pire (*pêër*), worse ; *sup.* le pire, *f.* la pire, the worst.

Petit, *e.* ; *comp.* moindre (*mo-ain-dr*), less ; *sup.* le moindre, *f.* la moindre, the least.

Remarks :

As before an adjective is rendered by *aussi* ; *as* after it, and *than* are both translated by *que*. Ex. :

Il est *aussi* bon *que* moi, he is *as* good *as* I am.

Elle est plus belle *que* sa cousine, she is handsomer *than* her cousin.

TABLE.

Nouns and Adjectives.

Nouns.

ARTICLE.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Apostroph.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. le	la	l'	les
G. du	de la	de l'	des
D. au	à la	à l'	aux
A. le	la	l'	les

PLURAL OF NOUNS.

maison,	maisons.
fil,	fil.
tableau,	tableaux.
cheval,	chevaux.

IRREGULAR PLURAL.

ciel,	cieux.
l'oeil,	yeux.
aieul,	aieux.

Adjectives.

grand, grande ;	grands, grandes.
bon, bonne ;	bons, bonnes.
neuf, neuve ;	neufs, neuves.
heureux, heureuse ;	heureux, heureuses.
blanc, blanche ;	blancs, blanches.
public, publique ;	publics, publiques.
vieux, vieille ;	vieux, vieilles.
doux, douce ;	doux, douces.
long, longue ;	longs, longues.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bon ; meilleur ; le meilleur.
mauvais ; pire ; le pire.
petit ; moindre ; le moindre.

Pronouns.

CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL.

je, me
 tu, te.
 il, lui, le.
 elle, lui, la.
 nous, nous.
 vous, vous.
 ils, leur, les.
 elles, leur, les.

DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL.

moi, toi, lui, elle.
 nous, vous, eux, elles.

POSSESSIVE PRON.: (ADJECT.)

mon, ma, mes.	notre, nos.
ton, ta, tes.	votre, vos.
son, sa, ses.	leur, leurs.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (SUBSTANT.)

le mien, la mienne ;	les miens, les miennes.
le tien, la tienne ;	les tiens, les tiennes.
le sien, la sienne ;	les siens, les siennes.
le nôtre, la nôtre ;	les nôtres. } <i>both genders.</i>
le vôtre, la vôtre ;	les vôtres. }
le leur, la leur ;	les leurs. }

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

ce, cet, cette ;	ces.
celui, celle ;	ceux, celles.
celui-ci, celle-ci ;	ceux-ci, celles-ci.
celui-là, celle-là ;	ceux-là, celles-là.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

qui ; que.
 lequel, laquelle ; lesquels, lesquelles.
 dont ; en ; y.

Conjugaison du verbe ÊTRE.

Premier mode.

INDICATIF.

PRÉSENT.

Je suis,
tu es,
il est,
nous sommes,
vous êtes,
ils sont.

IMPARFAIT.

J'étais,
tu étais,
il était,
nous étions,
vous étiez,
ils étaient.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

Je fus,
tu fus,
il fut,
nous fûmes,
vous fûtes,
ils furent.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.

J'ai été,
tu as été,
il a été,
nous avons été,
vous avez été,
ils ont été.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

J'eus été,
tu eus été,
il eut été,
nous eûmes été,
vous eûtes été,
ils eurent été.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

J'avais été,
tu avais été,
il avait été,
nous avions été,
vous aviez été,
ils avaient été.

FUTUR.

Je serai,
tu seras,
il sera,
nous serons,
vous serez,
ils seront.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.

J'aurai été,
tu auras été,
il aura été,
nous aurons été,
vous aurez été,
ils auront été.

Deuxième mode.

CONDITIONNEL.

PRÉSENT.

Je serais,
tu serais,
il serait,
nous serions,
vous seriez,
ils seraient.

PASSÉ (1^{re} forme).

J'aurais été,
tu aurais été,
il aurait été,
nous aurions été,
vous auriez été,
ils auraient été.

PASSÉ (2^{me} forme).

J'eusse été,
tu eusses été,
il eût été,
nous eussions été,
vous eussiez été,
ils eussent été.

Troisième mode.

IMPERATIF.

PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.

Sois,
soyons,
soyez.

Quatrième mode.

SUBJONCTIF.

PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.

Que je sois,
que tu sois,
qu'il soit,
que nous soyons,
que vous soyez,
qu'ils soient.

IMPARFAIT.

Que je fusse,
que tu fusses,
qu'il fût,
que nous fussions,
que vous fussiez,
qu'ils fussent.

PASSÉ.

Que j'aie été,
que tu aies été,
qu'il ait été,
que nous ayons été,
que vous ayez été,
qu'ils aient été.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

Que j'eusse été,
que tu eusses été,
qu'il eût été,
que nous eussions été,
que vous eussiez été,
qu'ils eussent été.

Cinquième mode.

INFINITIF.

PRÉSENT.

Être.

PASSÉ.

Avoir été.

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

Êtant.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

Êté.

Conjugaison du verbe AVOIR.

<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Premier mode.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">INDICATIF.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRÉSENT.</p> <p>J'ai, tu as, il a, nous avons, vous avez, ils ont.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">IMPARFAIT.</p> <p>J'avais, tu avais, il avait, nous avions, vous aviez, ils avaient.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ DÉFINI.</p> <p>J'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ INDÉFINI.</p> <p>J'ai eu, tu as eu, il a eu, nous avons eu, vous avez eu, ils ont eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.</p> <p>J'eus eu, tu eus eu, il eut eu, nous eûmes eu, vous eûtes eu, ils eurent eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.</p> <p>J'avais eu, tu avais eu, il avait eu, nous avions eu, vous aviez eu, ils avaient eu.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">FUTUR.</p> <p>J'aurai, tu auras, il aura, nous aurons, vous aurez, ils auront.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.</p> <p>J'aurai eu, tu auras eu, il aura eu, nous aurons eu, vous aurez eu, ils auront eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Deuxième mode.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">CONDITIONNEL.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRÉSENT.</p> <p>J'aurais, tu aurais, il aurait, nous aurions, vous auriez, ils auraient.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ (<i>Ire forme</i>).</p> <p>J'aurais eu, tu aurais eu, il aurait eu, nous aurions eu, vous auriez eu, ils auraient eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ (<i>2me forme</i>).</p> <p>J'ausse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Troisième mode.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">IMPERATIF.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRÉSENT <i>ou</i> FUTUR.</p> <p>Aye, Ayons, Ayez.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Quatrième mode.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBJONCTIF.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRÉSENT <i>ou</i> FUTUR.</p> <p>Que j'aie, que tu aies, qu'il ait, que nous ayons, que vous ayez, qu'ils aient.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">IMPARFAIT.</p> <p>Que j'eusse, que tu eusses, qu'il eût, que nous eussions, que vous eussiez, qu'ils eussent.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ.</p> <p>Que j'aie eu, que tu aies eu, qu'il ait eu, que nous ayons eu, que vous ayez eu, qu'ils aient eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.</p> <p>que j'eusse eu, que tu eusses eu, qu'il eût eu, que nous eussions eu, que vous eussiez eu, qu'ils eussent eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Cinquième mode.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">INFINITIF.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRÉSENT.</p> <p>Avoir.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PASSÉ.</p> <p>Avoir eu.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.</p> <p>Ayant.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PARTICIPE PASSÉ.</p> <p>Eu, ayant eu.</p>
---	---	---

Première Conjugaison, en ER.

INDICATIF.	FUTUR.	SUBJONCTIF.
PRÉSENT.	Je chanterai, tu chanteras, il chantera, nous chanterons, vous chanterez, ils chanteront.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.
Je chante, tu chantes, il chante, nous chantons; vous chantez, ils chantent.	FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.	Que je chante, que tu chantes, qu'il chante, que nous chantions, que vous chantiez. qu'ils chantent.
IMPARFAIT.	J'aurai chanté, tu auras chanté, il aura chanté, nous aurons chanté, vous aurez chanté, ils auront chanté.	IMPARFAIT.
Je chantais, tu chantais, il chantait, nous chantions, vous chantiez, ils chantaient.	CONDITIONNEL.	Que je chantasse, que tu chantasses, qu'il chantât, que nous chantassions, que vous chantassiez, qu'ils chantassent.
PASSÉ DÉFINI.	PRÉSENT.	PASSÉ.
Je chantai tu chantas, il chanta, nous chantâmes, vous chantâtes, ils chantèrent.	Je chanterais, tu chanterais, il chanterait, nous chanterions, vous chanteriez, ils chanteraient.	Que j'aie chanté, que tu aies chanté, qu'il ait chanté, que nous ayons chanté, que vous ayez chanté, qu'ils aient chanté.
PASSÉ INDÉFINI.	PASSÉ (1re forme).	PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.
J'ai chanté, tu as chanté, il a chanté, nous avons chanté, vous avez chanté ils ont chanté.	J'aurais chanté, tu aurais chanté, il aurait chanté, nous aurions chanté, vous auriez chanté, ils auraient chanté.	Que j'eusse chanté, que tu eusses chanté, qu'il eût chanté, que nous eussions chanté, que vous eussiez chanté, qu'ils eussent chanté.
PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.	PASSÉ (2me forme).	INFINITIF.
J'eus chanté, tu eus chanté, il eut chanté, nous eûmes chanté, vous eûtes chanté, ils eurent chanté.	J'eusse chanté, tu eusses chanté, il eût chanté, nous eussions chanté, vous eussiez chanté ils eussent chanté.	PRÉSENT.
PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.	IMPERATIF.	Chanter.
J'avais chanté, tu avais chanté, il avait chanté, nous avions chanté, vous aviez chanté, ils avaient chanté.	Chante, chantons, chantez.	PASSÉ.
		Avoir chanté.
		PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.
		Chantant.
		PARTICIPE PASSÉ.
		Chanté, chantée, ayant chanté.

Deuxième Conjugaison, en IR.

INDICATIF.

PRÉSENT.

Je *finis*,
tu *finis*,
il *finit*,
nous *finissons*,
vous *finissez*,
ils *finissent*.

IMPARFAIT.

Je *finissais*,
tu *finissais*,
il *finissait*,
nous *finissions*,
vous *finissiez*,
ils *finissaient*.

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

Je *finis*,
tu *finis*,
il *finit*,
nous *finîmes*,
vous *finîtes*,
ils *finirent*.

PASSÉ INDÉFINI.

J'ai *fini*,
tu as *fini*,
il a *fini*,
nous avons *fini*,
vous avez *fini*,
ils ont *fini*.

PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.

J'eus *fini*,
tu eus *fini*,
il eût *fini*,
nous eûmes *fini*,
vous eûtes *fini*,
ils eurent *fini*.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

J'avais *fini*,
tu avais *fini*,
il avait *fini*,
nous avions *fini*,
vous aviez *fini*,
ils avaient *fini*.

FUTUR.

Je *finirai*,
tu *finiras*,
il *finira*,
nous *finirons*,
vous *finirez*,
ils *finiront*.

FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.

J'aurai *fini*,
tu auras *fini*,
il aura *fini*,
nous aurons *fini*,
vous aurez *fini*,
ils auront *fini*.

CONDITIONNEL.

PRÉSENT.

Je *finirais*,
tu *finirais*,
il *finirait*,
nous *finirions*,
vous *finiriez*,
ils *finiraient*.

PASSÉ, (1re forme).

J'aurais *fini*,
tu aurais *fini*,
il aurait *fini*,
nous aurions *fini*,
vous auriez *fini*,
ils auraient *fini*.

PASSÉ (2me forme).

J'eusse *fini*,
tu eusses *fini*,
il eût *fini*,
nous eussions *fini*,
vous eussiez *fini*,
ils eussent *fini*.

IMPERATIF.

Finis,
finissons,
finissez.

SUBJONCTIF.

PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.

Que je *finisse*,
que tu *finisses*,
qu'il *finisse*,
que nous *finissions*,
que vous *finissiez*,
qu'ils *finissent*.

IMPARFAIT.

Que je *finisse*,
que tu *finisses*,
qu'il *finît*,
que nous *finissions*,
que vous *finissiez*,
qu'ils *finissent*.

PASSÉ.

Que j'aie *fini*,
que tu aies *fini*,
qu'il ait *fini*,
que nous ayons *fini*,
que vous ayez *fini*,
qu'ils aient *fini*.

PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.

Que j'eusse *fini*,
que tu eusses *fini*,
qu'il eût *fini*,
que nous eussions *fini*,
que vous eussiez *fini*,
qu'ils eussent *fini*.

INFINITIF.

PRÉSENT.

Finir.

PASSÉ.

Avoir *fini*,

PARTICIPE PRÉSENT.

Finissant.

PARTICIPE PASSÉ.

Finé, finie, ayant fini.

Troisième Conjugaison, en RE.

INDICATIF.	FUTUR.	SUBJONCTIF.
PRÉSENT.	Je rendrai, tu rendras, il rendra, nous rendrons. vous rendrez, ils rendront.	PRÉSENT ou FUTUR.
Je rends, tu rends, il rend, nous rendons, vous rendez, ils rendent.	FUTUR ANTÉRIEUR.	Que je rende que tu rendes, qu'il rende, que nous rendions, que vous rendiez qu'ils rendent.
IMPARFAIT.	J'aurai rendu, tu auras rendu, il aura rendu, nous aurons rendu, vous aurez rendu, ils auront rendu.	IMPARFAIT.
Je rendais, tu rendais, il rendait, nous rendions, vous rendiez, ils rendaient.	CONDITIONNEL.	Que je rendisse, que tu rendisses, qu'il rendît, que nous rendissions, que vous rendissiez, qu'ils rendissent.
PASSÉ DÉFINI.	PRÉSENT.	PASSÉ.
Je rendis, tu rendis, il rendit, nous rendîmes, vous rendîtes, ils rendirent.	Je rendrais, tu rendrais, il rendrait, nous rendrions, vous rendriez, ils rendraient.	Que j'aie rendu, que tu aies rendu, qu'il ait rendu, que nous ayons rendu, que vous ayez rendu, qu'ils aient rendu.
PASSÉ INDÉFINI.	PASSÉ (1re forme).	PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.
J'ai rendu, tu as rendu, il a rendu, nous avons rendu, vous avez rendu, ils ont rendu.	J'aurais rendu, tu aurais rendu, il aurait rendu, nous aurions rendu, vous auriez rendu, ils auraient rendu.	Que j'eusse rendu, que tu eusses rendu, qu'il eût rendu, que nous eussions rendu, que vous eussiez rendu, qu'ils eussent rendu.
PASSÉ ANTÉRIEUR.	PASSÉ (2me forme).	INFINITIF.
J'eus rendu, tu eus rendu, il eut rendu, nous eûmes rendu, vous eûtes rendu, ils eurent rendu.	J'eusse rendu, tu eusses rendu, il eût rendu, nous eussions rendu, vous eussiez rendu, ils eussent rendu.	PRÉSENT.
PLUS-QUE-PARFAIT.	IMPERATIF.	Rendre.
J'avais rendu, tu avais rendu, il avait rendu, nous avions rendu, vous aviez rendu, ils avaient rendu.	Rends. Rendons, Rendez.	PASSÉ.
		Avoir rendu.
		PARTICIPE.
		PRÉSENT.
		Rendant.
		PASSÉ.
		Rendu, rendu, ayant rendu.

The following table contains all the *endings* of the three conjugations, viz. :

the 1st Conjugation ending in er (= donn-er)

“ 2d “ “ “ **ir** (= fin-ir)

“ 3d “ “ “ **re** (= rend-re).

This table ought to be continually used by the student, who had better paste it on a stiff paper-board

INDICATIF. PRÉSENT.

1st conj. ✓	2d conj.	3d conj.
e	is	s
es	is	s
e	it	-
ons	issons	ons
ez	issez	ez
ent	issent	ent

IMPARFAIT.

ais	issais	ais
ais	issais	ais
ait	issait	ait
ions	issions	ions
iez	issiez	iez
aient	issaient	aient

PASSÉ DÉFINI.

ai	is	is
as	is	is
a	it	it
âmes	îmes	îmes
âtes	îtes	îtes
èrent	irent	irent

FUTUR.

erai	irai	rai
eras	iras	ras
era	ira	ra
erons	irons	rons
erez	irez	rez
eront	iront	ront

CONDITIONNEL. PRÉSENT.

erais	irais	rais
erais	irais	rais
erait	irait	rait
erions	irions	rions
eriez	iriez	riez
eraient	iraient	raient

IMPERATIF.

•	is	s
ons	issons	ons
ez	issez	ez

SUBJONCTIF. PRÉSENT.

e	isse	e
es	isses	es
e	isse	e
ions	issions	ions
iez	issiez	iez
ent	issent	ent

IMPARFAIT.

asse	isse	isse
asses	isses	isses
ât	ft	ft
assions	issions	issions
assiez	issiez	issiez
assent	issent	issent

INFINITIF. PRÉSENT.

er	ir	re
----	----	----

PARTICIPE. PRÉSENT.

ant	issant	ant
-----	--------	-----

P A S S É.

é, éc	i, ie.	u, ue.
-------	--------	--------

Translate the following

Exercises

into English, and then again, without assistance of the book, into French :

1. At Dinner.

Auriez-vous la bonté de faire la salade pendant que je vais (jě vay — *I am going*) découper (*carve*) le rôti (*roast*). Prendrez-vous (prāng-drēh vōu — *will you take*) du rôti? Aimez-vous le gras (grāh — *fat*)? Donnez-moi du maigre (maygr — *lean*), s'il vous plait. J'espère que vous trouvez ce morceau (mōr-sōh — *piece*) à votre goût (goŭ). Vous n'avez pas de sauce. Comment trouvez-vous le rôti? Permettez-moi de vous servir (sěr-věēr — *to serve*) un morceau de . . . ? Vous n'avez pas mangé de . . . Desservez (day-sěr-vēh — *clear the things off*) et apportez-nous du café.

2. A Business Letter.

PARIS, le treize (trayse = 13th) janvier (jāng-vyēh = *January*).

Monsieur Charles Toussaint à Lyon (toū-saing āh Lēē-ong).

Monsieur,

Occupés (oc-clū-pay — *busy, occupied*) du règlement (ray-glě-māng — *regulation*) de nos écritures (ay-krěētūr — *books*), nous vous envoyons ci-inclus votre compte pour l'année passée (*last year*), en vous priant (āng voŭ prěē-āng — *requesting, begging*) de vouloir bien le faire examiner, et si vous êtes d'accord (*in accord, accordance*), avec nous, de nous créditer sur le nouveau (noŭ-vōh — *new*) compte du solde (*balance*) en notre faveur (*favor*) de dix mille francs.

Agréez l'assurance (ā-gray-ēh lā-sū-rāngs — *accept the assurance*) de notre parfaite considération (pār-faite cong-sēē-dě-rāh-syong = *highest esteem*).

GAILLARD & CIE. (gā-yār ay cong-pān-yēē).

3.

1) Monsieur, je représente (re-pray-zāngt) la maison de B. et Compagnie (B. & Cie.) à Lyon (lěē-ong), et je viens vous faire mes offres de service.—2) Ah, je m'en souviens (soū-vyaing = *remember*), nous avons déjà fait des affaires ensemble (zāng-sāng-bl = *together*). Mais je ne puis vous donner d'ordre aujourd'hui.—3) J'en suis bien fâché (*sorry*). Je ne puis cependant (sě-pāng-dāng = *however*) vous quitter sans vous montrer quelques échantillons entièrement (āng-tyairēmāng = *entirely*) nouveaux (noū-vōh). — 4) Ne vous en donnez pas la peine (pain = *trouble*); je ne commanderai (*order*) rien (*nothing*) pour le moment. Ce n'est pas une peine du tout; je m'en ferai un plaisir.—5) Si vous voulez bien prendre la peine d'examiner (deg-zāh-měē-nay) mes échantillons, je suis convaincu (cong-vaing-kü = *convinced*) que vous me donnerez un ordre au moins pour essai (*trial*).—6) Voyez, voici une nouvelle espèce (*species*) de mouseline de laine (moū-zě-lěēn de laine) qui se porte (*is worn*) beaucoup en France. — 7) On la porte beaucoup pour robes d'été (*summer-dresses*); nous en avons vendu l'impossible (laing-po-sěēbl).

4.

Comment trouvez-vous la nouvelle pièce de monsieur N.? A parler franchement (frāng-shě-māng = *frankly*), la pièce est ennuyeuse (āng-n'wēe-yeūse = *tedious*). La pièce manque (mānk = *is wanting in*) d'action (dāc-zyōng = *in action*). Le dénouement est forcé (lě day-noū-māng ay for-say = *the catastrophe is forced*). L'intrigue (laing-treeg = *the plot*) n'a pas le sens commun (lě sāng com-mēung = *common sense*). Comment avez-vous trouvé les

couplets du vaudeville (*the couplets, songs*)? Assez jolis (*rather pretty*); mais je ne suis enchanté (*āng-shāng-tay = enchanted, charmed*), ni (*nee = neither*) de vos chanteurs (*shāng-teūr = singers*), ni de vos chanteuses (*shāngteūze = lady singers*). Ils chantent (*shāngt = sing*) presque tous faux (*presk toū fōh = almost all false*). Un théâtre de vaudeville ne peut pas être bien monté en chanteurs.

Translate the following

Exercises.

1.

1) May I ask you to tell me if Mr. Grévy is at home?
 2) I am very sorry (*je regrette bien*), sir; Mr. Grévy is not at home; he has just gone out (*sortir = sor-tēēr*).—
 3) May I ask you to tell me where you have bought this beautiful dress and how much you have paid for it? — 4) Be so kind to pass me the salt (*le sel*). — 5) Have the kindness to read this letter; I do not understand (*je ne comprends pas = jě ně cong-prāng pāh*) English. — 6) Have the kindness to give my card to Mr. Bronsard (*brong-sār*) and tell him, if you please, that I have just arrived by (*par*) this train. — 7) If I were not afraid of troubling you I would beg you to accompany me this morning. I have some shopping to do. — 8) Would you have the kindness to send me some patterns of the best Lyons silk you have in stock? — 9) Would you have the kindness to get me a physician? My sister is very ill (*malade = mā-lāhd*). — 10) If it were convenient to you to give me some information (*des renseignements = day rāng-sěn-yě-māng*) about (*sur*) Mr. Beauregard, I should feel (= be) very much (*bien*) obliged (*obligé =*

ob-lèè-jay) to you. — 11) You would greatly oblige me if you would give (=if you gave [Imperfect]) this letter to Mrs. Tourville. — 12) I did not understand you. Will you please repeat what you have said? — 13) Would you be so kind as to grant me a moment's interview? I have just received a letter from my uncle in Paris and hope that its contents will be quite satisfactory to you.— 14) You have greatly obliged me, sir, and you may count on my gratitude. — 15) Do me this favor. I beg *for it* (*en*). — 16) Be so kind as to write to Mr. B. that I want two front-rooms.

2.

1) Tell the boy (*garçon*) that he must go to the station at half past five at the latest, as the train arrives at 5.40. — 2) The dressmaker (*la couturière* = koū-tū-ryair) must finish my dress to-day as I am going to leave for Saratoga to-night. — 3) At what o'clock must you be at your physician's? — 4) How much money do you need? — 5) If the tailor should come [*Imperfect*], tell him that I have no time to try (*essayer*) the coat on this morning. He must call again (*revenir*) to-morrow at a quarter to twelve. — 6) Waiter, I have no knife.—Here is one, sir. 7) If you want good gloves, go to the French glove-maker's in Church street. He keeps (= *has*) excellent ones. — 8) Mr. Littré must go to Rouen for some weeks. He wants to visit (*visiter*) his aunt, who is very ill. — 9) Since when have you been in Paris? — Since last night. — 10) Well, I hope you will do me the favor to dine with me to-day, as I am obliged to go to England to-morrow morning at half past four. — 11) If you want to leave by this boat, you must hurry (*vous dépêcher*). — 12) If I were not afraid of troubling you I would beg you to hand (*donner*) this little package to my sister. But you must go there (*y*) at once, as she will stay (*rester*) only one day in Paris.

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART VIII.

VIII.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

(Continuation.)

I should be much obliged to you.

1.

1. I am very much (*infiniment*) obliged to you.
2. I am sorry, but I cannot do it.
3. With the best will (*la volonté*) in the world (*du monde*), I could not (*je ne pourrais*) do so (= it).
4. I should be much obliged to you, if you were to tell me how I could find the new (*nouvelle*) address of this gentleman.

1) Je pourrais, *I should be able*, is the irregular conditional of *pouvoir*, which is conjugated thus:

Present.

Je peux (*peū*), } I can,
Je puis, } &c.
tu peux (*peū*),
il peut (*peū*),
nous pouvons (*poū-vong*),
vous pouvez,
ils peuvent (*peūv'*).

Imperfect.

Je pouvais (*poū-vay*), I could, &c.
tu pouvais,
il pouvait,
nous pouvions (*poū-vyong*),
vous pouviez (*poū-vyéh*),
ils pouvaient (*poū vay*).

VIII.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

(Continuation.)

Je vous serais bien obligé.

jě vou sě ray byaing ób-lě-jay.

1.

1. Je vous suis infiniment obligé (*jě vou s'wěē zaing-fěē-něē-māng tób-lě-jay*).
2. J'en suis fâché (*jāng s'wěē fāh-shay*), mais je ne puis le faire.
3. Avec la meilleure volonté du monde, je ne pourrais le faire (*ā-věk lā mě-yeūr vō-long-tay dü mongd jě ně pour-rět lě fair*).
4. Je vous serais bien obligé si vous me disiez, comment je pourrais¹ trouver la nouvelle adresse de ce monsieur (*lā nou-věl ā-drēs dě sě mō-sycū*).

Pr terite.

Je pus (*pū*), I could, &c.
 tu pus,
 il put,
 nous pûmes (*pūm*),
 vous pûtes (*pūt*),
 ils purent (*pūr*).

Conditional.

Je pourrais (*poūr-ray*),
 tu pourrais,
 il pourrait,
 nous pourrions (*poūr-ryong*),
 vous pourriez,
 ils pourraient.

Future.

Je pourrai (*poūr-rěh*), I shall be able, &c.
 tu pourras,
 il pourra,
 nous pourrons (*poūr-rong*),
 vous pourrez,
 ils pourront.

Subj. Present.

Que je puisse (*pū-is*),
 que tu puisses,
 qu'il puisse,
 que nous puissions,
 que vous puissiez,
 qu'ils puissent.

Of the health.

5. How do you do ?
6. How are you ? (*Literally*: How do you go ?)
7. How do you do ?
8. How is (= goes) your health ?
9. Is your health good ?
10. Thanks (*merci*), pretty good. (*Literally*: It goes pretty well.)
11. How is your father ? [The French say more politely *Mr. your father ; Madam your mother.*]
12. Is every one (*tout le monde*) well at your house ?
13. They are all (*tous*) in good health.
14. Thank you (*Je vous remercie*), my whole family (*toute ma famille*) is very well.
15. How have you been since (*depuis que*) I saw you ?
16. How is your friend ?
17. { Is your mother well ?
 { Is your mother in good health ?
18. She is not well ; she is a little (i.e. *rather = un peu*) indisposed.
19. { What is the matter with her ?
 { What ails her ?

1) *Bien portant* = well, healthy, is the opposite to *malade, ill, or indisposed, indisposed*. But of a healthy *clime* or *food* the French

De la santé (*sāng-tay*).

5. Comment vous portez-vous ?
6. Comment allez-vous (*cō-māng tā-lēh-voū*) ?
7. { Comment cela va-t-il ?
 { Comment ça va-t-il (*kō-māng sā vā-tēll*) ?
8. Comment va la santé ?
9. Votre santé est-elle bonne (*vōt' sāng-tay ay-tēll bōn*) ?
10. { Merci, ça va assez bien.
 { Merci, cela va assez bien (*mēr-cēē s'lāh vā ā-say byaing*).
11. { Comment se porte monsieur votre père ?
 { Comment va monsieur votre père ?
12. Tout le monde (*toū-lē-mong*) se porte-t-il bien chez vous ?
13. Ils sont tous en bonne santé (*toūs zāng bōn sāng-tay*).
14. Je vous remercie (*rē-mēr-sēē*), toute ma famille est bien portante¹ (*toūt māh fā-mēē yē ay byaing por-tāngt*).
15. Comment vous êtes-vous porté depuis que je vous ai vu (*dē-pū-ēē kē jē voū zay vū*) ?
16. Comment se porte votre ami ?
17. { Votre mère est-elle bien ?
 { Votre mère est-elle en bonne santé (*ay-tēll āng bōn sāng-tay*) ?
18. Elle ne se porte pas bien ; elle est un peu indisposée (*ēll lay teūng peū aing-dīs-po-zay*).
19. { Quelle maladie (*mā-lā-dēē*) a-t-elle ?
 { Qu'a-t-elle (*kāh-tēll*) ?

use the word *sain* (*saing*), *healthy*, and *malsain* (*māh-saing*), unhealthy.

20. She has a headache (*mal à la tête*) and is obliged to keep the room.
21. Your wife¹ has been rather indisposed (*souffrante*)?
22. Yes, sir. Mrs. B. (*or my wife*) had taken cold, but she has quite recovered (= she *is* quite recovered [*entièrement rétablie*]).
23. I have a cold.
24. Mrs. B. has a cold (in the head).
25. Returning from the ball (*or On my way home from the ball*) I took cold.
26. I should like to go to bed; I do not feel well (*je suis mal à mon aise* = ease, comfort).
27. I do not know what ails me.
28. I have a headache.
29. He is suffering with the toothache.
30. I have a sore throat (*la gorge*).
31. I have the stomach-ache.
32. He is sick (*mal au coeur* = ill at the heart).
33. Am I not pale? Yes, sir, you are looking badly.
34. Get me a physician (*médecin*).
35. Do you know (*connaissez-vous*) an English physician?
36. We must hope (*or Let us hope*) that this will not amount to much (= will be nothing).
37. There is not anything the matter with me (= I have nothing).

¹ In speaking about one's own wife, or of the wife of another party, the French say simply *Madame*.

20. Elle a mal à la tête et est obligée de garder la chambre (*shāng-br*).
21. Madame a été un peu souffrante (*soū-frāngt*) ?
22. Oui, monsieur. Madame B. avait pris froid ; mais elle est entièrement retablie (*a-vay prēē froāh, may z'ill lay tāng-tyai-rēmāng rē-tāh-blēē*).
23. { Je suis enrhumé² (*zāng-rū-may*).
 { J'ai le rhume (*rūm*).
24. Madame B. est enrhumée (du cerveau) (*ay-tāng-rū-may dū sēr-vōh*).
25. En revenant du bal j'ai pris froid.
26. Je voudrais bien aller me coucher ; je suis mal à mon aise (*ā-lēh mē kōō-shēh, jē s' ūēē māhl-lāh mon nayze*).
27. Je ne sais ce que j'ai (*jē nē say sē kē jay*).
28. J'ai mal à la tête.
29. Il a mal aux dents (*dāng*).
30. J'ai mal à la gorge.
31. J'ai mal au ventre (*vāng-tr*).
32. Il a mal au coeur (*keūr*). (Refers only to nausea.)
33. Ne suis-je pas pâle (*pāhl*) ? Oui monsieur, vous avez mauvaise mine (*mēēn*).
34. Envoyez chercher (*āng-vōāh-yēh shēr-shēh*) un médecin.
35. Connaissez-vous (*cō-nay-sēh-voū*) un médecin anglais ?
36. Il faut espérer que cela ne sera rien (*rēē-āing*).
37. Je n'ai rien.

2) *Je suis enrhumé*, I have a cold ; *le rhume* and *la toux* are not synonymous. *Le rhume* is the cold (in one's head), but *la toux* is the cough.

38. I am delighted (*charmé*) to see you in such good health.
39. I have been coughing (= I am coughing [*je tousse*]) for [*depuis*] two days.
40. How hoarse (*enroué*) you are!
41. I am afraid (*Je crains* or *j'ai peur*) I will take (or catch) cold.
42. You ought to take care of yourself (*vous ménager*).
43. You will get ill (= You will make an illness of it [*en*]).
44. What is it hurts him?
45. Has he consulted a physician?
46. Did he feel (*a-t-il tâté*) his pulse?
47. I am very glad (*ravi*) to see you looking so well.
48. He will not outlast the winter (*l'hiver*).
49. He is out of danger (*hors de danger*) now.
50. I suffer frequently (*souvent*) with the headache (toothache.)

2.

B. Terms of thanking.

1. I thank you very much, sir.
2. Thanks!
3. My best thanks!
4. Thank you *very* much.

38. Je suis charmé de vous voir en bonne santé.
39. J'ai la toux (*toū*) (*or* je tousse) depuis deux jours.
40. Comme vous êtes enroué (*zāng-roū-a*)!
41. Je crains (*or* j'ai peur) de m'enrhumer (*jě craing de māng-rü-may*).
42. Il faut vous ménager (*may-nā-jay*).
43. Vous en ferez une maladie.
44. Qu'est-ce qui lui fait mal (*kāysě kēē lü-ēē fay māht*)?
45. A-t-il consulté un médecin (*kong-sül-tay cūng mayl'-saing*).
46. Lui a-t-il tâté le pouls?
47. Je suis ravi (*rā-vēē*) (*or* enchanté [*āng-shāng-tay*]) de vous voir si bonne mine (*mēēn*).
48. Il ne passera pas l'hiver (*lēē vayr*).
49. Il est hors de danger maintenant (*ōr dě dāng-jay maing-tě-nāng*).
50. J'ai souvent des maux de tête (des maux de dents [*day mōh dě dāng*]).

2.

B. Formules de remerciements (*rě-měr-sēē-māng*).

1. Je vous remercie (*rě-měr-sēē*) beaucoup, monsieur.
2. Mille remerciements (*mēēl rě-měr-sēē-māng*).
3. { Tous mes remerciements (*toū may rě-měr-sēē-māng*).
- { Grand merci (*grāng měr-sēē*).
4. Je vous fais tous mes remerciements.

5. I am very much obliged to you.
6. You are very kind.
7. That would be an abuse of your kindness.
8. I am very grateful (*sensible*) for your kindness.
9. On the contrary, *I* ought to thank *you*.
10. I do not know how to thank you sufficiently.

C. Terms of excuse.

1. I beg your pardon, sir.
2. Don't mention it, pray.
3. I beg you will excuse me.
4. I may be mistaken ; I *surely am* mistaken, but I believe that
5. I beg your pardon, sir, but the affair is quite different.
6. Do not take it amiss, please.
7. Do not be angry, pray.
8. Please, do not feel annoyed on that account (*pour cela*).

1) *Dois* is the irregular present of *devoir*.

2) *Saurais* is the irregular conditional of *savoir*, to know, and is

5. Je vous suis bien (*or* infiniment) obligé (*ôb lē-jay*).
6. { Vous êtes bien bon.
 { Vous avez trop de bonté (*trô dē bong-ıay*).
7. Ce serait abuser de votre complaisance (*tā-bū-zay dē vol' cong-play-zāngs*).
8. Je suis très-sensible (*sāng-sēēbl*) à votre bonté.
9. C'est moi, au contraire, qui dois¹ vous en remercier (*kēē d'woāh vōō zāng rē-mēr-syēh*).
10. Je ne saurais assez vous en remercier (*jē nē so-ray zās-say voū zāng rē-mēr-syēh*).

C. Formules d'excuse (dēx-küs).

1. { Je vous demande pardon (*dē-māngd pārdong*), monsieur.
 { Pardon (*pār-dong*), monsieur.
2. { Il n'y a pas de mal (*ēēl nēē āh pāh dē māhl*), monsieur.
 { Pas de mal, monsieur.
3. { Mille pardons (*mēēl pār-dong*).
 { Pardon mille fois (*foāh*).
4. Je puis me tromper (*trong-pay*), je me trompe sans doute (*sāng doūt*) mais je crois que (*jē croāh kē*)....
5. Je vous demande pardon, mais l'affaire est tout autre.
6. Ne le prenez pas en mauvaise part (*zāng mō-vayze pār*).
7. { Ne m'en voulez pas.
 { Ne m'en veuillez pas (*veū-yēh pāh*).
8. { Ne m'en voulez pas pour cela.
 { Ne m'en veuillez pas pour cela.

exactly synonymous with *Je ne puis*; it is used when mental actions are spoken of.

If you were to ask him to send me immediately the patterns which I selected three days ago.

If (We say in English *if you would ask him*, but in French we must always use the *imperfect* or the *present* after *si*)

you were to ask *him*; you would ask *him*

to ask; to demand; to inquire for

to ask for some one; to inquire for a person

to ask a person for something (Observe the different construction in French)

Do you want to see the master or mistress?

to send me

on

the field

at once; immediately

which I have chosen (*choisis* has to be spelled with an *s*. Compare page 90, Note 1)

there; in it; on them; on it (See rules on *en*, page 204)

there is; there are

three days ago.

Si vous lui demandiez de m'envoyer sur-le-
 sēē voū lū-ēē dēmāng-dyēh dē māng-voāh-yēh sur lē

champ les échantillons que j'ai choisis il y a trois
 shāng lay zay-shāng-tēē-yong kē jay sh'woāh-zēē il yāh troāh
jours.
 joūr.

Si (*sēē*) (is con-trued either with the Present or Imperfect, but
never with the Conditional).

vous lui demandiez (*voū lū-ēē dē-māng-dyēh*)

demander (*dē-māng-dēh*)

demander quelqu'un (*kēl-keūng*) (Observe the construction)

demander quelque chose à quelqu'un (Observe the construc-
 tion)

demandez-vous Monsieur ou Madame ?

de m'envoyer (*dē māng-voāh-yēh*)

sur (*sūr*)

le champ (*lē shāng*)

sur-le-champ (*sūr-lē-shāng*)

que j'ai choisis (*kē jay sh'woāh-zēē*) (See rules on the past par-
 ticiple of verbs conjugated
 with *avoir*, page 90, Note 1)

y (*ēē*) (is used like *en*)

il y a (*ēēl yāh*)

il y a trois jours (*ēēl yāh troāh joūr*).

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

3.

N u m e r a l s .

We have two kinds of Numerals, the Cardinal and the Ordinal. The **Cardinal Numerals** (or numbers) are :

1 un (<i>cāng</i>)	21 vingt <i>et</i> un
2 deux (<i>deū</i>)	22 vingt-deux
3 trois (<i>trōā</i>)	23 vingt-trois
4 quatre (<i>kāf</i>)	24 vingt-quatre
5 cinq (<i>sainq</i>)	25 vingt-cinq
6 six (<i>sēē</i>)	26 vingt-six
7 sept (<i>sēt</i>)	27 vingt-sept
8 huit (<i>k'wēēt</i>)	28 vingt-huit
9 neuf (<i>neūv</i>)	29 vingt-neuf
10 dix (<i>dēēx</i>)	30 trente (<i>trāngt</i>)
11 onze (<i>ōngs</i>)	31 trente <i>et</i> un
12 douze (<i>doūze</i>)	32 trente-deux
13 treize (<i>trayze</i>)	33 trente-trois
14 quatorze (<i>kā-tōrz</i>)	34 trente-quatre
15 quinze (<i>kāingz</i>)	35 trente-cinq
16 seize (<i>sayz</i>)	36 trente-six
17 dix-sept (<i>dēē-sēt</i>)	37 trente-sept
18 dix-huit (<i>dēē-x'wēēt</i>)	38 trente-huit
19 dix-neuf	39 trente-neuf
20 vingt (<i>vainq</i>)	40 quarante (<i>kā-rāngt</i>)

- 41 quarante *et un*
 42 quarante-deux
 43 quarante-trois
 44 quarante-quatre
 45 quarante-cinq
 46 quarante-six
 47 quarante-sept
 48 quarante-huit
 49 quarante-neuf
 50 cinquante (*saing-kāngt*)
 51 cinquante *et un*
 52 cinquante-deux
 53 cinquante-trois
 54 cinquante-quatre
 55 cinquante-cinq
 56 cinquante-six
 57 cinquante-sept
 58 cinquante-huit
 59 cinquante-neuf
 60 soixante (*s'woā-sāngt*)
 61 soixante *et un*
 62 soixante-deux
 63 soixante-trois
 64 soixante-quatre
 65 soixante-cinq
 66 soixante-six
 67 soixante-sept
 68 soixante-huit
 69 soixante-neuf
 70 soixante-dix
 71 soixante *et onze*
 72 soixante-douze
 73 soixante-treize
 74 soixante-quatorze
 75 soixante-quinze
 76 soixante-seize
 77 soixante-dix-sept
 78 soixante-dix-huit
 79 soixante-dix-neuf
 80 quatre vingts (*kāl'r vaing*)
 81 quatre-vingt-un
 82 quatre-vingt-deux
 83 quatre-vingt-trois
 84 quatre-vingt-quatre
 85 quatre-vingt-cinq
 86 quatre-vingt-six
 87 quatre-vingt-sept
 88 quatre-vingt-huit
 89 quatre-vingt-neuf
 90 quatre-vingt-dix
 91 quatre-vingt-onze
 92 quatre-vingt-douze
 93 quatre-vingt-treize
 94 quatre-vingt-quatorze
 95 quatre-vingt-quinze
 96 quatre-vingt-seize
 97 quatre-vingt-dix-sept
 98 quatre-vingt-dix-huit
 99 quatre-vingt-dix-neuf
 100 cent (*sāng*)
 101 cent-un
 102 cent deux, &c.
 200 deux cents
 201 deux cent un
 202 deux cent deux, &c.
 1,000 mille (*mēēl*)
 2,000 deux mille
 1,000,000 un million (*mēēl-yong*).

Remarks.

1) The numbers 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and 71 are written *vingt et un, trente et un, &c.*, but 81 and 101 are written *quatre-vingt-un, cent-un*, without the copula *et*.

2) *Quatre-vingts, 80*, has a final *s* which is omitted in all subsequent numbers.

3) *Deux cents, 200, trois cents, 300, &c.*, are written with a final *s*, but when these numbers are followed by any other number they drop the *s*; as: *deux cent un, 201, trois cent quatre, 304, &c.*

4) *Mille never* takes the *s*.

5) There being no modern French number to express 70 or 90 (the old forms *septante* and *nonnante* being almost obsolete, and only used in Switzerland) one counts from 60 to 80, and from 80 to 99, continuously, as though one were to say in English, *eighty-eight, eighty-nine, eighty-ten, eighty-eleven, &c.*

6) The expression, *I am 20, 30, 40, &c., years old*, cannot be rendered literally, but must be expressed thus: *J'ai vingt ans, — j'ai trente ans, &c.*—How old are you? is translated: *Quel âge avez-vous? Ex.:*

Quel âge a votre ami? how old is your friend?

Il a dix-huit ans, he is eighteen years old.

Ordinal Numbers.

Except *le premier (lě prě-myēh)* and *le second (lě sě-gong)*, the ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal by changing *c* mute into *ième*; and by adding this syllable

to those which end in another consonant. Among these, however, *cinq* takes *u* before *ième* (*cinquième*), and *neuf* changes the *f* into *v* (*neuvième*). The *ordinal numbers* are as follows :

Le premier (<i>prĕ-myĕh</i>)	} the	le vingtième, the 20th.	
la première (<i>prĕ-myair</i>)		} first.	le vingt-unième, the 21st.
le second (<i>sĕ-gong</i>)	} the	le vingt-deuxième, the 22d, &c.	
la seconde (<i>sĕ-gongd</i>)		} second.	le trentième, the 30th.
le, la deuxième (<i>deũ-zyaim</i>)			le quarantième, the 40th.
le troisième (<i>troã-zyĕhm</i>)		le cinquantième, the 50th.	
le quatrième, the fourth.		le soixantième, the 60th.	
le cinquième (<i>saing-kyĕhm</i>), the fifth.		le soixante-dixième, the 70th.	
le sixième (<i>sĕĕ-zyĕhm</i>), the sixth.		le soixante-onzième, the 71st.	
le septième, the seventh.		le soixante-douzième, the 72d, &c.	
le huitième, the eight.		le quatre-vingtième, the 80th.	
le neuvième, the ninth.		le quatre-vingt-unième, the 81st.	
le dixième, the 10th.		le quatre-vingt-dixième, the 90th.	
le onzième, the 11th.		le centième, the 100th.	
le douzième, the 12th.		le cent et unième, the 101st.	
le treizième, the 13th.		le cent deuxième, the 102d, &c.	
le quatorzième, the 14th.		le cent vingtième, the 120th.	
le quinzième, the 15th.		le deux-centième, the 200th.	
le seizième, the 16th.		le six cent soixante-quinzième, the 675th.	
le dix-septième, the 17th.		le millième, the 1000th.	
le dix-huitième, the 18th.		le dernier, the last.	
le dix-neuvième, the 19th.			

Remarks.

1) *Unième* is used only after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, &c., as: Charles est le trente-unième de sa classe, Charles is the 31st of his class.

2) Days of the month (except *le premier* and *le dernier*) are expressed by cardinal numbers, as :

The first of April, *le premier avril* ; but :

The fifth of January, *le cinq janvier* (*jāng-vyēh*).

The 2d, 3d, 4th, &c. of May, *le deux, trois, quatre, &c., mai* (or *de mai*).

The eleventh of March, *le onze* (without apostrophe) *mars*.

The twentieth of June, *le vingt juin* (*jūāing*).

The question, 'What day of the month is to-day?' is translated :

Quel jour du mois avons-nous aujourd'hui? or :

Quel quantième (kēll kāngt-yēhm) sommes-nous? (or avons nous)?

Answer : *C'est aujourd'hui le dix, or :*

Nous sommes le dix, or nous avons le dix.

The English 'on the sixth,' &c., is rendered in French *le six*. *Ex.:*
On the sixth of May, *le six mai* (*may*).

3) Proper names of princes, too, take in French the cardinal numbers without the article, except *the first* and sometimes *the second*, as :

Henri premier, Henri the first.

Charles second or deux, Charles the second ; but Henry *quatre*, Henry the fourth.

4) The *distinctive* numbers (adverbs of number) are formed from the ordinal by adding *-ment* or *-ement* to the final letter :

Premièrement (*prē-myēh-rē-māng*), first ; in the first place.

Deuxièmement (*deū-zyēh-mē-māng*), secondly.

Troisièmement (*trōā-zyēh-mē-māng*), thirdly, &c.

5) *Fractional* numbers are expressed by ordinal numbers, as in English, but only from five upwards, as :

Un cinquième, a fifth.

Un huitième, an eighth.

Un sixième, a sixth.

Un dixième, a tenth.

The others are as follows :

A half = un demi (*dē-mēē*), f. une demie. The half = la moitié (*mō-ā-tyēh*).

A third = un tiers. A quarter or fourth = un quart (*kār*).

One pound and a half = une livre et demie (*dē-mēē*).

Names of the months.

janvier (*jāng-vyēh*), January.

février (*fay-vrēē-ēh*), February.

mars (*mārs*), March.

avril (*ā-vrēē-yē*), April.

mai (*may*), May.

juin (*jūāing*), June.

juillet (*j'wēē-yēh*), July.

août, (*a-ou*), August.

septembre (*set-tāng-br*), September.

octobre (*oct-to-br*), October.

novembre (*no-vāng-br*), November.

décembre (*day-sāng-br*), December.

en janvier, in January.

Names of the days.

dimanche (*dēē-māngsh*), Sunday.

lundi (*leūng-dēē*), Monday.

mardi (*mār-dēē*), Tuesday.

mercredi (*mēr-kr-dēē*), Wednesday.

jeudi (*jeū-dēē*), Thursday.

vendredi (*vāng-dr-dēē*), Friday.

samedi (*sām-dēē*), Saturday.

on Tuesday, (le) mardi.

Words.

Les Meubles (meū-bl), (m.). The Furniture.

une armoire (*ār-m'wōār*), a wardrobe.

la commode, the bureau.

le tiroir (*tēē-rō-ār*), the drawer.

la table, the table.

la chaise (*shayze*), the chair.

le fauteuil (*fōh-teū-yē*), the arm-chair.

la couverture (*coū-vēr-tūr*), the blanket.

une étagère (*ay-tāh-jayr*), a what-not.

le tapis (*tāh-pēē*), the carpet.

le tapis de table, the table-cover.

le lit (*lēē*), the bed.

le lit de fer, the iron bedstead.

le dos (<i>dōh</i>), the back.	le traversin (<i>trā-vēr-saing</i>), the bolster.
le sofa, the sofa.	
la glace (<i>glāhs</i>), the (large) mirror.	le matelas (<i>mā-t'-lāh</i>), the mattress.
le miroir (<i>mē-ro-ār</i>), the (small) mirror.	un sommier élastique (<i>som-yéh ay-lā-stēék</i>), a spring-mattress.
le tableau (<i>tā-blō</i>), the picture.	l'oreiller (<i>lōh-rē-yéh</i>), the pillow.
le cadre (<i>cāh-dr</i>), the frame.	le drap (<i>drāh</i>), the sheet.
la cheminée (<i>shē-mēē-nay</i>), the chimney.	faire le lit, to make the bed.
le chambranle (<i>shāng-brāngl</i>), the chimney-piece.	mettre des draps blancs, to put on fresh sheets.
une pelle (<i>pell</i>), a shovel.	une lampe (<i>lāngp</i>), a lamp.
des pincettes (<i>paing-sēt</i>), tongs.	des allumettes (<i>day zā-lū mēt</i>), matches.
une pendule (<i>pāng-dül</i>), a clock.	une bougie (<i>boū-jēē</i>), a waxlight.

Translate the following

Exercise

into English and then render it again into French :

Appartements à louer (*āp-pār-tē-māng āh loū. ēh*).

Avez-vous des appartements (*dāy zāp-pār-t'māng*) à louer?—J'en ai plusieurs et de différents prix (*dif-fay-rāng prēē*). — Voulez-vous un appartement meublé ou non meublé?—J'ai besoin de chambres meublées. Il me faudrait un salon et deux chambres à coucher. — Je puis vous satisfaire (*satisjy*), madame.—Donnez-vous la peine d'entrer (*dāng-tray*). Je vais vous faire voir (*let you see ; show you*) les chambres. — L'escalier (*les-kā-lyeh = the stair-case*) est un peu rapide (*rā-pēēd = steep*). — Il en a l'air, mais il est très-doux (*doū = easy*) à monter.—Est-

il éclairé (*lighted up*) le soir? — Cela va sans dire (*Why, certainly; of course*).—Vous voyez que le salon est sur le devant (dĕ-vāng = *to the front*) et que les chambres à coucher sont sur le derrière.—Quel est le prix du loyer (*rent*)? — Il est de cent francs.—C'est très-cher.—Veuillez remarquer, madame, que c'est ici le plus beau quartier (kār-tyēh = *part; quarter*) de la ville et que la maison est très-bien habitée (ā-bĕē-tay = *inhabited by very respectable people*).

In order to get a thorough mastery over the French verbs the student may now place the following verbs in proper form.

Exercise.

Give the

Indicative Present

of the following verbs :

Je mener.—Nous avancer.—Il acheter.—Vous appeler.—Trop de plaisir ennuyer.—Ces élèves répéter comme des perroquets (per-rokĕh = *parrots*).—L'intempérance (laing-tāng-pay-rāngs = *intemperance*) abrégier (*shorten*) la vie (vĕē = *life*).—La nature (nā-tūr) est un miroir fidèle (fĕē-dayl = *true*) qui refléter (*repeat*) à nos yeux la grandeur de Dieu (grāng-deūr dĕ dyeū = *the greatness of God*).

Imperfect.

Je commencer.—Nous régner (*to reign*).—Il jeter.—L'armée avancer, les ennemis (lay zĕ-nĕ-mĕē) engager le feu ; la victoire (vic-t'woāre = *victory*) balancer.—Nous établir.—Vous rougir (*to blush*).—Ils bâtir (*to build*).—Le jeune garçon unir la douceur à la modestie.—Il défendre.—Nous correspondre.

Future.

Nous *avouer*.—Est-ce toi qui *distribuer*?—Je *l'aimer*.—Dieu nous *protéger*.—Vous *regretter* le temps perdu (*lost*).—Vous *saisir* (*to seize*).—Le travail (*trā-vā-ē*=*labor*) vous *enrichir* (*āng-rēē-shēē*=*to enrich*).—Nous *répondre*.—Vous *perdre*.

Conditional.

Nous *perdre*.—Tu *entendre* (*āng-tāng-dr* = *to hear*).—Sans la vertu (*virtue*) vous *prétendre* vainement (*vain'-māng* = *in vain*) au bonheur (*bon-neūr* = *happiness*).—Vous *prier*.—Nous *dîner*.

Subjunctive Present.

Il faut que vous *certifier* (*cēr-tēē-fyēh*.—Il faut que chacun (*shāh-keūng* = *every one*) *payer* son tribut à la nature (*nā-tūr*).—Il faut qu'il *abrégé*.—Il faut qu'il *envoyer* les échantillons.

Put the following singulars into the corresponding persons of the plural :

Je *prétends*.—Tu as *défendu*. — J'avais *rompu*. — Je *perdrais* si je *jouais*, mais je ne *joue* pas.—Ton maître ne *veut* pas que tu *l'interrompes*.—Je *hais*.—Que je *vienn*e.—Je *vais*.—Il *ira*.—Je *faiblissais*.—Il *plaisante*.—Il *assure*.—Tu as *donné*.—Je suis *venu*.—Elle était *parti*.—Il *peut*.—Je *pourrai*.—Je suis *allé*.

Translate the following

Exercises

into English, and then again, without assistance of the book, into French :

At a theatre.

Où voulez-vous que nous allions aujourd'hui?—Al-
lons aux Français.¹—Je le veux bien. — Qu'est-ce qu'on
donne ce soir? Voyons l'affiche (lā-feesh = *hand-bill*,
poster). Les Fourchambault (*the Fourchambault* [foūr-
shāng-bol] *family*), comédie (cō-may-dēē) en cinq actes
par (*by*) Emile Augier. Le nom de l'auteur (lō-teūr =
the author) suffit (*is sufficient*) pour me décider (day-see-
day = *to decide*). J'entends dire (jāng-tāng dēēr = *I*
hear it said, I am told) que c'est une très-belle pièce (*very*
good [*fine*] *piece*). Quelle place prendrons-nous (prāng-
drong noū = *shall we take*)? Quelles sont les meilleures
(*the best*) places? Pour les hommes (*gentlemen*) les fau-
teuils d'orchestre (fō-teū-yě dor-shēs-tr = *orchestra-stalls*);
mais les dames ne vont qu'aux premières ou aux secondes
loges (*go only to the boxes on the first or second tier*). "L'entr'-
acte (lāng-tr-āct) messieurs, le programme détaillé (day-
tā-yay = *detailed*) du spectacle! Les noms (nōng =
names) de tous les acteurs (*actors*) qui jouent (jew = *play*)
dans les pièces de ce soir (s'woar = *evening*)!" — Qu'est-ce
qu'ils crient (krēē = *scream*) donc ces individus (say-
zaing-dēē-vēē-dü = *these individuals*)?—Ils offrent (eel-
zōffr = *they are offering*) les petits journaux de théâtre
(lay-p'tee joūr-nō = *the small journals*). — A Paris, ces
journaux remplacent (rāng-plās = *take the place of*) le
programme qui est distribué (dīs-tree-bü-ay = *distributed*)
en Amérique par l'administration (lād-mēē-nīs-trā-zyong
= *administration*) du théâtre (tay-āh-tr). — Combien ce
journal? Vingt centimes (sāng-tēēm).

1) The best French theatre in Paris, or rather in France.

Words.

La Ville (vêél).

Une rue pavée (*pāh-vay*), a paved street.

traverser, to cross.

passer de l'autre côté, to cross over; to go to the other side.

le trottoir (*trot-t'woār*), the foot-path.

le coin (*kō-āing*) de rue, the street corner,

au bout de la rue (*oh bou dē lā rū*), at the end of the street.

tout droit (*toū droāh*), straight ahead!

l'ambassade (*lāng-bās-sāhd*), the embassy.

la police (*pō-lēēs*), the police.

un sergent de ville (*ser-jāng dē vēél*), a police officer.

le gaz, the gas.

un réverbère, a street-lamp.

une voiture (*voāh-tūr*), a carriage.

une voiture de remise, } livery-coach; fly;
un remise, } hackney-coach.
(*rē-mēēze*)

le pont (*pong*), the bridge.

The Town.

la deuxième à droite (*deū-zyēhm*), second turning to the right.

un passage (*pāh-sāge*), a thoroughfare.

une place (*plāhs*),
un square (pronounced in the English way), } a square.

l'édifice (*lay-dē-fēēs*), the building.

un monument (*moh-nū-māng*), a monument.

une église (*ay-glēēze*), a church.

un palais (*pāh-lay*), a palace.

l'hôtel de ville, the Town-hall; City-hall.

le cocher (*kōh-shay*), the cabman.

une course, a tour; drive.

à l'heure, by the hour.

à la course, by the mile.

le pourboire (*pour-b'woār*), a tip.

une station de fiacres (*ūn stā-syong de fēē-ākr*), a cab-stand.

un omnibus (*būs*), an omnibus.

l'intérieur est complet (*laing-tayr-yeūr ay cong-play*), full inside.

The Meisterschaft-System,

FRENCH.

PART IX.

IX.

(Continuation.)

1.

1. At whose place did you find the new address of Mr. B. who lived 'n Bank Street two months ago ?
2. Ask the bookseller on your way (*en passant*), when he will send me the Italian book which I bought a fortnight ago. (*Literally : fifteen days ago [il y a quinze jours].*)
3. Are you going to the bank ? No, sir, I am not going there (*y*).
4. Do you think of it (*y*) ? Yes, I am thinking thereof (*y*).
5. Go there !
6. Think of (*or* reflect about) it (*y*).
7. Drive me (*or* lead me) there.
8. There are not more than (*or* not above) two *or* three persons there.
9. There is no longer (*no-plus*) any one there.
10. I could not tell you whether (*si*) it is more than three months since (*quo*) Mrs. D. has left here (*or* has gone from here).
11. Is it longer than (*plus de*) two days since you did not see him ?

IX.

(Continuation.)

1.

1. Chez qui avez-vous trouvé la nouvelle adresse de monsieur B. qui demeurerait rue de la Banque, il y a deux mois (*mö-syeüh bay kēē dē-meū-ray rü d' lā bānk ēēl yāh deū m'woāh*).
2. Demandez en passant (*āng pā-sāng*) au libraire, quand il m'enverra¹ (*kāng tēēl māng-vēr-rā*) le livre italien (*tē-tā-lyaing*) que j'ai acheté il y a quinze jours.
3. Allez-vous à la banque? Non monsieur, je n'y vais pas (*jē nēē vay pāh*).
4. Y pensez-vous? Oui, j'y pense (*jēē pāngs*).
5. Allez-y! [For rules on *y*, see page 204 rules on *en*.]
6. Réfléchissez-y (*ray-flay-shīs-say-zēē*)!
7. Conduisez-y-moi (*Or better: Conduisez-moi là*)
8. Il n'y a pas plus de deux ou trois personnes (*ēēl n'yāh pāh plü dē deū zoū troāh pēr-sōn*).
9. Il n'y a plus personne.
10. Je ne pourrais vous dire s'il y a plus de trois mois que madame D. est partie d'ici (*kē mā-dām day ay pār-tēē dēē-sēē*).
11. Y a-t-il plus de deux jours que vous ne l'avez vu? [After *il y a* the second negation *pas* is left out when the *perfect tense* follows.]

12. Is it a long time (*longtemps*) since you received news from your brother?
13. Yes, it is quite a long time (*fort longtemps*) since he wrote us. [The French say: Since he has *not* written to us.]
14. There is no one there.
15. There are a great many people (*beaucoup de monde*) there.
16. There is a pretty large number of people there.
17. Is there any room (*de la place*)? No, sir, this compartment is full.
18. What is the matter?
19. It's an age since we saw you. (*Literally*: since one did not see you.)
20. We left a week ago. (*Literally*: eight days ago.)

2.

21. The matter presents two sides; *or*, There are two sides to this affair. (*Literally*: There is something in favor [*pour*], and something against it [*contre*])
22. Many thanks. (*Literally*: I thank you very much.)
23. Don't mention it, pray. (*Or*: You are very welcome.)
24. I beg your pardon, sir.

12. Y a-t-il longtemps que vous avez reçu des nouvelles de monsieur votre frère (*yāh-tēel long-tāng kě vou zā-vēh rě-sū day nou-vēll dē mō-syeūh vōt frair*)?
13. Oui, il y a fort longtemps qu'il ne nous a écrit (*ēel yāh fōr long-tāng kēel nē nou zāh ay-kreē*).
14. Il n'y a personne.
15. Il y a beaucoup de monde (*bō-koū dē mongd*). [*Monde* means literally *world*.]
16. Il y a passablement de monde (*pā-sāh-blě-māng dē mongd*).
17. Y a-t-il de la place (*plāhs*)? Non monsieur, ce compartiment est (au) complet (*kong-play*).
18. Qu'y a-t-il donc (*kēē-ā-tēel dong*)?
19. Il y a un siècle (*syay-kl'*) qu'on (*kong*) ne vous a vu. [*Siècle* means literally *a century*.]
20. { Il y a huit jours que nous sommes partis (*pār-tēē*).
Nous sommes partis il y a huit jours (*ēel yāh h'wēēt jōūr*).

2.

21. Il y a du pour et du contre (*ēel yāh dū poūr ay dū cong-tr*).
22. Je vous remercie beaucoup. [*Très* is never used with verbs, but only with adjectives and adverbs.]
23. { Il n'y a pas de quoi (*ēel nēē-āh pāh dē k'wōāh*).
Pas de quoi (*pāh de k'wōāh*). [*Standing phrases*.]
24. { Je vous demande pardon (*pār-dong*), monsieur.
Pardon (or mille pardons [*mēel pār-dong*]), monsieur.

25. Please don't apologize ; *or*, It's of no consequence ; don't mention it.
26. One ticket, second-class, Paris!
27. There is no second-class ; this is an express-train.
(*Literally* : There is not of it [*en*] ; this is an express.)
28. There are only first-class tickets sold.
29. What is the fare first-class? (*Literally* : How much the first-class ?)
30. { Is there any connection (*correspondance*)?
{ Do these trains connect (*correspondent*)?
31. Please go into the waiting-room. I'll join (*rejoindrai*) you there in (*dans*) two minutes.
32. Do not enter (*or* don't let us go) into this compartment ; there are two small children in it.
33. You are right ; they are not very delightful company on a journey. (*Literally* : That is not a very agreeable company in [*en*] journey.)
34. Have you anything to declare (*i.e.* at the custom-house) ?
35. You must open your trunk.
36. Here is the key.
37. What have you (*literally* : What is there) in this portmanteau ?
38. Undo (*défaites*) these straps (*courroies*), if you please.

25. { Il n'y a pas de mal, monsieur (*ēēl nēē-āh pāh dē māhl mō-syeūh*).
 { Pas de mal, monsieur.

26. Une seconde, Paris (*ūn sē-congd, pā-rēē*).

27. Il n'y a pas ; c'est un express (*ēēl nēē ān nāh pāh ; say teūng nēx-pway*). [If *y* and *en* happen to be used in one sentence, *y* precedes *en*.]

28. Il n'y a que des premières (*ēēl nēē āh kē day prē-myair*).

29. Combien les premières (*kong-byaing lay prē-myair*) ?

30. { Y a-t-il correspondance (*cor-rēs-pong-dāngs*) ?
 { Est-ce que ces trains correspondent (*ay kē say traing cor-rēs-pong*) ?

31. Veuillez passer à la salle d'attente. Je vous y rejoindrai (*jē voū sēē rē-joāing-dray*) dans deux minutes (*mēē-nūt*).

32. N'entrez pas dans ce compartiment ; il y a deux petits enfants (*nāng-trēh pāh dāng cē cong-pār-tēē-māng ; ēēl yāh deū p'tēē zāng-fāng*).

33. Vous avez raison ; ce n'est pas une compagnie bien agréable en voyage (*voū zāh-vēh ray-song ; cē nay pāh zūn cong-pān-yēē byaing ā-gray-āhbl āng voāh-yāsh*.)

34. N'avez-vous rien (*rēē-āing*) à déclarer ?

35. Il faut ouvrir votre malle (*ēēl fōh toū-vrēēr vōt māhl*).

36. Voici la clef (*klay*).

37. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a dans ce sac de voyage (*kays kēēl yāh dāng cē sác dē voāh-yāsh*) ?

38. Défaites ces courroies (*day-fate say koūr-roāh*), s'il vous plait.

39. Ah, all these objects have been in use (or worn [*sont usagés*]).
40. Conductor, two places for Lyons, if you please!
41. There are none (= no more) in these carriages; further down. (*Literally*: Descend of the train.)
42. Any room, gentlemen? (*Literally*: Is there a seat here?)
43. No, sir, every seat is occupied (= we are full [*au complet*]).
44. I beg your pardon, there is one.
45. Has there anything come for me, waiter? (*Literally*: Is there anything? &c.)
46. I am not well (*souffrant* or *indisposé*). Is there an English druggist (= drugshop [*pharmacie*]) near (*près de*) the hotel?
47. Yes, sir, there is an English druggist (*pharmacien*) at the foot (*au bout*, of the street.
48. Are there (*y a-t-il*) any letters addressed to (*au nom de*) Mr. B.?
49. My name is spelled (*s'écrit*)....
50. Is it far from here (*loin d'ici*) to the Champs-Élysées?
51. This street does not lead (*conduit*) to it at all (*point du tout*).
52. You are going in the opposite direction (*à l'opposé*).

39. Ah, tous ces objets sont usagés (*taū say zob-jay song tü-zā-jay*).
40. Conducteur (*kong-düc-teūr*), deux places pour Lyon (*plāhs poūr lēe-ong*), s'il vous plaît
41. Il n'y en a plus dans ces wagons (*ēēl nēē ān nāh plü dāng cē vā-gong*), messieurs; descendez du train (*m'syeūh; dē-sāng-dēh dü traing*).
42. Y a-t-il encore une place (*āng-cōr rün plāhs*), messieurs?
43. Non monsieur, nous sommes au complet (*oh cong-play*).
44. Je vous demande pardon (*pār-dong*), il y en a encore une (*ēēl yāh nāh āng-cōr rün*).
45. Y a-t-il quelque chose (*ēē-āh-tēēl kēl-kē shōhs*) pour moi, garçon.
46. Je suis souffrant (*sou-frāng*) (or indisposé [*aing-dispo-zay*]). Est-ce qu'il y a une pharmacie anglaise près de l'hôtel (*ays kēēl yāh ün fār-māh-sēē āng-layze pray dē lō-tēēl*).
47. Oui monsieur, il y a un pharmacien (*phār-mā-syaing*) anglais au bout (*oh boū*) de la rue.
48. Y a-t-il des lettres au nom de monsieur B. (*day lētr' oh nong, dē mō-syeūh bay*) ?
49. Mon nom s'écrit (*mong nong say-krēē*).....
50. Y a-t-il encore loin d'ici aux Champs-Élysées (*āng-kor lō-aing dēē-sēē oh shāng-zay-lēē-zēh*) ?
51. Cette rue n'y conduit point du tout (*nēē cong-d'wēē pō-aing dü toū*).
52. { Vous êtes à l'opposé.
 Vous y tournez le dos (*vou zēē toūr-nēh lē dōh = you turn your back to it*).

53. What can I do for you? (*Literally*: What is there for your service)?
54. Take care, sir (*prenez garde, monsieur*); there are two steps down there (*là-bas*).
55. There were a great many people (*beaucoup de monde*) at the concert.
56. There are already (*déjà*) some people there.
57. We have company (*du monde*) to dinner to-day.
58. There was an enormous crowd (*un monde fou*) there.
59. It's always crowded here (= There is always crowd [*foule*] here).
60. Is there salt enough on it?
61. What is the news in the papers (= What is there *of* news in the papers)?
62. I have not yet read (*lu*) to-day's paper.
63. How do you like (*trouvez-vous*) Mr. B.'s new piece?
64. There are some very nice verses (*vers*) in it, but — to speak frankly — the development (*dénoûment*) is forced (*forcé*).
65. Could you not call your employer (*votre patron*)?
66. He is not in, sir; he is gone out on (*pour*) business.
67. Look at this hat (*or bonnet*), please. It is the latest thing out (*c'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus nouveau*).
68. I cannot give it you at a cheaper price (*à moins*). I do not gain (*or make = gagne*) a centime by it.

53. Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service (*kēē-āh-tēēl pouŕ vol' sēr-vēēs*) ?
54. Prenez garde, monsieur ; il y a encore deux marches là-bas (*ēēl yāh āng-kor deū mārsh lā-bāh*).
55. Il y avait beaucoup de monde au concert (*ēēl yā-vay boh-koū dē mongd'ōh cong-sair*).
56. Il y a déjà du monde (*day-jāh dü mongd*).
57. Nous avons aujourd'hui du monde à dîner (*āh dēē-nēh*).
58. Il y avait un monde fou [*fou* means literally *foolish*].
59. Il y a toujours foule ici (*toū-jouŕ fōōl ēē-sēē*).
60. Y a-t-il assez de sel (*ā-say dē sēl*) ?
61. Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau dans les journaux (*kēē-āh-tēēl dē nou-vōh dāng lay jouŕ-noh*) ?
62. Je n'ai pas encore lu le journal d'aujourd'hui [*lu* is the past participle of *lire*, to read].
63. Comment trouvez-vous la nouvelle pièce de monsieur B. (*com-māng trou-vēh voū lāh nou-vēll pee-āys dē mō-syeūh bay*) ?
64. Il y a de très-beaux vers, mais — à parler franchement — le dénoûment (*dē tray bōh vayr, may āh pār-lēh frāng-sh'māng lē day-nou-māng*) est forcé.
65. Ne pourriez-vous pas appeler votre patron (*vōt pā-trong*) ?
66. Il n'y est pas, monsieur ; il est sorti pour affaires.
67. Regardez ce chapeau, s'il vous plaît. C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus nouveau (*say toū s'keēl yāh dē plū nou-vōh*).
68. Je ne puis vous le donner à moins. Je n'y gagne pas un centime (*gān-yē pāh zcūng sāng-tēēm*).

69. Do you not need any gloves, sir ?
70. Yes, I need two pairs.
71. { This pair is too large for me.
 { This pair is too narrow for me.
72. { They are too short in the fingers (*les doigts*).
 { They are too long in the fingers.
73. Please pass them to me ; I'll put a little powder (*poudre*) in them.
74. Were there many people at the theatre yesterday ?
75. The parquette (*le parterre*) was full (*plein*), but there was hardly any one in the boxes-(*les loges*).
76. Had you a good seat ? (*Literally* : Were you well seated ?)
77. Yes, I was near the orchestra.
78. The orchestra-stalls (*les fauteuils d'orchestre*) are the best seats for gentlemen.
79. Ladies of fashion (*les dames comme il faut*) go to the boxes of the first and second tier only (*literally* : go only to the first and second boxes).
80. Did you go to the soirée of Mrs. L. on Monday ?
81. Yes, why didn't you come there ?
82. I was at the theatre.
83. What did they play (= give) ?
84. They performed (= gave) Iphigenia, with a comedy (*un vaudeville*) afterwards (= at the end, *à la fin*) ; but I went to see the tragedy only.

69. Ne vous faut-il pas de gants, monsieur ?
70. Oui, il m'en faut deux paires (*ēēl māng fōh deū pair*).
71. } Cette paire m'est trop large (*may trōh lārje*).
 } Cette paire m'est trop étroite (*trōh ay-trōāht*).
72. } Les doigts (*d'wō-āh*) en sont trop courts (*trōh cōūr*).
 } Les doigts (*d'wō-āh*) en sont trop longs.
73. Passez-les-moi, s'il vous plaît ; j'y mettrai un peu de poudre (*jēē mē-tray eūng peū dē pou-dr*).
74. Y avait-il beaucoup de monde hier au spectacle (*ēē-ayr oh spec-tākl*).
75. Le parterre était plein (*plaing*), mais il n'y avait presque (*prēsk*) personne dans les loges (*loje*).
76. Etiez-vous bien placé (*byaing plāh-say*) ?
77. Oui, j'étais près de l'orchestre (*pray dē lōr-shēs-tr*).
78. Pour les hommes, les fauteuils d'orchestre sont les meilleures places (*poūr lay zōm lay fō-teū-yē dor-shēs-tr song lay mē-yeūr plāhs*).
79. Les dames comme il faut ne vont qu'aux (*nē vong kōh*) premières ou aux secondes loges.
80. Est-ce que vous êtes allé (*ays-kē voū zayt zāh-lay*) à la soirée de madame L., lundi (*leūng-dēē*) ?
81. Oui, pourquoi n'y êtes-vous donc pas venu (*nēē ayt voū dong pāh vē-nū*) ?
82. J'ai été au spectacle.
83. Qu'est-ce qu'on donnait (*kays kong don-nay*) ?
84. On a donné Iphigénie (*ēē-fēē-jay-nēē*), avec un vaudeville à la fin (*eūng vohd'-vee-yē āh lā faing*), mais je n'y suis allé que pour voir la tragédie (*may jē nēē sūēē zāh-lay kē poūr voār lā trā-jay-dēē*).

8.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

A.

Possessive Adjectives.

The following adjectives are mostly placed under the head of pronouns; as, however, they may be more properly termed *adjectives*, I have thought it better to insert them in this place.

SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
1. mon (<i>mong</i>),	ma (<i>māh</i>),
2. ton (<i>tong</i>)	ta (<i>tāh</i>),
3. son (<i>song</i>)	sa (<i>sāh</i>),

PLURAL.

<i>Both genders.</i>
mes (<i>may</i>), my.
tes (<i>tay</i>), thy.
ses (<i>say</i>), his, her, or its.

SINGULAR.

Masc. and Fem.

1. notre (*ndt'*),
2. votre (*vd't'*),
3. leur (*leūr*),

PLURAL.

<i>Both genders.</i>
nos (<i>nd</i>), our.
vos (<i>vd</i>), your.
leurs (<i>leūr</i>), their.

These pronominal adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify; as:

- mon tableau (*tā-blō*), my picture.
- ma clef (*klay*), my key.
- mes enfants (*may zāng-fāng*), my children.
- son portrait (*por-tray*), his (*or her*) portrait.
- ses maisons (*may-song*) his (*or her*) houses.

notre laval^o (*lā-vā-bō*), our washstand.
 nos serviettes (*sēr-vyéł*), our towels.
 leur banquier (*bānk-yēh*), their banker.
 leurs acquits (*xā-kēē*), their receipts.

Observations.

1. The masculine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son*, and **not** *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, are used before nouns of the feminine gender beginning with a vowel or unaspirated *h*, for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the meeting of two vowels; as:

*mon*_opinion (*mon-no-pēē-nyong*), (f.) my opinion.
*ton*_humeur (*ton nū-meūr*), (f.) thy temper.
*son*_histoire (*son nīs-twoār*), (f.) his (or her) history.

2. The pronominal adjectives *notre*, our, and *votre*, your, have no circumflex accent (to distinguish them from the possessive pronouns *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, see next Part), and are pronounced *short*, almost as if written *not'*, *voit'*.

Demonstrative Adjectives.

The Demonstrative Adjective, sometimes called a demonstrative pronoun, is thus declined:

Singular.		Plural.	
Masc. ce	} this or that.	Masc.	} ces, these or those.
Fem. cette		Fem.	

The demonstrative adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number; as:

ce cheval (<i>cē shē-vāhl</i>),	this horse.
cette maison (<i>cēt may-zong</i>),	this house.
ces enfants (<i>say xāng-fāng</i>),	these children.

The form *cet* is employed for the masculine instead of *ce*, when preceding a noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*; as:

cet_homme (<i>cĕ lôm</i>),	this man.
cet_arbre (<i>cĕ tārbr</i>),	this tree.
cet_agent (<i>cĕ tãh-jãng</i>),	this agent.

Relative, Interrogative, and Admirative Adjectives.

The Relative, Interrogative, and Admirative Adjective *quel* is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i> quel (<i>kĕl</i>),	} which or what.	<i>Masc.</i> quels	} which or what.
<i>Fem.</i> quelle (<i>kĕl</i>),		<i>Fem.</i> quelles	

It agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies; as:

- quel_homme? (!) (*kĕl lôm*) which man? or what a man!
 quelle femme? (!) (*kĕl fãmm*), which woman? or what a woman!
 quels chevaux (*shĕ-vôh*)? (!) which horses? or what horses!
 quelles fleurs (*fleür*)? (!) which flowers? or what flowers!

B.

Of Passive Verbs.

Passive verbs are formed, in French as in English, by joining the Participle past of an active verb to the auxiliary verb to be, *être*; for instance: of the verb *donner*, the passive voice is *être donné*, to be given; of *finir*, *être fini*, to be finished; of *vendre*, *être vendu*, to be

sold, &c. It is to be observed that in French the *Participle past* varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun it relates to and which stands as the subject of the sentence.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Être loué, to be praised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Je suis loué (*or louée, fem.*), I am praised,
 tu es loué (*or louée, fem.*), thou art praised,
 il est loué, he is praised,
 elle est louée, she is praised,
 nous sommes loués (*or louées, fem.*), we are praised
 vous êtes loués (*or louées, fem.*) you are praised,
 ils sont loués, } they are praised.
 elles sont louées, }

Imperfect.

J'étais loué (*or louée, fem.*), I was praised,
 tu étais loué (*or louée, fem.*), &c.
 il était loué, &c.
 elle était louée, &c.

Preterite.

Je fus loué *or* louée, I was praised, &c.

1st Future.

Je serai loué *or* louée, I shall be praised, &c.

1st Conditional.

Je serais loué *or* louée, I should be praised, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sois loué *or* louée, be praised,
soyons loués *or* louées, let us be praised,
soyez loués *or* louées, be praised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je sois loué *or* louée, that I (may) be praised, &c.

Imperfect.

Que je fusse loué *or* louée, that I (might) be praised, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

Étant loué *or* louée, being praised.

COMPOUND TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Avoir été loué, louée, to have been praised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

J'ai été loué, louée, I have been praised,
tu as été loué, louée, thou hast been praised, &c.

Pluperfect.

J'avais été loué, louée, I had been praised, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

J'eus été loué, louée, I had been praised, &c.

2d Future.

J'aurai été loué, louée, I shall have been praised, &c.

2d Conditional.

J'aurais été loué, louée, } I should *or* I would have been
 J'eusse été louée, louée, } praised, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Que j'aie été loué, louée, that I (may) have been praised,
 &c.

Pluperfect.

Que j'eusse été loué, louée, that I (might) have been
 praised.

PARTICIPLE.

Past. Ayant été loué, louée, having been praised.

Remarks :

The English preposition *by*, after the passive voice must be rendered by *de*, when the verb denotes a *senti-ment or an inward act of soul*, and by *par*, when it expresses an *outward action*, which by the *by* is mostly the case.

Ex. :

He is esteemed by everybody.

Il est estimé *de* tout le monde.

This book is written by him.

Ce livre est écrit *par* lui.

C.

Neuter or Intransitive Verbs.

The *neuter verbs* admit no *direct object*, as *aller*, to go, *arriver*, to arrive, &c.

Among the neuter verbs there are some which take *être* in the compound tenses instead of *avoir*. Ex.: *être arrivé*, to have arrived. These are conjugated as follows:

<i>Pres.</i>	J'arrive.	<i>Fut.</i>	J'arriverai.
<i>Imperf.</i>	J'arrivais.	<i>Cond.</i>	J'arriverais.
<i>Pret.</i>	J'arrivai.		

Perfect.

Je *suis* arrivé *or* arrivée, I have (am) arrived.
tu es arrivé *or* arrivée, &c.

Pluperfect.

J'étais arrivé *or* arrivée, I had arrived, &c.

2d Future.

Je serai arrivé *or* arrivée, I shall have (be) arrived, &c.

2d Conditional.

Je serais arrivé *or* arrivée, I should have arrived, &c.

The most important verbs of this class which are conjugated with *être* are:

- être allé, to have gone.
- être sorti, to have gone out.
- être tombé, to have fallen.
- être venu, to have come.
- être resté, to have remained.

Translate the following

Exercises

into English and then again into French:

1. *To ask for a street.*

Monsieur, pourriez-vous me faire le plaisir de m'indiquer (maing-dēē-kēh = *to direct me*) la rue de Riche-lieu (rēē-shě-lyeū)?—Oui monsieur; prenez la première à droite (*to the right*), et ensuite (āng-s'wēēt = *then*) la seconde à gauche (gōsh = *to the left*). — Je vous remercie bien, monsieur. — Quel est, s'il vous plaît, le chemin (shě-maing = *way*) pour aller aux boulevards?—Suivez (s'wēē-vēh = *follow*) cette rue, elle va vous y (*thereto*) conduire (kong-d'wēēr = *lead; bring*).—Merci bien.—Eh bien, vous ne vous êtes pas perdu (*lost*)?—Non, mais j'ai été obligé de demander mon chemin trois fois (foāh = *three times*).

2. *Terms used during a call.*

Tiens (*ah! why!*), comment ça va-t-il donc? Je ne m'attendais pas (*I did not expect*) à avoir le plaisir de vous voir ce matin. Je vous croyais encore à la campagne. Depuis quand êtes-vous donc revenu? — Voilà que j'arrive (jā-rēēv); je n'ai pas encore été à la maison.—Avez-vous déjeuné (day-jeū-nay)? — Non, pas encore. — Eh bien, venez donc avec moi, nous déjeunerons ensemble (day-jeū-ně-rong zāng-sāng-bl) au Palais Royal (roā-yāhl).

3.

1) Good morning, my dear friend. How are you? I am very glad to see you. — 2) When did you arrive in Paris and where do you stay? — 3) How is your father? Is he any better (*mieux*)? — 4) How have you been since I had the pleasure to see you?—Thank you, I have been very well indeed; but my wife has been quite ill. — 5) I am very sorry to hear you say so. Why, what is the matter with her? — 6) She was very ill last winter, but she is now out of danger. — 7) The egoist (*l'égoïste*) is loved by no one. — 8) The Arabians (*les Arabes*) invented (*inventer*) the numbers (*les chiffres*). — 9) The numbers have been invented by the Arabians. — 10) The emperor (*l'empereur*) was assassinated in the midst (*au milieu*) of his people (*ses gens*). — 11) The birth (*la naissance*) of Christ (*Christ*) was announced by a star (*une étoile*). — 12) The earth (*la terre*) was refreshed (*rafraichie*) by the rain (*la pluie*). — 13) Happy the people which is governed by wise (*sages*) laws (*lois*). — 14) We were astonished (*étonnés*) by his wisdom (*la sagesse*).

4.

BRUXELLES, October 10th, 1881.

Messrs. TOUSSAINT, LA RUE & C^{ie}., Rouen.

Gentlemen :

Would you have the kindness to give us some information about (*sur*) the firm in B. the name of which you will find at the foot of this letter (= of which [*dont*] you

will find the name at the foot {*au-dessous*}). This house possesses a great reputation for (*dè*) integrity (*moralité*), and as I am going to do a pretty heavy (*assez importante*) business with it, I am desirous (*je désire*) to know if this is true (*mérite*).

I thank you in advance (*d'avance* = *dā-vāngs*) for (*de*) the trouble you are going to havé (= you will take, *vous prendrez*), and beg you will count (*compter*) on my gratitude (*ma reconnaissance*) and discretion.

Very respectfully yours.

Translate the following

Exercise

into French:

1) Are you going to Paris? — Do you go as far as (*jusqu'à* = *jūs-kāh*) Paris? — Then I shall have the pleasure of your society (*société* = *so-syēh-tay*), for I am going there too (*aussi* = *ō-sēē*). — 2) I am very glad of it (*en*). — It is very disagreeable (*désagréable* = *day-zāh-gray-ābl*) to travel (*voyager*) quite alone (*seul* = *seül*). — But when (*quand*) one is in society (*en compagnie*) one talks, chats (*cause*) and the time passes (*se passe*). — 3) When (*quand*) do you think we shall arrive in Paris? — I hope we shall arrive this afternoon (*cet après-midi*). — 4) Here we are at the first station. — How long (*combien de temps*) are we going to stop (*rester*) here? — We shall stop here (*y*) but (*ne-que*) three minutes. — There we are

off (*partis*) again (*de nouveau*). — What is that (*qu'est-ce-que*) I see in front of us (= before us, *devant nous*)? — That's a tunnel (*un tunnel* = tün-něl). — We are in darkness (*l'obscurité* = lob-scü-rēē-tay). — Here is another station. Are we going to stop (*s'arrêter*) there? — Yes, we are going to stop there five minutes. — Where are we now? — We are passing over (*sur*) a viaduct (*un viaduc* = vēē-āh-dūc). — We shall be soon at the end (*au terme*) of our journey. — This is the last station. — Here we are at the depot. — Let us look for (= let us go to seek, *allons chercher*) our luggage. — Let us make haste; there is a great crowd of people here.

Words.

Poste ; Télégraphie.

la grande poste (*lāh grāng pōst*),
The General Post-Office.
le bureau de poste (*bū-ro dē pōst*),
the post-office.
le facteur (*fāc-teūr*), the postman
la boîte (*b'woāt*) (aux lettres),
the letter-box.
mettre une lettre à la poste, to
post a letter.
une lettre affranchie (*d-frāng-
shēē*), a prepaid letter.
une lettre chargée (*shār-jay*), a
registered letter.
une lettre recommandée (*rē-cō-
māng-day*), a registered letter.

Post ; Telegraph.

le porte, the postage.
un timbre poste (*taing-br'-pōst*),
a postage-stamp.
le papier à lettres (*pāp-yēh āh lēt*),
note-paper.
une feuille (*feū-yē*), a sheet.
une enveloppe (*āng-vē-lop*), an
envelope.
le bureau télégraphique (*tay lay-
grā-fēēk*), the telegraph-office.
le télégramme, the telegram.
une dépêche (*day-paysk*), a dis-
patch.
télégraphier (*tay-lay-grā-fyēk*), to
dispatch.
le câble, the cable.

The Meisterschaft-System,

FRENCH.

PART X.

X.

(Continuation.)

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

(No. VI.)

1.

Of Dress and Dressing.

1. Hasten to dress yourself (*de vous habiller*).
2. I shall not be long in dressing (*m'habiller*).
3. What! you are not yet dressed? It is a quarter to ten.
4. I was very tired (*fatigué*) this morning.
5. I got up (*or* I rose = *je me suis levé*) late; I shall soon (*bientôt*) be ready.
6. Give me my shirt, stockings, garters, shoes, and trousers.
7. Wash (*lavez-vous*) your (= the) hands and face (*le visage*).
8. My hands are very dirty (*sales*).
9. Why did you not wash your hands?
10. Wipe (*essuyez*) your hands with this towel (*cette serviette*).

X.

(Continuation.)

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

(No. VI.)

1.

De l'habillement (*de lā-bēē-yē-māng*).

1. Dépêchez-vous de vous habiller (*day-pay-shay vou dē vou-zā-bēē-yēh*).
2. Je ne serai pas longtemps à m'habiller (*āh mā-bēē-yēh*).
3. Comment! vous n'êtes pas encore habillé? Il est dix heures moins un quart (*dēē-zeūr mō-aiing zeūng kār*).
4. J'étais bien fatigué (*fā-tēē-gay*) ce matin.
5. Je me suis levé tard (*tār*); je vais être bientôt prêt (*jē vay zay-tr byaiing-tōh pray*).
6. Donnez-moi ma chemise, mes bas, mes jarretières, mes souliers et mon pantalon (*may bāh, may jā-rē-tyair, may sou-lyēh ay mong pāng-tā-long*).
7. Lavez-vous les mains et le visage (*lay maing ay lē vēē-zājē*).
8. Mes mains sont très-sales (*may maing song tray sāhl*).
9. Pourquoi ne vous êtes-vous pas lavé les mains (*ne vou zayt vou pāh lā-vay lay maing*)?
10. Essuyez vos mains avec cette serviette (*ēs-s'wēē-yēh voh maing ā-vēk sēt sēr-vyēt*).

11. Clean (*décrottez*) my boots and brush my clothes, please.
12. Did you black (*ciré*) my shoes?
13. Have this coat mended (*raccommoder*).
14. Send me a tailor who understands (*se charge de*) repairing (*réparations*); there are some buttons off (= it wants some buttons, *il manque quelques boutons à*) this waistcoat.

15. This waistcoat is torn (*déchiré*).
16. There! I have torn my dress!
17. Oh, that's only a slight tear (*un petit accroc*); I am going to put a stitch (*faire un point*) into it.

18. That will not be seen.

19. Put on (*mettez*) this dress.
20. Wait (*attendez*) a moment; I have only to put on my necktie.
21. Put on your hat (*or bonnet*).
22. I am putting (*je mets*) my stockings on.

23. She dresses herself (*elle se met*) with a great deal of taste.
24. Take off (*ôtez*) your hat (*or bonnet*).
25. Button up (*boutonnez*) your dress.
26. A buttonhole (*une boutonnière*) of this waistcoat is torn out (*défaite*).
27. This dress (*or coat*) is very becoming to you.

11. Décrottez mes bottes et brossez mes habits, s'il vous plaît (*may zā-bēē*).
12. Avez-vous ciré mes souliers (*sēē-ray may sou-lyēh*) ?
13. Faites raccommoder cet habit (*sē tā-bēē*).
14. Envoyez-moi donc un tailleur qui se charge de réparations; il manque quelques boutons à ce gilet (*āng-voāh-yēh m'woāh dong eūng tā-yeūr kēē sē shārje dē ray-pā-rā-syong; ēēl mānk kēl kē boū-tong āh sē jēē-lay*).
15. Ce gilet est déchiré (*day-shēē-ray*).
16. Voilà que je déchire ma robe (*kē jē day-shēēr mā robe*).
17. Ce n'est qu'un petit accroc; je vais vous y faire un point (*sē nay keūng p'tēē tā-kroc, jē vay voū zēē fair eūng pō-aing*).
18. Ça ne se verra pas (*sā nē sē ver-rā pāh* [verra is the irregular future of *voir*, to see]).
19. Mettez cet habit (*sē tā-bēē*).
20. Attendez un moment (*āt-tāng-day zeūng mō-māng*); je n'ai plus que ma cravate à mettre.
21. Mettez votre chapeau (*vōt shā-pōh*).
22. Je mets mes bas (*jē may may bāh*). [*Je mets* is the irregular present of *mettre*].
23. Elle se met avec beaucoup de goût (*ēll sē may tā-vēk bōh-kou dē goū*).
24. Otez votre chapeau.
25. Boutonnez votre habit (*vōt rā-bēē*).
26. Une boutonnière de ce gilet est défaite (*bōūtōn-nyair dē sē jēē-lay ay day-fait*).
27. Cet habit vous va fort bien (*voū vāh fōr byaing*).

28. Which shoemaker works for you (*vous chausse* or *botte*) at present (*à présent*)?
29. These boots are too tight for me (= press me, *me gênent* or *serrent*).
30. Will you try these boots?
31. I cannot put (*or get*) them on.
32. Stretch your leg out (*allongez votre jambe*), please.
33. All right; now put your foot on the ground (*par terre*).
34. They are too tight on the instep (*du coude-pied*).
35. You know (*vous savez*) the first time one tries on (*on met*) a pair of boots, the foot feels always a little tight (*on a toujours le pied un peu gêné*).
36. Yes, but they squeeze me (*elles me serrent*) too hard; I cannot walk with them (*marcher avec*).
37. I prefer (*j'aime mieux*) you to make me another pair. [After *aimer mieux* the Subjunctive has to follow.]
38. Undress yourself.
39. Take off your dress (*or coat*).
40. I must take off my dress.
41. Undress (*déshabillez*) this child.
42. You are not yet half (*à moitié*) undressed.
43. Hasten to undress yourself.
44. He is taking his boots off.
45. I shall not be long undressing.

28. { Quel cordonnier vous chausse à présent (*kěl cōr-don-nyēh vou shōss āh pray-zāng*) ?
 { Quel bottier vous botte maintenant (*maing-tě-nāng*) ?
29. Ces bottes me gênent (*jane* or *serrent [sēr]*) beaucoup.
30. Voulez-vous essayer ces bottines (*sě-say-yēh say bōt-tēn*) ?
31. Je ne peux pas les mettre.
32. Allongez votre jambe (*ā-long-jay vōt jāng*), s'il vous plait.
33. Bien, mettez le pied (*pyēh*) par terre à présent.
34. Elles me gênent (*jane*) du coude-pied (*coūd-pyēh*).
35. La première fois qu'on met des bottes, comme vous savez, on a toujours le pied un peu gêné (*lě pyēh cūng peū jay-nay*).
36. Oui, mais elles me serrent trop (*sēr trōh*), je ne peux pas marcher avec (*mār-shay ā-vek*).
37. J'aime mieux (*m'yeū*) que vous m'en fassiez (*māng fās-yēh*) une autre paire.
38. Déshabillez-vous (*day-zā-bēē-yēh vou*).
39. Otez votre habit.
40. Il faut que j'ôte mon habit (*ēēl fō kě jōht mon nā-bēē*).
41. Déshabillez cet enfant (*day-zā-bēē-yēh sě tāng-fāng*).
42. Vous n'êtes pas encore à moitié déshabillé (*āh m'wōā-tyēh day-zā-bēē-yēh*).
43. Dépêchez-vous (or *Hâtez-vous*) de vous déshabiller.
44. { Il tire (or Il ôte) ses bottes (*ēēl tēer [ōht] say bōt*).
 { Il se débotte.
45. Je ne serai pas longtemps à me déshabiller.

2.

46. Have you (got) a pin (*une épingle*)?
47. This bonnet (*or hat*) is very becoming (*vous coiffe*) to you. [*Of hats, bonnets, &c., the expression coiffer is used in the sense of to be becoming; but of dresses one says faire or aller.*] Compare phrase 27.
48. I dress my hair (*je me coiffe*) to suit my own taste.
49. This is a very fine hat, and it is quite fashionable (*or quite the style [à la mode]*).
50. The shape (*la forme*) is rather large (*un peu large*).
51. Are you done with your toilette? Is your toilette completed?
52. This dress is very becoming to you (*or suits you very well*).
53. This dress fits you beautifully (*vous serr, bien*) in the waist (*la taille*).
54. It is very well finished (*or made*).
55. She is not very (*tout-à-fait*) fashionably dressed (*habillée à la mode*).
56. I must go to this barber's (*or hairdresser's = coiffeur*).
57. To have your hair cut (*faire couper les cheveux*) or dressed (*faire coiffer*)?
58. I must have my hair cut.
59. He is shaving (*il se fait la barbe*).
60. Shave me, please.

2.

46. Avez-vous une épingle (*āh-vēh-voū zūn nay-pain-gl'*)?
47. Ce chapeau vous coiffe bien (*sě shā-pōh voū k'woāf byaing*).
48. Je me coiffe à ma façon (*or* à mon goût) (*jě mě k'woāf ah ma fā-song*).
49. C'est un chapeau qui est très-fin et très à la mode (*say teūng shā-pōh kēē ay tray faing ay tray zāh lāh mōde*).
50. La forme en est un peu large.
51. { Votre toilette est-elle finie (*vōt t'woā-lēt ay-tēll fēē-nēē*)?
Avez-vous achevé votre toilette (*zā-sh'vay vōt t'woā-lēt*)?
52. Cet habit vous va fort bien. (Compare phrase 47.)
53. Cet habit vous serre (*or* vous prend) bien la taille (*sē tā-bēē voū sērr [prāng] byaing lāh tā-yě*).
54. Il est très-bien fait.
55. Elle n'est pas habillée tout-à-fait à la mode (*ēll nay pāh zā-bēē-yēh toū-tā-fay āh lāh mode*).
56. Il faut que j'entre chez ce coiffeur (*kě jāng-tr' shay sě k'woā-feūr*).
57. Pour vous faire couper les cheveux, ou pour vous faire coiffer?
58. Il faut que je me fasse couper les cheveux (*coū-pēh lay shě-veū*.)
59. Il se fait la barbe.
60. Rasez-moi. — Veuillez me raser.

61. Take a seat (*asseyez-vous*¹⁾, please.
 62. Please raise (*levez*) your head a little.
 63. A little to this side, pray.
 64. Does the razor (*le rasoir*) hurt you (*vous fait-il mal*),
 sir?
 65. A little powder, sir?
 66. Please (*faites*).
 67. Curl the hair, sir?
 68. No, please. Comb it a little.
 69. Part my hair, please.
 70. Here you are, sir. Please pay at the office.

1) **Asseyez-vous**, *be seated*, is the imperative of the irregular verb *s'asseoir* (*sās-swoār*), to sit down. It is conjugated in the following manner:

Present.

Je m'assieds (*mās-syēh*).
 tu t'assieds (*tās-syēh*).
 il s'assied (*sās-syēh*).
 nous nous asseyons (*sās-say-yong*).
 vous vous asseyez (*sās-say-yēh*).
 ils s'asseient (*sās-say*).

Preterite.

Je m'assis (*mās-sēē*).
 tu t'assis (*tās-sēē*).
 il s'assit (*sās-sēē*).
 nous nous assîmes (*sās-sēēm*).
 vous vous assîtes (*sās-sēēt*).
 ils s'assirent (*sās-sēēr*).

Imperfect.

Je m'asseyais (*mās-say-yay*).
 tu t'asseyais (*tās-say-yay*).
 il s'asseyait (*sās-say-yay*).
 nous nous asseyions (*sās-say-yiong*).
 vous vous asseyiez (*sās-say-yiēh*).
 ils s'asseyaient (*sās-say-yay*).

Perfect.

Je me suis assis (*sās-sēē*).
 tu t'es assis (*sās-sēē*).
 il s'est assis (*tās-sēē*).
 nous nous sommes assis (*sās-sēē*).
 vous vous êtes assis (*sās-sēē*).
 ils se sont assis (*tās-sēē*).

Future.

Je m'assiérai or Je m'asseierai (*mās-sēē-ē-rēh* or *mās-sē-yē-rēh*).
 tu t'assiéras or tu t'asseieras.
 il s'assiéra or il s'asseiera.

61. Asseyez-vous¹ (*ās-sey-yēh*), s'il vous plaît.
62. Levez un peu la tête, s'il vous plaît (*lě-vēh zeüng peū lāh tayt*).
63. Un peu de ce côté-ci, je vous prie (*eüng peū dē sě co-tay-see, jě vou prēē*).
64. Le rasoir (*lě rāh-s'woār*) vous fait-il mal, monsieur?
65. Un peu de poudre de riz (*pōō-dr' d'rēē*), monsieur?
66. Faites (*or* Oui, s'il vous plaît).
67. Un coup² de fer, monsieur (*eüng cou d'fēr m'yeūh*)?
68. Oh non, je vous en prie. Un coup de brosse, s'il vous plaît (*jě vou zāng prēē; eüng cou dē bross, sēē vou play*).
69. Faites-moi la raie, s'il vous plaît.
70. Voilà, monsieur. Au comptoir³ s'il vous plaît (*ōh cong-t'woār sēē vou play*).

nous nous assiérons *or* nous nous asseierons.
vous vous assiérez *or* vous vous asseierez.
ils s'assièrent *or* ils s'asseieront.

Pres. Subj.

Que je m'asseie (*mās-sey*).
que tu t'asseies.
qu'il s'asseie.
que nous nous asseyions.
que vous vous asseyiez.
qu'ils asseient.

Imperative.

Assieds-toi (*ās-syēh twoāh*).
asseyons-nous (*ās-sē-yong nou*).
asseyez-vous (*ās-sē yēh vou*).

Participles.

s'asseyant (*sā-sē-yāng*).
assis (*ās-sēē*).

2) Le coup (*koū*) means literally the *blow, stroke, knock*, and is used almost as frequently as the verb *to fix* by Americans. Thus we say in French: *Un coup de peigne* (*eüng koū dē-pēn-yě*), s'il vous plaît, please comb my hair (*literally*: a stroke of the comb. *peigne*). *Un coup de brosse*, s'il vous plaît, please brush my hair (= a stroke of the brush, *brosse*).—Donnez un coup de balai à cette chambre (*donnēh zeüng koū d' bā-lay āh sēt shāng-br*), sweep this room, please (= give a stroke of the broom [*balai*] to this room), &c., &c.

3) All the money is received in French shaving-saloons and in most other mercantile establishments by the *dame du comptoir* (*dāhm dū cong-t'woār*), lady-cashier. One pays for shaving by saying: *Une barbe*; for hair-cutting by saying: *Une taille* or *Une coupe*.

3.

Terms of Regret.

1. I am sorry that....
2. I am very sorry for it.
3. I regret it exceedingly.
4. I am very sorry to....
5. With the best will (*la volonté*) in the world I could not do so.
6. I could not do so, even if (*quand même*) I should like to.
7. I am exceedingly sorry that I cannot render you this service.

1) It will be observed that hardly any of these terms have been translated literally. The French are more polite—at least in expressions—than we are, and the French idioms must therefore be committed to memory.

2) The *irregular verb* *vouloir* (*voü-l'woâr*), *to be willing*, is thus conjugated :

Present.

Je veux (*veü*).
 tu veux (*veü*).
 il veut (*veü*).
 nous voulons (*voü-long*).
 vous voulez (*voü-lêk*).
 ils veulent (*veül*).

Imperfect.

Je voulais, I was willing ; I desired ; I wanted.
 tu voulais.
 il voulait.
 nous voulions.
 vous vouliez.
 ils voulaient.

3.

Formules de regrets.¹

1. Je suis fâché que (*with the subjunctive mood following*).
2. { J'en suis fâché.
2. { Cela me fait de la peine (*pain*).
3. { J'en suis désolé (*jāng swēē day-zō-lay*).
3. { J'en suis au désespoir (*ōh day-sēs-p'woār*). (*Literally : in despair*).
4. Je regrette beaucoup (*or bien ; fort ; infiniment*) que (*with the subjunctive mood*).
5. Avec la meilleure volonté du monde je ne ne pourrais le faire (*ā-vēk lāh mē-yeūr vō-long-tay dū mongd*).
6. Je ne saurais le faire quand même je le voudrais² (*jě nē sō-ray lě fair kāng maim jě lě vou-drāy*).
7. Je suis au désespoir de ne pouvoir vous rendre ce service (*jě s'wēē ōh day-zēs-p'woār dē nē pou-v'woār vou rāng-dr sē sēr-vēēse*).

Future.

Je voudrai.
tu voudras.
il voudra.
nous voudrons.
vous voudrez.
ils voudront.

Subj. Pres.

Que je veuille (*veū-yě*).
que tu veuilles (*veū-yě*).
qu'il veuille (*veū-yě*).
que nous voulions (*vou-lyong*).
que vous vouliez (*vou-lyěh*).
qu'ils veuillent (*veū-yě*).

Conditional.

Je voudrais, I should like to ; I want to.
tu voudrais.
il voudrait.
nous voudrions.
vous voudriez.
ils voudraient.

Imperative.

Veuillez (*veū-yěh*), be so kind as ; will you please ?

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

A.

Reflective Verbs.

Verbs are called *reflective* or *reflected* because their subject and object are the same person or thing. The subject acts therefore upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action. Reflected verbs have therefore, besides the subject, always another personal pronoun, viz., *me, te, se* (myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself), for the singular; *nous, vous, se* (ourselves, yourselves, themselves), for the plural. It frequently happens that, in English, this second pronoun is omitted, whereas it must be expressed in French. *Ex.*: to repent, *se repentir*; *Pres.* I repent, *je me repens*, &c.

Observe that all reflected verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary *être*, as: I have hurt myself, *je me suis blessé*, and *not* *je m'ai blessé*.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected verbs.

Se réjouir (*sě ray-jou-ēēr*), to rejoice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Je me réjouis (*ję mě ray-jou-ēē*), I rejoice.

tu te réjouis, thou rejoicest.

il (elle) se réjouit, he (she) rejoices.

nous nous réjouissons (*ray-joū-îs-song*), we rejoice.
 vous vous réjouissez, you rejoice.
 ils (elles) se réjouissent (*ray-joū-îs*), they rejoice.

Imperfect.

Je me réjouissais (*ray-joū-îs-say*), I rejoiced, &c.

Preterite.

Je me réjouis (*ray-joū-êê*), I rejoiced, &c.

1st Future.

Je me réjouirai (*ray-joū-êê-rêh*), I shall rejoice, &c.

1st Conditional.

Je me réjouirais (*ray-joū-êê-ray*), I should rejoice, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Réjouis-toi, rejoice.
 réjouissons-nous, let us rejoice.
 réjouissez-vous, rejoice.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je me réjouisse (*ray-joū-îs*), that I (may) rejoice, &c.

Imperfect.

Que je me réjouisse (*ray-joū-îs*), that I (might) rejoice, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

Se (me, te, &c.) réjouissant (*ray-joū-îs-sāng*), rejoicing.

COMPOUND TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

S'être réjoui, réjouie (*ray-jou-ēē*), to have rejoiced.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Je me *suis* réjoui, -e (*ray-jou-ēē*), I have rejoiced.
 tu t'*es* réjoui, -e (*tū tay ray-jou-ēē*), thou hast rejoiced.
 il s'*est* réjoui, he has rejoiced.
 elle s'*est* réjouie, she has rejoiced.
 nous nous *sommes* réjouis, -ies, we have rejoiced.
 vous vous *êtes* réjoui(s), -ie(s), you have rejoiced.
 ils se *sont* réjouis, } they have rejoiced.
 elles se *sont* réjouies, }

Pluperfect.

Je m'*étais* réjoui, -e, I had rejoiced.
 tu t'*étais* réjoui, -e, thou hadst rejoiced, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

Je me *fus* réjoui, -e, I had rejoiced.
 tu te *fus* réjoui, -e, &c.

2d Future

Je me *serai* réjoui, -e, I shall have rejoiced.
 tu te *seras* réjoui, -e, &c.

2d Conditional

Je me *serais* réjoui, -e, I should have rejoiced.
 tu te *serais* réjoui, -e, &c.

Second Compound of the Preterite.

Si je me *fusse* réjoui, -e, if I had rejoiced, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Que je me *sois* réjoui, -e, that I (may) have rejoiced.

que tu te *sois* réjoui, -e, &c.

qu'il se *soit* réjoui (qu'elle se *soit* réjouie), &c.

Pluperfect.

Que je me *fusse*, réjoui, -e, that I (might) have rejoiced.

que tu te *fusses* réjoui, -e, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

S'étant (m'*étant*, &c.) réjoui, -e, having rejoiced.

In questions

se réjouir is thus conjugated :

Present.

Me réjouis-je (*better* : est-ce que je me réjouis [*ays ké jě mě ray-jou-ěě*]), do I rejoice?

te réjouis-tu (*or* est-ce que tu te réjouis), dost thou rejoice?

se réjouit-il (*or* est-ce qu'il se réjouit)? &c.

nous réjouissons-nous? &c.

vous réjouissez-vous? &c.

se réjouissent-ils (-elles)? &c.

Perfect.

Me suis-je réjoui, -e, have I rejoiced?

t'es-tu réjoui, -e, hast thou rejoiced?

s'est-il réjoui, has he rejoiced?

nous sommes-nous réjouis, -ies, have we rejoiced?
 vous êtes-vous réjoui(s), -ie(s), have you rejoiced?
 se sont-ils réjouis, }
 se sont-elles réjouies, } have they rejoiced?

With the negation.

Present.

Je ne me réjouis pas, I do not rejoice.
 tu ne te réjouis pas, do.
 il (elle) ne se réjouit pas, do.
 nous ne nous réjouissons pas, do.
 vous ne vous réjouissez pas, do.
 ils (elles) ne se réjouissent pas.

Imperative.

Ne *te* réjouis pas, do not rejoice.
 ne *nous* réjouissons pas, let us not rejoice.
 ne *vous* réjouissez pas, do not rejoice.

Perfect.

Je ne me suis pas réjoui, -e, I have not rejoiced.
 tu ne t'es pas réjoui, -e, &c.
 il (elle) ne s'est pas réjoui, -e, &c.
 nous ne nous sommes pas réjouis, -ies, we have not re-
 joiced.
 vous ne vous êtes pas réjouis(s), ie(s), &c.
 ils (elles) ne se sont pas réjouis, -ies, &c.

Infinitive.

Ne pas se réjouir, not to rejoice,
 ne pas s'être réjoui, -e, not to have rejoiced.

With negation and interrogation.

Present.

Ne me réjouis-je pas ? *or* } do I not rejoice ?
 Est-ce que je ne me réjouis pas ? }
 ne te réjouis-tu pas ? dost thou not rejoice ?
 ne se réjouit-il pas ? does he not rejoice ? &c.

Perfect.

Ne me suis-je pas réjoui, -e ? have I not rejoiced ?
 ne t'es-tu pas réjoui ? -e, &c.
 ne s'est-il (-elle) pas réjoui, -e ? &c.
 ne nous sommes-nous pas réjouis, -ies ? &c.
 ne vous êtes-vous pas réjoui(s), -ie(s) ? &c.
 ne se sont-ils (elles) pas réjouis, -ies ? &c.

Remarks.

1) A great many verbs having no reflexive pronouns in English are reflected in French. The following are most commonly used :

Regular reflexive verbs of the 1st Conj.

S'affliger (<i>să-flĕĕ-jĕh</i>), to be sorry.	se hâter, to make haste.
s'approcher (<i>să-pro-shĕh</i>), to come near.	se lever, to rise, to get up.
s'arrêter (<i>săr-ray-tĕh</i>), to stop.	se marier, (<i>măr-yĕh</i>), to marry.
se baisser (<i>bais-sĕh</i>), to stoop.	se dépêcher (<i>day pay-shĕh</i>), to make haste.
se coucher (<i>cou-shĕh</i>), to go to bed.	s'écrier (<i>say-krĕĕ-ĕh</i>), to exclaim, to cry out.
se fier (<i>fĕĕ-ĕh</i>), to trust.	s'enrhumer (<i>sāng-rŭ-mĕh</i>), to take cold.
se figurer (<i>fĕĕ-gŭ-rĕh</i>),	s'étonner (<i>say-tĕ-nĕh</i>), to wonder.
s'imaginer (<i>sĕĕ-mă-jĕĕ-nĕh</i>),	
	s'éveiller (<i>say-vĕ-yĕh</i>), to awake.

se moquer (<i>mò kēh</i>), to mock, scoff.	se tromper (<i>trong-pēh</i>), to be mistaken.
se promener, to take a walk	
se reposer, to rest.	se vanter (<i>vāng tēh</i>), to boast.
se soucier (<i>soū-syēh</i>), to care.	

Examples.

I rise, I get up, je *me* lève.—*Get up*, levez-vous!

I have risen *or* got up, je *me* suis levé.

We have stopped, nous *nous* sommes arrêtés, &c.

2. Observe also these expressions:

How are you? comment vous portez-vous?

I am well, je me porte bien.

I am mistaken, je me trompe (*trongp*).

I have been mistaken, je me suis trompé.

He is silent, il *se* tait (*tay*). Be still! taisez-vous!

B.

Impersonal Verbs.

1. In every language there are some verbs which are only used in the third person singular. They are called impersonal verbs. Their compound tenses in French are formed by means of the auxiliary *avoir*. Such are:

Neiger (<i>nay-jay</i>), to snow;	<i>Pres.</i> il neige, it snows.
pleuvoir (<i>pleū-v'woār</i>), to rain;	il pleut, it rains.
grêler, to hail;	il grêle, it hails.
tonner, to thunder;	il tonne, it thunders.
geler (<i>jē-lēh</i>), to freeze;	il gèle (<i>jail</i>), it freezes.
dégeler (<i>day-jē-lēh</i>), to thaw;	il dégèle (<i>day-jail</i>), it thaws.
importer (<i>aing-por-tēh</i>), to matter;	il importe (<i>aing-port</i>), it matters.

Some other verbs become impersonal, when employed in the same manner, viz., in the third person singular.

Examples.

il suffit (<i>sūf-fēē</i>), it suffices.	il convient, (<i>cong-vyaing</i>), it is convenient.
il semble (<i>sāng-bl'</i>), it seems.	il arrive (<i>ar-rēēv</i>), it happens.
il vaut mieux (<i>vōh m'yeū</i>), it is better.	il reste, there remains.
il me tarde, I long.	il ne tient pas à moi (<i>ēēl nē tyaing pāh zāh m'wōāh</i>), it does not depend on me.
il manque (<i>māngk</i>), it wants.	
il s'agit (<i>sā-jēē</i>), it is the question.	

Important Remark

The *Subjunctive Mood* with **que** must always be used after the following *impersonal* verbs and expressions :

il convient (<i>cong-vyaing</i>), it is proper.	il est temps (<i>tāng</i>), it is time.
il faut, it is necessary.	il est juste (<i>jūst</i>), it is just, right.
il importe (<i>aing-pōrt</i>), it is important, it matters, it concerns.	il est difficile (<i>dif-fēē-sēēl</i>), it is difficult.
il suffit (<i>sūf-fēē</i>), it is sufficient.	il est possible (<i>pos-sēē-bl</i>), it is a matter of course, it is possible.
il vaut mieux (<i>vōh-m'yeū</i>), it is better.	il se peut, it may be.
	c'est dommage (<i>dom-māhsh</i>), it is a pity.

And also after :

il est fâcheux (<i>fāh-sheū</i>), it is sad.	c'est un malheur (<i>say teūng māhl-ēūr</i>), it is a misfortune.
--	---

Examples.

Il faut que vous le fassiez tout de suite (*fās-syāk tout s'wēēt*). You must do it at once.

Il importe beaucoup que vous y soyez (*ēēl aing-pōrt bōh-kōō kē vou sēē s'wōāh-yēh*). It is of great consequence that you should be there.

Il faudrait, pour vous donner des conseils (*day congk-sē-yē*), *que je connusse vos affaires* (*kē jē con-nūss vōh zāf-fair*). In order to give you some advice (*des conseil*), it would be necessary to know your affairs.

Il suffit que vous le disiez (*dēē-zyēh*). It is sufficient that you say so.

Il est possible (*pos-sēē-bl'*) *qu'il revienne à sept heures* (*rē-vyēn āh sēt teūr*). He may possibly come back at 7 o'clock.

Translate the following

Exercises

into English and, then again, without assistance of the book, into French :

Au bureau.

1.

Veillez faire le compte-courant (*lě congk coñ-rāngt* = *the account*) de N. et Cie. — Il est déjà fait, monsieur. Après déduction (*day-düē-syong*) faite de leurs factures (*fāc-tūr* = *accounts*) et de leur à-compte (*on account pay-ment*), il nous revient (*rē-vyaing* = *there comes to us*) en-

core mille francs. Ils proposent (prō-pōz) de nous remettre un billet à trois mois (*a three months' note*). — Mais ce sont des déboursés (*cash expenses*). Ils auraient du (*past part. of devoir*) les compter (cong-tēh = *pay*) depuis longtemps. Ils ont beaucoup perdu (*lost*) dans la faillite (fā-yēēt = *failure*) de D. et Cie., mais la maison jouit (*enjoys*) d'une très-bonne réputation (ray-pü-tā-syong) et a toujours payé bien ponctuellement (pong-tü-ël-lě-māng = *punctually*). — Eh bien! en leur envoyant l'extrait (*statement*) de leur compte (*account*), écrivez-leur (*write to them*) que nous ne pouvons leur accorder trois mois, mais que nous disposerons sur eux (*we will draw on them*) à soixante jours.

2.

Voulez-vous me dire à combien se monte (mōngt = *amounts*) mon compte? Je vais vous le solder (*pay*). — Le voici; il se monte à cinq mille trois cent trente-huit francs. — Voulez-vous l'acquitter (lā-kit-tay = *to receipt*)? Voici cinq mille francs en or; vous pouvez vérifier (vay-rēē-fyēh = *verify*) les rouleaux (rou-lōh = *rolls*.) Pour ce qui reste (*for the rest; remainder*), vous m'obligeriez si vous vouliez me prendre ce billet-à-ordre (*note*). — Quand est-il payable (pay-yā-bl')? — Dans un mois. — Tenez, voyez! 'Au quinze juillet prochain (prō-shaing = *next*) je paierai à monsieur La Rue, ou à son ordre, la somme de trois cent quarante francs, valeur (vā-leūr = *value*) reçue comptant. Paris, le treize Avril 1882.' — Quel est ce nom-là. — Je ne connais pas le souscripteur (sou-scrip-teūr = *maker*), mais les endosseurs (lay-zāng-dō-seūr = *the*

indorsers) sont bons. — Je n'aimerais pas être obligé de le faire protester.

Exercise.

The pupil must put all the verbs in *italics* in their tense and person :

Future.

Je (*se frapper*). — Nous (*se rendre*). — Vous (*se tromper*). — Ils (*se réjouir*). — Il (*s'arrêter*). — Vous (*se dépêcher*). — Nous (*s'étonner*). — Vous (*s'enrhumer*).

Plusqueparfait.

Elle (*se douter*). — Vous (*se tromper*). — Ils (*se nourrir*). — Elle (*se nommer*). — Elles (*se réjouir*). — Nous (*se flatter*). — Vous (*s'imaginer*). — Elle (*se promener*). — Je (*se vanter*). — Elle (*se hâter*). — Vous (*se marier*). — Nous (*se lever*).

Negative—Interrogative. Perfect.

Tu (*s'égarer*)? — Il (*s'avancer*)? — Elle (*s'enrichir*)? — Nous (*s'arrêter*)? — Vous (*se tromper*)? — Ils (*se fâcher*)? — Elles (*se moquer*)? — Nous (*se fier*)? — Je (*se figurer*)? — Elles (*se reposer*)?

Negative. Present.

Je (*se nommer*). — Il (*se tromper*). — Tu (*s'adresser*). — Elle (*se rendre*). — Nous (*se flatter*). — Vous (*se blâmer*). — Ils (*se baisser*). — Elles (*se réjouir*). — Tu (*s'enrhumer*). — Nous (*se coucher*). — Vous (*s'étonner*). — Ils (*s'éveiller*). — Elles (*s'écarter*). — Tu (*se dépêcher*).

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART XI.

XI.

1.

To Ask and Answer.

1. Who is there?
2. Who are you?
3. To whom have I the honor to speak?
4. What is your name? My name is Garnier. (*Literally:*
I call myself Garnier.)
5. What is it you want? (*What do you want?*)
6. What do you desire?
7. I want to speak to you.
8. I have something to say to you. (*I must tell you something.*)
9. Do you know me?—I have not the honor of knowing you.
10. Listen to me. — I am listening to you.
11. Do you understand me? — I do not understand you.
— I did not understand you.
12. Why do you not answer?
13. I did not quite understand. (*I did not hear well.*)
14. I beg your pardon, sir?

XI.

1.

Pou. Questionner et Répondre (kěst-yon-něh ay ray-pong-dr').

1. Qui est là (*kēē ay lāh*) ?
2. Qui êtes-vous ?
3. A qui ai-je l'honneur de parler (*āh kēē ai-jě lon-neūr dě pār-lěh*) ?
4. Comment vous appelez-vous (*kom-māng vou zāp-pě-lěh vou*) ? Je m'appelle Garnier.
5. Que voulez-vous ?
6. Que désirez-vous (*kě day-zēē-rěh-vou*) ?
7. J'ai besoin (*bě-zo-aiing*) de vous parler.
8. J'ai quelque chose à vous dire (*jay kěl-kě shōhs āh vou dēēr*).
9. Me connaissez-vous ? Je n'ai pas l'honneur de vous connaître (*mě cō-nais-sěh-vou ? jě nay pāh lon-neūr dě vou con-nay-tr*).
10. Ecoutez-moi. — Je vous écoute (*ay-coū-těh m'woāh ; jě vou zay-coūt*).
11. Me comprenez-vous ? — Je ne vous comprends (*cong-prāng*) pas. Je ne vous ai pas compris (*cong-prēē*).
12. Pourquoi ne répondez vous pas (*ray-pong-děh-vou pāh*) ?
13. J'avais mal entendu (*māh lāng-tāng-dū*).
14. Plaît-il (*play-tēēl*) ?

15. What do you mean?
16. Come nearer (= approach, *approchez*); I have something to say to you.
17. I have to tell you some little thing (= word, *mot*).
18. What can I do for you?

19. Can I do anything for you?
20. Do you understand?
21. Do you understand me?
22. Do you understand me now (*maintenant*)?
23. I understand you very well (*fort bien*).

24. Do you understand what I am telling you?
25. What do you say (*or* What are you saying)?
26. What in the world do you mean (*or* What is that you are saying)?
27. What did you say?
28. I did not say anything.
29. Do you understand what I say?

30. Will you please repeat it?
31. Will you have the kindness to repeat it?

32. Did you not tell me that.... (*or* Have you not told me that....)?
33. Who told you that (*cela*)?
34. Who in the world has told you that?

35. I have been told so (= One has told it me).
36. Somebody told me so.
37. I have heard it said.

15. Que voulez-vous dire (*dēēr*) ?
16. Approchez (*āp-pro-shēh*) ; j'ai quelque chose à vous dire (*kēl-kē shōhs āh vou dēēr*).
17. J'ai un petit mot (*p'tēē mōh*) à vous dire (*dēēr*).
18. Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service (*kēē āh tēel pōūr vōt sēr-vēēs*) ? Or : Que puis-je faire pour vous ?
19. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a (*kays kēēl ēē-āh*) pour votre service ?
20. Entendez-vous (*āng-tāng-dēh-voū*) ?
21. M'entendez-vous (*māng-tāng-dēh-voū*) ?
22. M'entendez-vous maintenant (*maing-tē-nāng*) ?
23. Je vous entends fort bien (*jē voū zāng-tāng fōhr by-aiing*).
24. Entendez-vous ce que je dis (*sē kē jē dēē*) ?
25. Que dites-vous (*kē dēēt-voū*) ?
26. Qu'est-ce que vous dites (*kays-kē voū dēēt*) ?
27. Qu'avez-vous dit (*kāh-vēh voū dēē*) ?
28. Je n'ai rien dit (*jē nay rēē-aiing dēē*).
29. Comprenez-vous ce que je dis (*cong-prē-nēh-voū sē kē jē dēē*) ?
30. Voulez-vous bien répéter (*byaiing ray-pay-tēh*) ?
31. Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de répéter (*zā-v'woār lāh bong-tay dē ray-pay-tēh*) ?
32. Ne m'avez-vous pas dit que.... ?
33. Qui vous a dit cela (*kēē voū zāh dēē sē-lāh*) ?
34. Qui est-ce qui vous a dit cela (*kēē ays kēē voū zāh dēē sē-lāh*) ?
35. On me l'a dit (*ong mē lāh dēē*).
36. Quelqu'un (*kēl-keūng*) me l'a dit.
37. Je l'ai entendu dire (*jē lay āng-tāng-dū dēēr*).

38. How do you call this?
39. How is this called?
40. That is called....
41. That is called....
42. May I ask you? (*or* May I inquire of you? *or* May I beg you)?
43. What is it?
44. What is the use of that?
45. What is this?
46. What does that mean (= What will this say)?

2.

To Affirm or Deny.

1. I say yes.
2. I say no.
3. I tell you that....
4. I assure you that....
5. I tell you it is true.
6. It is certain.
7. It is a fact.
8. I warrant it (*or* I guarantee it).
9. I guarantee you the fact.

1) *il sert* is the third person singular of the irregular present *or*

38. Comment appelez-vous cela (*kôm-māng tãp-pě-lêh vou s'lâh*) ?
39. Comment cela s'appelle-t-il (*kôm-māng s'lâh sãp-pêl-têl*) ?
40. { On appelle cela....
Cela s'appelle....
41. C'est ce qu'on nomme (*says-kong nôm*).
42. { Puis-je vous demander ?
Oserais-je vous demander ?
Oserais-je vous prier (*prê-êh*) ?
Peut-on vous demander ?
43. Qu'est-ce que c'est (*kays-kê say*) ?
44. A quoi cela sert-il ?¹
45. { Qu'est-ce que cela (*kays-kê s'lâh*) ?
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela (*kays-kê say kê s'lâh*) ?
46. Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire ?

2.

Pour Affirmer ou Nier.

1. Je dis **que** oui (*jê dêê kê ou-êê*).
2. Je dis **que** non.
3. Je vous dis que....
4. Je vous assure que (*jê vou zãs-sür kê*)....
5. Je vous dis que c'est vrai (*kê say vray*).
6. Cela est certain (*cêr-taïng*).
7. C'est un fait (*say teũng fay*).
8. Je vous le garantis (*gã-rãng-têê*).
9. Je vous garantis le fait.

servir, to serve, to help. *Pres.*: Je sers, tu sers, il sert nous servons, vous servez, ils servent (*sêrv*).

10. I suppose so.
11. I do not suppose so.
12. I fancy so.
13. You can easily conceive (*or* understand) that....
14. Do you think so?
15. I do not think so.
16. I don't know what you mean.

17. Is it true that....?
18. Yes, it is certain.
19. I answer for it.
20. I am certain of it.
21. I am sure of it.
22. You may be convinced of it.

23. You may believe me as to that (*en*).
24. I can assure you of it.
25. It cannot be true.

1) The pupil must learn the *irregular* verb **savoir** (*sā-vvooār*), to know.

Present.

Je sais (*say*).
 tu sais (*say*).
 il sait (*say*).
 nous savons (*sāh-vong*).
 vous savez (*sāh-vēh*).
 ils savent (*sāhv*).

Imperfect.

Je savais.
 tu savais.
 il savait.
 nous savions.
 vous saviez.
 ils savaient.

Preterite.

Je sus (*sū*).
 tu sus.
 il sut.
 nous sûmes (*sūm*).
 vous sûtes (*sūt*).
 ils surent (*sūr*).

Future.

Je saurai (*sōh-rēh*).
 tu sauras (*sōh-rā*).
 il saura (*sōh-rā*).
 nous saurons (*sōh-rong*).
 vous saurez (*sōh-rēh*).
 ils sauront (*sōh-rong*).

10. Je suppose **que** oui (*jě súp-poz kě ou-ěē*).
11. Je suppose **que** non (*jě súp-poz kě nong*).
12. J' imagine (*jěē-mā-jěēn*) **que** oui.
13. Vous comprenez facilement que (*fā-sěē-lē-māng*)
14. Le pensez-vous (*lě pāng-sěh vou*) ?
15. Je ne le pense pas.
16. Je ne sais ¹ ce que vous voulez dire (*jě ně say s'kě vou vou-lěh dēēr*).
17. Est-il vrai que (*ay-těēl vray kě*)
18. Oui, cela est certain (*cěr-taing*).
19. Je vous en réponds (*jě vou zāng ray-pong*).
20. J'en suis certain (*jāng s'wěē cěr-taing*).
21. J'en suis sûr (*jāng s'wěē sūr*).
22. Soyez en bien persuadé (*s'woāh-yěh zāng byaing pěr-sū-āh-day*).
23. Vous pouvez ² m'en croire (*māng krōār*).
24. Je puis ² vous l'assurer (*lās-sū-rěh*).
25. Cela ne peut ² être vrai (*s'lāh ně peū taytr' vray*).

Conditional.

Je saurais.
tu saurais.
il saurait.
nous saurions.
vous sauriez.
ils sauraient.

Subj. Pres.

Que je sache (*sāsh*).
que tu saches (*sāsh*).
qu'il sache (*sāsh*).
que nous sachions (*sā-shyong*).
que vous sachiez (*sā-shyéh*).
qu'ils sachent (*sāsh*).

Participles.

Sachant (*sāh-shāng*).
sû (*sū*).

2) *Pouvoir*, to be able. *Part. Pres.*: pouvant.—*Part. past.*: pu — *Present*: Je peux (or je puis), (*puis* is only used in the first person sing. *I cannot* is mostly expressed by *je ne puis* (without pas) or by *je ne peux pas*), tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.—*Imperfect.*: Je pouvais, tu pouvais, &c.—*Pret.*: Je pus, tu pus, il put, nous pûmes, vous pûtes, ils purent (*pūr*).—*Fut.*: Je pourrai, tu pourras, il pourra, nous pourrons, vous pourrez, ils pourront.—*Condit.*: Je pourrais, tu pourrais, il pourrait, &c.—*Subjunct.*: Que je puisse, que tu puisses, qu'il puisse, que nous puissions, que vous puissiez, qu'ils puissent (*pu-is*).

26. That is true (= That's the truth).
 27. I assure you it is so.
 28. It cannot be. (It is impossible.)
 29. I assure you it is not so.
 30. You are right.
 31. You are wrong.
 32. There is no doubt of it.
 33. Every one will tell you so.
 34. Upon my word of honor!
 35. That is a matter of course.
 36. I can hardly believe you.
 37. I do not know anything about it.
 38. There is nothing in it.
 39. Are you in earnest?
 40. Are you talking seriously?
 41. Are you not mistaken?
 42. I see I am mistaken.
 43. Is not this an error (*or* mistake)?
 44. I doubt it.
 45. You are jesting (*or* joking).
 46. That is incredible.
 47. You are altogether wrong.
 48. Some one has imposed upon you.

1) *Dire*, to say; to tell. — *Part. pres.*: disant (*dèè-sāng*). — *Part. past.*: dit.—*Pres.*: Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent (*dèès*).—*Imperf.*: Je disais, tu disais, &c.—*Pres.*: Je dis (*dèè*),

26. C'est la vérité.
27. Je vous assure qu'il en est ainsi (*jě vou zās-sür kēēl āng nāy-taing-sēē*).
28. Cela ne se peut pas!
29. Je vous assure **que non** (*jě vou zās-sür kē nong*).
30. Vous avez raison (*ray-zong*).
31. Vous avez tort (*tor*).
32. Il n'y a pas de doute (*dōōt*).
33. Tout le monde vous le dira ¹ (*dēē-rāh*).
34. D'honneur (*or* Sur mon honneur, *or* Ma parole d'honneur)!
35. Cela s'entend (*s'la sāng-tāng*) (*or* C'est bien entendu (*byaing nāng-tāng-dü*). *Or*: Cela va sans dire.
36. J'ai de la peine à vous croire.
37. Je n'en sais rien (*rēē-āing*).
38. Il n'en est rien (*ēēl nāng-nay rēē-āing*).
39. Est-ce pour tout de bon?
40. Parlez-vous sérieusement (*say-rēē-eū-zě-māng*).
41. Ne vous trompez-vous pas (*ně vou trong-pēh vou pāh*)?
42. Je vois (*jě v'woāh*) que je me suis trompé.
43. N'est-ce pas une erreur (*naysě pāh zūn nēr-reūr*)?
44. J'en doute (*jāng dōōt*).
45. Vous plaisantez (*play-zāng-tēh*).
46. C'est incroyable (*say taing-kroāh-yābl*).
47. Vous êtes dans la plus profonde erreur (*pro-fōng-dēr-reūr*).
48. On vous en a imposé (*ong vou zāng-nāh-āing-po-zay*).

tu dis, il dit, nous dîmes (*dēēm*), vous dîtes, ils dirent (*dēēr*).—*Fut.*: Je dirai (*dēē-rēh*), tu diras, &c.—*Subjunct.*: Que je dise (*dēēs*), &c.—*Subj. Imp.*: Que je disse (*dēs*), &c.—*Imperative*: Dis, disons, dites.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

This Irish waiter looked as if he had had a drop too much, when he came to take my letters to the post-office.

1.

This Irish waiter looked as if he had had a drop too much.

This¹

waiter (boy; bachelor)

Irish

had

the look (the air; the melody)

of having²

1) Before a masculine noun which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, *cet* is used instead of *ce*. Ex.: *cet*-enfant (*sě tãng-fãng*), this child; *cet*-homme (*sě tòm*) this man; *cet*-arbre (*sě tãrbr*), this tree. In the plural there is no difference. Ex.: *ces*-enfants (*say zãng-fãng*), these children; *ces*-hommes (*say zòm*), these men.

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

Ce garçon irlandais avait l'air d'avoir trop
 sě gār-song Ir-lāng-day ā-vay layr dā-v'woār trōh
bu, lorsqu'il est venu chercher mes lettres, pour
 bū lors-kēēl ay ve-nū shēr-shay may lētr' poūr
les mettre à la poste.
 lay mētt-rāh lāh pōst.

1.

Ce garçon irlandais avait l'air d'avoir trop bu.
 sě gār-song Ir-lāng-day ā-vay layr dā-v'woār trōh bū.

Ce¹ (*sě*) (*fem.* cette ; *plur.* ces, these)

garçon (*gār-song*)

irlandais (*ir-lāng-day*)

avait (*ā-vay*)

l'air (*layr*) (*m.*)

d'avoir² (*dā-v'woār*)

2) Expressions such as: the desire of seeing you, the honor of knowing her, &c., must be rendered by the *Infinitive with de*, i.e. le désir de vous voir, l'honneur de la connaître. Il est temps de partir, it is time to start ; Il avait l'air d'avoir trop bu ; J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer (*sā-lū-ēh*), &c.

too much

drunk ¹

1. Why do you look so angry? (*Literally*: Why have you the look of such bad humor (*de si mauvaise humeur*)?)
2. Mrs. N. looked very angry when (*lorsque*) I told her that he would not come (*qu'il ne viendrait² pas*).

1) **Boire** (*b'woār*), to drink, is an irregular verb.

Present.

Je bois (*b'woāk*).
tu bois.
il boit.
nous *buvons* (*bū-vong*).
vous *buvez*.
ils boivent (*b'woāv*).

Imperfect.

Je buvais.
tu buvais.
il buvait.
nous buvions.
vous buviez.
ils buvaient.

Future.

Je boirai.
tu boiras.
il boira.
nous boirons.
vous boirez.
ils boiront.

Preterite

Je bus.
tu bus.
il but.
nous bûmes (*bûm*).
vous bûtes (*bût*).
ils burent (*bûr*).

Subj. Present.

Que je boive.
que tu boives.
qu'il boive.
que nous *buvions*.
que vous *buviez*.
qu'ils boivent.

Imperative.

bois.
buvons.
buvez.

Participles.

buvant.
bu.

2) The irregular verb **venir** (*vĕ-nĕēr*), to come, is thus conjugated :

Present.

Je viens (*vyaing*).
tu viens.
il vient.
nous venons (*vĕ-nong*).
vous venez.
ils viennent (*vyeñ*).

Preterite.

Je vins (*vaiŋg*).
tu vins (*vaiŋg*).
il vint (*vaiŋg*).
nous vîmes (*vaiŋgm*).
vous vîntes (*vaiŋgt*).
ils vinrent (*vaiŋgr*).

trop (*trôh*)

bu¹ (*bü*) (*Partic. past* of the irregular verb *boire* (*b'woâr*) to drink).

1. Pourquoi avez-vous l'air de si mauvaise humeur (*dě sêe mō-vayze ü-meür*) ?
2. Madame N. avait l'air de très mauvaise humeur, lorsque je lui ai dit, qu'il ne viendrait² pas (*kêel nê vyaing-dray pāh*).

Imperfect.

Je venais.
tu venais.
il venait.
nous venions.
vous veniez.
ils venaient.

Perfect.

Je suis venu, I have come.
tu es venu, &c.
il est venu, &c.

Future.

Je viendrai.
tu viendras.
il viendra.
nous viendrons.
vous viendrez.
ils viendront.

Imperative.

viens (*vyaing*).
venons.
venez.

Conditional.

Je viendrais (*vyaing-dray*).
tu viendrais.
il viendrait.
nous viendrions.
vous viendriez.
ils viendraient.

Subj. Pres.

Que je vienne (*vyên*).
que tu viennes.
qu'il vienne.
que nous venions.
que vous veniez.
qu'ils viennent (*vyên*).

Sub. Imperf.

Que je vinsse (*vaiŋs*).
que tu vinsses.
qu'il vînt.
que nous vinssions.
que vous vinssiez.
qu'ils vinssent.

Participles.

venant (*vê-nāng*).

venu (*vê-nū*).

In the same manner are conjugated: *convenir* (*kōng-vê-nêēr*), to agree, to suit; *devenir*, to become; *parvenir*, to attain, to reach; *prévenir*, to be beforehand with, to inform; *se souvenir*, to remember (je me souviens [*soü-vyaing*], I remember); *revenir*, to come back, to return (cela me revient à l'esprit [*s'lāh mē rê-vyaing āh lēs-prêē*], there occurs to me).

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

*Exercises and Words used in Common Conversation.***Conjugation of S'en aller, to go away.**

I give the conjugation of the irregular reflective verb *S'en aller*, to go away, on account of its difficulty to English students. Observe that **en** is *never separated* from the reflective personal pronouns *m', t', s', nous, vous, s'*. This is especially noticeable in the compound tenses, viz. : *Je m'en suis allé, &c.*

Present.

Je m'en vais (<i>jě mǎng vay</i>).	Je ne m'en vais pas (<i>je ně mǎng vay pǎh</i>).
tu t'en vas (<i>tü tǎng vǎh</i>).	tu ne t'en vas pas.
il s'en va (<i>ēēl sǎng vǎh</i>).	il ne s'en va pas.
nous nous en allons (<i>noū-noū-zǎng-nǎh-long</i>).	nous ne nous en allons pas.
vous vous en allez (<i>voū-voū-zǎng-nǎh-lēh</i>).	vous ne vous en allez pas.
ils s'en vont (<i>ēēl sǎng vong</i>).	ils ne s'en vont pas.

Imperfect.

Je m'en allais (<i>je mǎng-nǎh-lay</i>).	Je ne m'en allais pas.
--	------------------------

Preterite.

Je m'en allai (*jě māng-nāh-lēh*). Je ne m'en allai pas.

Perfect.

Je m'en suis allé (*jě māng s'wēē zāh-lay*). Je ne m'en suis pas allé.

tu t'en es allé.

tu ne t'en es pas allé.

il s'en est allé.

il ne s'en est pas allé.

nous nous en sommes allés

nous ne nous en sommes

(*noū-noū-zāng sōm zāh-lay*).

pas allés.

vous vous en êtes allés.

vous ne vous en êtes pas allés.

ils s'en sont allés.

ils ne s'en sont pas allés.

Pluperfect.

Je m'en étais allé.

Je ne m'en étais pas allé.

2d Pluperfect.

Je m'en fus allé.

Je ne m'en fus pas allé.

Future.

Je m'en irai.

Je ne m'en irai pas.

2d Future.

Je m'en serai allé.

Je ne m'en serai pas allé.

Imperative.

Va-t'en.

Ne t'en va pas.

(qu'il s'en aille.)

(qu'il ne s'en aille pas.)

allons-nous-en.

ne nous en allons pas.

allez-vous-en.

ne vous en allez pas.

(qu'ils s'en aillent.)

(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas.)

Interrogatively.**Negative-Interrogative.***Present.*

M'en vais-je ?

Ne m'en vais-je pas ?

t'en vas-tu ?

ne t'en vas-tu pas ?

s'en va-t-il ?

ne s'en va-t-il pas ?

nous en allons-nous ?

ne nous en allons-nous pas ?

vous en allez-vous ?

ne vous en allez-vous pas ?

s'en vont-ils ?

ne s'en vont-ils pas ?

Imperfect.

M'en allais-je ?

Ne m'en allais-je pas ?

Preterite.

M'en allai-je ?

Ne m'en allai-je pas ?

Perfect.

M'en suis-je allé ?

Ne m'en suis-je pas allé ?

t'en es-tu allé ?

ne t'en es-tu pas allé ?

s'en est-il allé ?

ne s'en est-il pas allé ?

nous en sommes-nous al-
lés ?ne nous en sommes-nous
pas allés ?

vous en êtes-vous allés ?

ne vous en êtes-vous pas
allés.

s'en sont-ils allés ?

ne s'en sont-ils pas allés ?

Pluperfect.

M'en étais-je allé ?

Ne m'en étais-je pas allé ?

2d Pluperfect.

M'en fus-je allé ?

Ne m'en fus-je pas allé ?

Future.

M'en irai-je ?

Ne m'en irai-je pas ?

2d Future.

M'en serai-je allé ?

Ne m'en serai-je pas allé ?

Words.*Carte du Restaurant.*

1. Potages.

Un consommé, beef soup.

une julienne (*jul-yén*), Julienne.2. Poissons (*p'woā-song*) (m. pl.).Le saumon (*sōh-mong*), salmon.

la sole, sole.

une truite (*trū-zēf*), trout.un hareng (*āh-raing*), herring.une anguille (*āng-g'hēē-yē*), eel.un homard (*ō-mār*), lobster.3. Boeuf (*beūf*) (m.).

le biftek,

le beefsteak, } beefsteak.

un beefsteak à l'anglaise, beefsteak.

bien cuit (*byaing-k'wēē*), well-done.4. Mouton (*mōō-tong*) (m.).

une côtelette, cutlet ; chop.

un gigot (*jēt-gōh*), leg of mutton.*Bill of Fare.*

Soups.

un potage au riz (*rēē*), rice-soup.

un potage au vermicelle, Vermicelli soup.

Fish.

un turbot (*tūr-bō*), turbot.le maquereau (*mākē-rōh*), mackerel.

un homard en salade, lobster-salad.

le brochet (*brō-shēh*), pike.des huitres (*day z'wēē-t'r*), oysters.

Beef.

saignant (*sēn-yāng*), rare.le filet (*fēē-lēh*), fillet.un filet aux truffes (*ōh trūff*), fillet with truffles.un rosbif aux pommes (*ōh pōm*), roast-beef and potatoes.

Mutton.

un filet de mouton (*mōō-tong*), roast-mutton.

5. Veau (*vōh*) (f.). Veal.
 une côtelette, cutlet. un ris de veau (*vōh*), sweet-bread.
 des rognons (*rōn-yong*), kidneys.
6. Volaille (*vō-lā-yě*) (m.). Poultry.
 un chapon (*shā-pong*), capon. un poulet en salade (*sā-lāhd*),
 un poulet (*poū-lay*), chicken. chicken-salad.
 un poulet en mayonnaise, Ma- un caneton (*kāhnz-tong*), duck.
 yonnaise of chicken. une oie (*ō-āh*), goose.
 un pigeon (*pē-jong*), pigeon. un dindon (*daing-dong*), turkey.
7. Gibier (*jē-byēh*) (m.). Game.
 une perdrix (*pēr-drēē*), partridge. un filet de chevreuil (*shē-vrēū-yě*),
 une caille (*kā-yě*), quail. venison.
8. Pâtisseries (*pāh-tīs-sē-rēē*) (f. pl.). Pastry.
 un pâté chaud de légumes (*lay-gūm*), hot vegetable pie.
 un pâté de foies gras, { Pâté de foies gras.
 { goose-liver pastry.
9. Salades (*sā-lāhd*) (f. pl.). Salads.
 une salade de céleri, celery sal- une salade de concombres (*cong-*
 ad. *congō'r*), cucumber-salad.
 une laitue (*lay-tū*), lettuce-salad. du cresson (*crē-song*), cresses.
10. Légumes (*lay-gūm*) (m. pl.). Vegetables.
 des asperges (*day sās-pērjē*) (f.), des pommes de terre, potatoes.
 asparagus. des pommes frites (*frēēt*), fried
 des petits pois (*p'woāh*), (au potatoes.
 beurre), green peas. des épinards (*day-zay pēē-nār*)
 des artichauts frits (*day zār-tēē* (m.), spinach.
shō frēē), artichokes (fried). des carottes (f.), carrots.
 des haricots verts (*day-zār-rēē-coh* des oignons (*day s'woān-yong*)
vayr), French beans. (m.), onions.
 des choux-fleurs (*shoo-flēār*) (m.), du macaroni, macaroni.
 cauliflowers.

11. Entremets au sucre.

(āng-tr'-may ôh sü-cr').

une omelette, omelet.

une omelette au rhum, omelet
with rum.12. Dessert (*dě-sayr*) (m.).du fruit (*frû-êê*), fruit.des pruneaux (*prü-no*) (m. pl.),
stewed prunes.une compote de pommes (*cong-
pô dē pôm*), stewed apples.des confitures de groseilles (*kong-
fêê-tür dē-gro-zê-yé*), red currant
jam.de la gelée de groseilles, red cur-
rant jelly.une marmelade d'abricots (*dā-
brêê-kôh*), marmalade of apri-
cots.une meringue à la crème (*kraym*),
meringue with jelly.des macarons (*mā-kā-rong*) (m.
pl.), macaroons.

Sweet dishes.

des beignets (*bên-yêh*), de pom-
mes, apple fritters.

Desserts.

des biscuits (m. pl.), biscuits.

une compote de pêches (*paysk*),
stewed peaches.des (quatre-) mendiants (*māng-
dyāng*) (m. pl.), raisins, figs,
nuts, and almonds.du fromage à la crème, cream
cheese.du fromage de Gruyère, Gruyère
cheese.du fromage de Brie (*brêê*), Brie
cheese.du fromage de Roquefort, Roque-
fort cheese.des prunes à l'eau-de-vie (*lôh-dê-
vêê*), prunes in brandy.

Translate the following

Exercise

into English and then render it again into French :

On sonne (*Somebody is ringing*). Serait-ce monsieur B.? — Madame, veut-elle recevoir monsieur B.? — Faites-le entrer dans le petit salon. — Madame, j'ai l'honneur

de vous souhaiter (*to wish*) le bonjour. — Bonjour monsieur ; donnez-vous donc la peine de vous asseoir. Comment vous portez-vous ? — Très-bien, madame, je vous remercie ; et vous-même ? — J'ai été un peu enrhumée, mais je vais très-bien aujourd'hui. — Je suis charmé de vous voir rétablie. — Vous êtes bien aimable d'avoir pensé à moi. — Je me suis présenté (*pray-zāng-tay*) plusieurs fois chez vous, mais je n'ai pas eu l'avantage (*lā-vāng-tāhje = the happiness*) de vous rencontrer (*meet*). On doit (*they must*) vous avoir remis (*given*) ma carte. — En effet (*yes, indeed*), et je regrette bien de ne pas m'être trouvée chez moi pour vous recevoir. — Comment va monsieur votre père ? — Il est indisposé depuis quelques jours, il est obligé de garder la chambre. — J'en suis bien fâché. J'espère que cela ne sera rien. — C'est peu de chose (*it is a mere trifle*) ; mais à son âge il lui faut des soins (*he must be careful*).

With a Physician.

1) I have taken (*pris = prēē*) the liberty to send (*envoyer chercher*) for you, doctor. — Why, what is the matter with you ? How do you feel (*comment vous trouvez-vous*) ? — I am not at all (*du tout*) well. I feel (*je me sens = sāng*) very ill. — 2) Since when have you been ill ? — How did this (*cela*) begin ? — It (*cela*) took me yesterday in consequence of (*par*) a chill (*un frisson = frīs-song*) ; and then (*ensuite = āng-s'wēēt*) I perspired (*transpirer = trāng-spēē-rēh*) very much. — 3) Did you feel sick (= Have you felt [*sentī = sāng-tēē*] sick [*des maux de coeur*]) ? — Yes,

I feel sick and am inclined to vomit (= and have inclination [*des envies* = day zāng-věē] to vomit). — Show me (*voyons*) your tongue (*langue*). — You will have (*il vous faudra*) to take a little medicine (*une petite médecine*). — 4) Give me your arm (*bras* = brāh). Your pulse (*pouls*) is rather high (*un peu élevé*). There is some fever (*de la fièvre* = fěē-ay-vr'). — You have a little fever. — 5) Do you think my illness dangerous (*dangereuse* = dāng-jě-reūse)? — No, but we must take care (*prendre garde*) so that it may not become (*devenir*) so. — 6) What have I to do? — Have I anything else (*autre chose*) to do? — No, only take care (*ayez soin* = s'wōaing) to keep yourself warm (*chaudement*). — Be careful not to take cold. — 7) What kind of a night did you pass (= How have you passed the night)? — I feel much better, thank you. — I have slept (*dormi* = dor-měē) a little, and the fever is quite gone down (*diminuée* = děē-měē-nū-ay). — 8) Very well, I can assure you that this will be nothing serious (*rien de sérieux* = rěē-āing dě say-ryeū). — In two or three days you will be well (*guéri* = cured).

Exercise.

Which is the way to the Northern railway station (*la gare du Nord*), please? — Go straight ahead, sir. — Which is the nearest (*le plus court* = lě plü coūr) way to go to St. Honoré Street? — Go straight ahead; you cannot miss your way (= you cannot mistake [*vous tromper*] of [*de*] the way). — Can you tell me if this road (*cette route*) leads (*conduit* = kong-d'wěē) to Amiens? —

You are on (*dans*) the right (*vrai*) road, sir. — You are not on the right road, sir. — To (*de*) which side must I go? — Follow (*suivez* = s'wêê-vêh) this street, it will lead (*conduira*) you to the great road. — How far may it be from here (= How much can it there have [*y avoir*] from here)? — It may be about a mile (= It can there have a mile [*un mille* = mēēl]). — It is not (*il n'y a pas*) more than a mile. — It is (*il y a*) scarcely (*à peine*) a mile. It is (*il y a*) a good mile. — It is a little more than a mile.

Exercise.

Lettre d'introduction et de crédit.

LYON, 3 janvier 1882.

Messieurs MICHELET ET C^{IE}, à Paris.

Messieurs :

Nous prenons (*we take*) la liberté de vous présenter et de recommander à votre bienveillant accueil (*kind reception, i. e. to your kindness*) M. Chas. Fruston de cette ville.

Nous l'accréditons chez vous pour la somme de dix mille francs. Veuillez, nous vous prions, lui payer jusqu'à concurrence (*up to the amount*) de cette somme, l'argent dont (*whereof*) il aura besoin et nous en débiter.

Agrérez (*accept*) l'assurance de notre parfait dévouement.

D. ET C^{IE}.

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART XII.

XII.

(Continuation.)

3. The old lady with whom you were at church is not beautiful, but she has a very distinguished appearance (*l'air très distingué*).
4. Why did that English waiter look so angry?
5. My clerk is a¹ Frenchman, but he looks like an Englishman (*il a l'air anglais*).
6. Your Irish servant looks like a Frenchman.
7. The old tailor whom my brother had in Berlin, did not look like a German.
8. He looks good-natured (*il a l'air bon*).
9. I met Miss B.; she was looking very sad (*elle avait l'air très triste*).
10. He is very angry. (*Literally: He is of very bad humor.*)

1. A.) The *indefinite article* is omitted before *national and professional names* when the *subject* of the sentence is either a *noun* or a *personal pronoun*. *Ex.*: Ce médecin est allemand (*tâh-lê-mâng*), This physician is a German. — Je suis anglais (*süê zâng-lay*), I am an Englishman. — Mon père était avocat (*tâ-vo-kâh*), My father was a lawyer. — Il est américain (*tâ-may-rêe-kaing*), He is an American.

B.) But after *c'est, voici* and *voilà* and when the *noun* is qualified by an *adjective*, *un* must be used. *Ex.*: C'est un français, He (or it) is a Frenchman.—Voici un médecin, Here is a physician.—Robert était

XII.

(Continuation.)

3. La vieille dame avec laquelle (*lă vyě-yě dāhm avec lă-kěll*) vous avez été à l'église, n'est pas belle, mais elle a l'air très distingué (*dīs-taing-gay*).
4. Pourquoi le garçon anglais avait-il l'air de si mauvaise humeur (*dě sěē mō-vayze iimeūr*) ?
5. Mon employé (*mōng-nāng-ploāh-yěh*) est français¹ mais il a l'air anglais (*zěēl lāh lair rāng-lay*).
6. Votre domestique (*dō-mēs-těēk*) irlandais a l'air français.
7. Le vieux tailleur que mon frère avait à Berlin (*běr-laing*), n'avait pas l'air allemand (*lair āh-lě-māng*).
8. Il a l'air bon.
9. J'ai rencontré (*rāng-cong-tray*) Mademoiselle B.; elle avait l'air très triste.
10. Il est de très mauvaise humeur.

un officier (*of-szě-syěh*) distingué, Robert was a distinguished officer.

C.) When one substantive is used to qualify another—in the so-called *apposition*—the *indefinite article* must be omitted in French. *Ex* : Berlin, ville d'Allemagne, Berlin, a city of Germany.—Jeanette, fille de monsieur Hachette, Jane, a daughter of Mr. Hachette.

The *indefinitive article* must also be omitted after the word *what*, when used to express *surprise*. *Ex* : What a noise you make ! *Quel bruit vous faites !*—What a man ! *Quel homme !*

11. I am very angry.
12. Don't you think that this gentleman looks like a pedant ?
13. You look very ill indeed. (*Literally* : You have really [*bien*] the look of being ill).
14. He looks severe (*dur*).
15. This German minister looks like a man of the world.

16. I do not like this Irish coachman ; he looks suspicious (*mauvais*).
17. I saw your brother-in-law in the waiting-room of the Northern Station ; he looks very well (*bien portant*).

18. Your sister looks ill ; is anything the matter with her ?
19. How well you are looking ! (*Literally* : What air you have !)
20. He looks healthy. (*Literally* : He has the air of having health [*de la santé*])
21. Why are you so angry ? (*Literally* : Why are you of such [*si*] bad humor ?)
22. Your employer (*patron*) is in (*de*) a very bad humor ; he is very angry (*fâché*) with (*contre*) you.
23. For the past three days (*il y a trois jours que*) our coachman has been very angry (= *is of bad humor*).
24. This young man looks like a good-for-nothing (*a l'air d'un vaurien*).
25. He is not so stupid as (*or*, He is not such a fool as) he looks.
26. How does he look ?

11. Je suis de très mauvaise humeur.
12. Ne pensez-vous pas, que ce monsieur a l'air d'un pé-
dant (*pay-dāng*) ?
13. Vous avez bien la mine (*mēn*, or bien l'air) d'être
malade.
14. Il a l'air dur.
15. Ce ministre allemand a l'air d'un homme du monde
(*deūn-nòm dü mōngd*).
16. Je n'aime pas ce cocher irlandais; il a l'air mauvais.

17. J'ai vu monsieur votre beau-frère à la salle d'attente
de la gare du Nord; il a l'air bien portant (*pör-
tāng*).
18. Mademoiselle votre soeur a l'air malade; a-t-elle
quelque chose (*kēlkē shohs*) ?
19. Quel air vous avez (*kēl lair vou zā-vēh*) !

20. Il a l'air d'avoir de la santé (*sāng-tay*).

21. Pourquoi êtes-vous de si mauvaise humeur ?

22. Votre patron (*pā-trong*) est de très mauvaise humeur ;
il est très fâché (*fā-shay*) contre vous.
23. Il y a trois jours que notre cocher est de très mau-
vaise humeur.
24. Ce jeune homme a l'air d'un vaurien (*sē jeū-nòm āh
lair deūng voh-rēē-aiŋ*).
25. Il n'est pas si stupide (*stū-pēēd*) qu'il en a l'air (*kēēl
āng-nāh lair*).
26. Quelle mine a-t-il (*kēll mēēn nā-tēēl*) ?

27. { He looks happy (or amused [*enjoué*]).
 He looks sad (*triste*).
 He looks contented (*content*).
28. The affairs look well. (The affairs look bad.)
29. How does the matter look (or stand)?
30. You are looking well.
31. She looks angry.
32. This young Englishman looks like a physician.
33. Ah! you take an air of unconsciousness (or you make believe not to know it = Ah! [*allons!*] you give yourself the air of not knowing it).
34. He gives himself the airs of a scholar (*de savant*).
35. Whenever I call on this man, instead of receiving me

1) The irregular verb *aller*, to go, is thus conjugated :

Present.

Je vais* (*vay*).
 tu vas (*vāh*).
 il va (*vāh*).
 nous allons (*sāh-long*).
 vous allez (*sāh-lāh*).
 ils vont (*vong*).

Imperfect.

J'allais.
 tu allais.
 il allait.
 nous allions.
 vous alliez.
 ils allaient.

Preterite.

J'allai.
 tu allas.
 il alla.
 nous allâmes (*sāh-lāhm*).
 vous allâtes (*sāh-lāht*).
 ils allèrent (*sāh-layr*).

Future.

J'irai (*jē-rāh*).
 tu iras (*ē-rāh*).
 il ira (*ē-rāh*).
 nous irons (*sē-rong*).
 vous irez (*sē-rāh*).
 ils iront (*sē-rong*).

Conditional.

J'irais (*jē-ray*).
 tu irais (*ē-ray*).
 il irait (*ē-ray*).
 nous irions (*sē-ryong*).
 vous iriez (*sē-ryēh*).
 ils iraient (*sē ray*).

Perfect.

Je suis allé, I have gone.
 tu es allé, &c.

Pluperfect.

J'étais allé. I had gone.
 tu étais allé, &c.

Subj. Pres.

Que j'aille (*k-jā-yē*).
 que tu ailles (*ā-yē*).
 qu'il aille (*ā-yē*).
 que nous allions (*sāhl-yong*).
 que vous alliez (*sāhl-yēh*).
 qu'ils aillent (*sā-yē*).

Subj. Imperf.

Que j'allasse (*iāh-lās*).
 que tu allasses (*āh-lās*).
 qu'il allât (*āh-lāh*).
 que nous allussions (*sāh-lās-yong*).
 que vous allassiez (*sāh-lās-yēh*).
 qu'ils allassent (*sāh-lās*).

27. { Il a l'air enjoué (*āng-jou-ay*).
 { Il a l'air triste.
 { Il a l'air content (*cong-tāng*).
28. Les affaires *vont* bien. (Les affaires *vont* mal.)
29. Où en est la chose (*ou āng-nay lāh shōhs*) ?
30. Vous avez l'air de vous bien porter.
31. Elle a l'air fâché (*fāh-shay*).
32. Ce jeune anglais a l'air d'un médecin.
33. Allons !¹ vous vous donnez l'air (*or* : Vous faites semblant) de ne pas le savoir (*sā-v'woār*)².
34. Il se donne des airs de savant (*sā-vāng*).
35. Quand je vais voir³ cet homme, au lieu de (*ō lyeū dē*)

Imperative.
 Va (*vāh*).
 allons.
 allez.

Participles.
 Allant.
 allé.

2) The irregular verb **voir** (*v'woār*), to see, is conjugated in the following manner :

Present.
 Je vois (*v'woāh*).
 tu vois.
 il voit.
 nous voyons (*v'woāh-yong*).
 vous voyez (*v'woā-yēh*).
 ils voient (*v'woāh*).

Preterite.
 Je vis (*vēē*).
 tu vis.
 il vit.
 nous vîmes (*vēēm*).
 vous vîtes (*vēēt*).
 ils virent (*vēēr*).

Imperative.
 Vois (*v'woāh*).
 voyons (*v'woā-yong*).
 voyez (*v'woā-yēh*).

Imperfect.
 Je voyais (*v'woā-yay*).
 tu voyais.
 il voyait.
 nous voyions.
 vous voyiez.
 ils voyaient.

Future.
 Je verrai (*vēr-rēh*).
 tu verras (*vēr-rāh*).
 il verra.
 nous verrons.
 vous verrez.
 ils verront (*vēr-rong*).

Participles.
 Voyant (*v'woā-yāng*).
 vu (*vū*).

Observe that to call upon a person is rendered either by **aller voir quelqu'un** or **venir voir quelqu'un**.

pleasantly, he frowns (= When I go to see this man instead of [au lieu de] making me good face [bonne mine], he makes me a bad face [mauvaise mine]).

36. I drink but little wine.

37. Do you want ale? No, thanks, I prefer water.

38. I must first (*d'abord*) drink something.

39. I am dying with thirst.

40. Hand me (*servez-moi*) a glass of wine.

41. I should like to take another glass (*encore un verre*).

1) The irregular verb *faire*, to do, to make, is conjugated in the following manner :

Present.

Je fais (*fay*).
tu fais.
il fait.
nous faisons (*fay-zong*).
vous faites (*fait*).
ils font (*fong*).

Imperfect.

Je faisais.
tu faisais.
il faisait.
nous faisions.
vous faisiez.
ils faisaient.

Preterite.

Je fis (*fëë*).
tu fis (*fëë*).
il fit (*fëë*).
nous fîmes (*fëëm*).
vous fîtes (*fëët*).
ils firent (*fëër*).

Imperative.

Fais.
faisons.
faites.

Future.

Je ferai (*fë-rëh*).
tu feras (*fë-räh*).
il fera (*fë-räh*).
nous ferons (*fë-rong*).
vous ferez (*fë-rëh*).
ils feront (*fë-rong*).

Subj. Pres.

Que je fasse (*fäss*).
que tu fasses.
qu'il fasse.
que nous fassions (*fäss-yong*).
que vous fassiez (*fäss-yëh*).
qu'ils fassent (*fäss*).

Subj. Imperf.

Que je fisse (*fiss*).
que tu fisses.
qu'il fit.
que nous fissions (*fiss-yong*).
que vous fissiez (*fiss-yëh*).
qu'ils fissent (*fiss*).

Participles.

Faisant.
fait.

2) The irregular verb *mourir*, to die, is conjugated :

Present.

Je meurs (<i>meür</i>).	nous mourons (<i>moü-rong</i>).
tu meurs.	vous mourez (<i>moü-rëh</i>).
il meurt.	ils meurent (<i>meür</i>).

me faire¹ bonne mine, il me fait mauvaise mine (*mō-va)ze mēēn*).

36. Je bois peu de vin.

37. Voulez-vous de la bière? Non, merci, je préfère de l'eau.

38. Il faut d'abord que je boive.

39. Je meurs² de soif (*meūr dē s'wōāf*).

40. Servez²-moi un verre de vin (*vaing*).

41. Je boirais bien encore un verre.

Preterite.

Je mourus (*mōū-rū*).
tu mourus.
il mourut.
nous mourûmes (*mōū-rūm*).
vous inourûtes (*mōū-rūt*).
ils moururent (*mōū-rūr*).

Future.

Je mourrai (*mōūr-rēh*).
tu mourras.
il mourra.
nous mourrons.
vous mourrez.
ils mourront.

Subj. Pres.

Que je meure (*meūr*).
que tu meures.
qu'il meure.
que nous mourions (*mōū-ryong*).
que vous mouriez (*mōū-ryēh*).
qu'ils meurent (*meūr*).

Imperative.

Meurs.
mourons.
mourez.

Participles.

Mourant.
mort (*more*).

Se mourir means to be near dying, to be fainting, as: elle se meurt, she is fainting.

3) Servir, to serve, to help to, is thus conjugated :

Present.

Je sers (*sayr*).
tu sers.
il sert (*sayr*).
nous servons (*sēr vong*).
vous servez (*sēr-vēh*).
ils servent (*sēr*).

Preterite.

Je servis (*sēr-vēē*).
tu servis.
il servit.
nous servîmes (*sēr-vēēm*).
vous servîtes (*sēr-vēēt*).
ils servirent (*sēr-vēēr*).

Future.

Je servirai (*sēr-vēē-reh*).
tu serviras.
il servira.

nous servirons (*sēr-vēē-rong*).
vous servirez.
ils serviront.

Participles.

servant (*sēr-vāng*).

servi (*sēr-vēē*).

Se servir, to make use of, and desservir, to clear the table, are conjugated in the same manner.

42. I have the honor of drinking your health and that of your family.
43. That is the best wine which one can drink.
44. He is drinking out of (*dans*) a large glass.
45. He is pouring out something.
46. Pour me out some water.
47. What will you drink with your dinner?
48. Do you drink beer or porter?
49. From preference I take water.
50. Please give me a glass of water; I am dying with thirst.
51. To what can I help you (*or*, What may I offer you)?
52. Do you take soup?
53. Thanks. I will trouble you for a little beef. It looks so nice.
54. Do you like it well done (*bien cuit*) or rare (*peu cuit* = little cooked)?
55. Not too much done, pray.

2.

Phrases used during a Ceremonial Call.

1. Does Mr. N. live here?
2. Is this Mr. N.'s (*or* Does Mr. N. live here)?
3. Is Mr. N. in (*or* within? *or* Is Mr. N. at home)?

1) After the *Superlative* followed by a relative sentence, the *Subjunctive mood* is used when the relative clause expresses the *views* and *opinions* of the subject. *C'est le plus grand des maux que je connaisse*, That is the greatest evil I know. If, however, I wish to represent the thing as *certain* or as a *matter of fact*, the *Indicative* must

42. J'ai l'honneur de boire à votre santé et à celle de toute votre famille (*fah-mēē-yě*).
43. C'est le meilleur vin que l'on puisse¹ boire.
44. Il boit *dans*² un grand verre.
45. Il verse à boire.
46. Versez-moi de l'eau.
47. Que voulez-vous boire à votre dîner (*dēē-nay*).
48. Buvez-vous de la bière ou du porter ?
49. Je prendrai de préférence (*pray-fay-rāngs*) de l'eau.
50. Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, un verre d'eau ; je meurs de soif.
51. Que vous servirai-je ?
52. Prendrez-vous de la soupe, monsieur ?
53. Je vous remercie. Je vous demanderai un peu de boeuf. Il a si bonne mine (*mēēn*).
54. Le voulez-vous bien cuit ou peu cuit (*k'ūēē*) ?
55. Pas trop cuit, s'il vous plaît.

2.

Visite de cérémonie.

1. Monsieur N. demeure-t-il ici (*dē-meūr-tēēl-lēē-sēē*) ?
 { C'est ici (*say tēē-sēē*) chez monsieur N. ?
2. { Est-ce ici (*ays sēē-sēē*) chez monsieur N. ?
3. Monsieur N. est-il chez lui ?

be employed. Ex.: Ce ne sont pas les hommes *les plus riches* qui sont les plus heureux, The richest people are not the happiest.

2) The French say: *boire dans* un (not d'un) verre, to drink out of a glass; *fumer dans* une pipe (*pēēp*), to smoke out of a pipe.

4. Is Mr. N. at home? (*i.e.* for callers).
5. He is not in (*or* He is not at home).
6. Is Mrs. N. also not¹ at home?
7. Yes, Mrs. N. is at home.
8. Will you please tell me your name?

9. Whom shall I announce?
10. Whom have I the honor of announcing?
11. Will you take my card?

12. Please walk in. (Walk in, if you please.)
13. Will you please walk in (*or* Step this way, if you please).
14. Whom have I the honor of addressing (*or* With whom have I the honor)?
15. My name is B.
16. May I *inquire* whom I have the honor of addressing?
[The French say more correctly: May I *know* Puis-je *savoir*?]
17. My name is B.
18. Have I not the honor of addressing Mr. N.?
19. That's my name, sir.

20. { I beg of you, be seated.
 { Sit down, pray.
 { Will you please take a seat?

1) Must be translated thus. Ex.: Are you going to the concert?
—No, I am not going there.—*Neither am I.*—Allez-vous au concert?
—Non, je n'y vais pas.—*Ni moi non plus.*

2) *S'asseoir* (*sās-swoāre*), to sit down.—*Part pres.* s'asseyant (*sās-say-yāng*).—*Part pr.*: assis (*ās sēē*).—*Pres.*: Je m'assieds (*jē mās-syēh*), tu t'assieds, il s'assied, nous nous asseyons (*nōō nōō zās-sēh-yong*), vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.—*Imp.*: Je m'asseyais (*jē mās-sēh-*

4. Monsieur N. est-il visible (*ay-tēil vēē-sēē-bl'*)?
5. Il n'y est pas.
6. Madame n'y est pas non plus?¹
7. Oui monsieur, madame N. est chez_elle.
8. Voudriez-vous me dire votre nom (*nong*) (*or* Votre nom, s'il vous plaît)?
9. Qui annoncerai-je (*kēē ān-nong-sē-ray-jē*)?
10. Qui aurai-je l'honneur d'annoncer (*dān-nong-sēh*)?
11. Veuillez remettre ma carte (*or* Voici ma carte, *or* Remettez ma carte).
12. Veuillez_entrer (*zāng-trēh*) (*or* Entrez, s'il vous plaît).
13. Donnez-vous la peine d'entrer (*dāng-trēh*). [The most usual and polite form.]
14. A qui ai-je l'honneur de parler?
15. Monsieur B. [Must be answered thus.]
16. Puis-je *savoir* à qui j'ai l'honneur de parler?
17. Monsieur B. [Any other answer would be wrong.]
18. { Est-ce_à monsieur N. que j'ai l'honneur de parler?
C'est_à monsieur N. que j'ai l'honneur de parler?
19. Moi-même, monsieur (*or* C'est moi-même). [This is the only way of answering such questions.]
20. { Donnez-vous la peine de vous_asseoir² (*vōō-sās-s'wōāre*).
Veuillez-vous_asseoir.
Asseyez-vous, s'il vous plaît.
-
- yēh*), tu t'asseyais, il s'asseyait, &c.—*Prēt.*: Je m'assis (*jē mā-sēē*), tu t'assis, il s'assit, nous nous assimes (*nōō nōō zās-sēm*), vous vous assistes, ils s'assirent (*ēēl sās-sēēr*).—*Fut.*: Je m'asseierai, tu t'asseieras, il s'asseiera, &c., *or* Je m'assiérai, tu t'assiéras, il s'assiéra, &c.—*Pres. Subj.*: Que je m'asseie, que tu t'asseies, qu'il s'asseie.—*Imperat.*: Assieds-toi (qu'il s'asseie), asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous.

21. *Take a seat* on the sofa. (*Take a seat* on this chair.)
 [*Prendre place* cannot be used without designating some particular article of furniture on which to be seated.]

 3.

22. What can I do for you?
23. How can I be of use to you?
24. I shall be (*je suis*) at your service in a moment.
25. What procures me (*or* To what do I owe) the honor of your visit? [*Of your visit* need not be translated.]
26. Will you grant me a few moments' conversation?
27. I have something to communicate privately (*en particulier*).
28. Can I have the honor of paying my compliments to Mrs. N.?
29. Good morning (*or* Good evening, &c.) [These phrases are used in taking leave.]

1) *Prendre* (*prāng-dr'*), to take.—*Part. pres.*: prenant (*prē-nāng*).—*Part. p.*: pris (*prē*).—*Pres.*: Je prends (*prāng*), tu prends, il prend, nous prenons (*prē-nōng*), vous prenez, ils prennent (*prēn*).—*Imperf.*: Je prenais, tu prenais, il prenait, &c.—*Pret.*: Je pris (*prē*), tu pris, il prit, nous prîmes (*prēm*), vous prîtes, ils prirent (*prēr*).—*Fut.*: Je prendrai (*prāng-drēh*), tu prendras, &c.—*Pres. Subj.*: Que je

21. Prenez¹ place sur le sofa. (Prenez place sur cette chaise.)

3.

22. Qu'y a-t-il pour votre service (*kēē āh-tēēl poūr vōl' sēr-vēs'*)?
23. En quoi puis-je vous être agréable (*āh gray-ābl'*)?
[This phrase is more polite than the preceding one.]
24. Je suis à vos ordres dans un instant (*dāng-zeūng-naing-stāng*).
25. Qu'est-ce qui me procure l'avantage (*kays kēē mē prō-kūr lā-vāng-tāhje*)?
26. Voudriez-vous m'accorder un moment d'entretien (*mō-māng-dāng-tr'-fyaing*)?
27. { J'ai quelque chose à vous dire en particulier (*dēēr āng pār-tēē-cū-lyēh*).
J'aurais à vous parler en particulier.
28. { Pourrais-je présenter mes hommages (*pray-sāng-tēh may zōm-māhje*) à madame N.?
Pourrais-je rendre mes devoirs à Mme. N.?
29. { Je vous salue (*sāh-lū*), monsieur.
J'ai l'honneur de vous saluer.
J'ai l'honneur.

prene (prén), que tu prenes, qu'il prenne, que nous prentons, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent (*kēēl prén*).—*Imperat.*: Prends (*prāng*), prenons, prenez. — *N.B.* Conjugate in the same manner the compounds of *prendre*: *apprendre*, to learn; *rapprendre*, to learn over (or again); *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre* (*āngtr'-prāng-dr'*), to undertake; *surprendre*, to surprise.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

These are:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Celui (<i>s'lü-ēē</i>), <i>Pl.</i> ceux (<i>seū</i>),	celle (<i>cēll</i>), that. celles (<i>cēll</i>), those.
celui-ci (<i>sēē</i>), <i>Pl.</i> ceux-ci (<i>seū-sēē</i>),	celle-ci, this <i>or</i> the latter. celles-ci, these.
celui-là (<i>s'lü-ēē-lāh</i>), <i>Pl.</i> ceux-là (<i>seū-lāh</i>).	celle-là, that (one) <i>or</i> the former. celles-là, those.

Neuter.

ce and cela (abridged ça), that; ceci (*sě-sēē*) this.

Observations.

1. *Ce* has only *one* form for both genders and numbers.
Ex.: *Ce fut mon ami; ce fut mon amie; ce furent mes amis; ce furent mes amies.*

2. *Ce* is frequently used before the third person singular or plural of the auxiliary verb être, and means either *this* or *that*. *C'est* quelque chose que je ne connais pas. That is something (which) I do not know.—*Est-ce* là votre malle? Oui, *c'est* ma malle. Is that your trunk? Yes, that is my trunk. — *Sont-ce* là vos bas? Oui, *ce sont* mes bas. Are these your stockings? Yes, these are my stockings.

3. *Celui-ci celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci*, are translated *this, these, or this one*, etc. These pronouns are used in speaking either of persons or things, when it is necessary to indicate clearly which person or thing is spoken of : This is my hat, *celui-ci est mon chapeau*.

Celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là, are used in the same manner, and must be translated by *that, those, that one*, &c.

4. *Celui-ci, celle-ci, ceci*, point out objects nearest to the speaker, while *celui-là, celle-là, cela*, signify those farthest from him, as : *Voici deux livres; prenez celui-ci*, Charles gardera *celui-là*, here are two books; you take *this one* and Charles will keep *that one*.

5. *Celui, celle, &c.*, must be used instead of *celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, &c.*, before a relative pronoun or preposition. They are then translated very frequently by *the one who, or he who, she who, they who*.

It is my father's (that of my father), *c'est celui de mon père.*

This horse is the one of which I spoke to you, *ce cheval est celui dont je vous ai parlé.*

Translate the following

Examples.

Heureux *celui qui* trouve un vrai ami.—*C'est celui-là qui m'a frappé.* — Voyez-vous ces deux maisons? *Celle-ci qui* a coûté cinquante mille francs, ne vaut pas (*is not worth as much*), *celle-là que* j'ai eue pour la moitié de cette somme. — Voulez-vous *ceci* ou *cela*? — La rose et la tulipe (*tü-léép, tulip*) sont deux fleurs charmantes (*charming flowers*); mais *celle-ci* est sans odeur (*odor*) et *celle-là*

exhale un parfum (*pār-feüng, perfume*) délicieux. C'est surtout (*especially*) à l'état de domesticité (*in a domestic state*) que le chien (*shēē-āing, dog*) et le chat (*shāh, cat*) montrent la différence de leur caractère; celui-ci s'attache à son maître (*master*), celui-là ne s'attache qu'à la maison.

Of Possessive Pronouns.

1. The possessive pronouns are formed from the possessive adjectives *mon, ton, son*, etc. They are:

<i>Le mien (myaing),</i>	<i>la mienne (myèn), mine (my own)</i>
<i>le tien (tyaing),</i>	<i>la tienne, thine.</i>
<i>le sien (syaing),</i>	<i>la sienne, his, hers, its own.</i>
<i>le nôtre (nôtr'),</i>	<i>la nôtre, ours.</i>
<i>le vôtre (vôtr'),</i>	<i>la vôtre, yours.</i>
<i>le leur (leür),</i>	<i>la leur, theirs.</i>

Pl. *les miens, f. les miennes;—les nôtres, les vôtres*, etc.

2. They agree in gender and number with the object possessed: Avez-vous votre billet? Oui, j'ai le *mien*. Have you your ticket? Yes, I have mine. Votre soeur est plus âgée que la mienne, Your sister is older than mine. Mon intention (*aing-tāng-syong*) est aussi bonne que la vôtre, My intention is as good as yours.

Translate the following

Exercise

into French:

1) Have you (any) rooms to let (*à louer*)? Yes, sir, we have several. What kind of (*quelles*) rooms do you want? Do you want a furnished apartment (*un appartement*)

meublé) or an unfurnished one (= or not furnished)? I need (*j'ai besoin de*) furnished rooms.—I would need (*il me faudrait*) four bedrooms, a drawing-room and a kitchen. — 2) Will you be kind enough to walk in (*entrer*). I will (= I am going to) show you the rooms. Here is the parlor. — It is not very large, but it will do (= it can do my business).—You see there is everything you can want, sir (= everything that is necessary, *il faut*). There are four arm-chairs, six chairs, a new carpet, a very nice looking-glass, and some very elegant curtains. Besides (*de plus*) there are some wardrobes. — 3) Let me see the sleeping-rooms, if you please.—Here (*par ici*) sir, please. Let me see (*voyons*) if the bed is good, for that is the main thing (*le principal* = lě praing-sēē-pāhl). As long as (= when, *quand*) I have a good bed, I don't care (*je ne me soucie guère*) for the (*du*) rest. — 4) You cannot wish for a better one, sir. Does this room lie (*donne*) towards the street? — No, sir, towards the garden (*le jardin* = jār-daing).—So much the better (*tant mieux* = tāng m'yeū).—I think the bed is quite good. Now how much do you ask for the five rooms and the kitchen? — 5) I have always let (*loué*) the parlor with one bedroom for twenty francs. You can have the five rooms for forty francs per week. — I think that is a great deal of money (= much money). — But you must consider (*considérer*), sir, that this is one of the most beautiful parts (*quartiers*) of the city, where all the houses rent at a very high figure (= where the houses are of an exorbitant price).—Very well, I will pay you your price, but I need a part of your cellar (*la cave* = kāhv) to put some wood (*du bois*) and coal (*du charbon*). — 6) Of course (*cela va*

sans dire). You shall have a place which can be locked (=locked with a key [*fermée à clef*]), When do you think you will take (= to take) possession (*possession* = pōs-sēs-syong) of your lodgings?—I think to sleep here to-night. — You can come as soon as you like (= as soon as it will please you [*aussitôt qu'il vous plaira*]).

Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Lequel (*lè-kèll*)? Laquelle (*lā-kèll*)?

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N. & Ac.</i>	lequel?	laquelle?	lesquels?	lesquelles?
<i>Gen.</i>	duquel?	de laquelle?	desquels?	desquelles?
<i>Dat.</i>	auquel?	à laquelle?	auxquels?	auxquelles?

This pronoun is used either *without* a noun, or is separated from it by *de*; but it agrees with the noun it refers to in gender and number. When the pronoun *which* (*of*) is used *interrogatively*, it is always expressed by *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., as:

Lequel de ses fils est malade? Which of his sons is ill?
Laquelle de vos soeurs est mariée? Which of your sisters is married?

Voici plusieurs appartements. Lequel choisirez-vous (*lè kèll sh'woā-zēē-rēh-vou*)? Here are several apartments. Which will you choose?

Auquel de ces messieurs avez-vous donné ma lettre? To which of these gentlemen have you given my letter?

2. Qui (*kēē*)? Quoi (*k'wōāh*)? Que (*kē*)?*Masc. and Fem.**Neuter.*

Nom.	<i>Qui</i> , who?	<i>Que, quoi</i> , what?
Gen.	<i>de qui</i> , whose, of whom? from whom?	<i>de quoi</i> , { of what? from what?
Dat.	<i>à qui</i> , to whom, whom?	<i>à quoi</i> , to what, at what?
Acc.	<i>qui</i> , whom?	<i>que, quoi</i> , what?

Remarks.

1. The interrogative pronoun *qui*? is only used of persons. Ex.:

Qui est arrivé? Who has arrived?

Qui est là? Who is there?

De qui parlez-vous? Of whom are you speaking?

A qui est cette malle? To whom does this trunk belong?

Qui cherchez-vous? Whom are you looking for?

2. *Whose*, when used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*. Ex.:

Whose book is this? *à qui est ce livre?*

Whose trunk is this? *à qui est cette malle?*

3. *Quoi, what*, is disjunctive, and is used either by itself, or after a preposition, as:

De quoi parlez-vous? Of what are you speaking?

Quoi! vous êtes marié! What! you are married!

Quoi! il ne veut pas le faire? What! he will not do it?

4. *Que?* what? is *conjunctive*, and is only used before verbs, as :

Que voulez-vous? What do you want?

Que demandez-vous? What do you desire?

*Qu'*avez-vous vu? What have you seen?

*Qu'*avez-vous? What is the matter with you?

Que as an interrogative means *what*, never *whom*.

5. Instead of the simple form *qui?* the form *qui est-ce qui*, *who?* is very frequently used for the Nominative, and *qui est-ce que*, *whom?* for the Accusative (*i.e.*, Objective case).

Qui est-ce qui rit (*rië*)? Who is laughing?

Qui est-ce que vous cherchez? Whom are you looking for?

Qui est-ce qui l'a fait? Who has done it?

Qui est-ce que vous avez-vu? Whom have you seen?

6. Instead of the simple form *que*, *what?* the form *qu'est-ce que?* or even *qu'est-ce que c'est que?* is frequently used, *but only for the Accusative* (Objective case).

Qu'est-ce que vous voulez? What do you want?

Qu'est-ce que vous faites là? What are you doing there?

7. *What—when Nominative*—may be given by *qu'est-ce qui?* It must, however, be always the subject of the sentence and the pupil must be careful not to confound *qui est-ce qui?* *who?* with *qu'est-ce qui*, *what?*

Qu'est-ce qui vous afflige (*āf-flēëje*)? What afflicts you?

Qu'est-ce qui vous étonne? What astonishes you?

Qu'est-ce qui vous manque? What are you missing?

8. Observe the following idiomatic phrases:

- Qu'est-ce que cela (kays-kè sèläh) ?*
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela (kays kè say kè sè-läh) ? } what is that ?
- Qu'est-ce que la vie (vèè) ?*
Qu'est-ce que c'est que la vie ? } what is life ?
- Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau ?*
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a de nouveau ? } what is the news ?

Note.—The interrogative adjective *what*, joined to a noun, is always expressed by *quel*, fem. *quelle*.—*Ex. : Quelle est la difficulté qui vous arrête, what is the difficulty that detains you ?*

Exercise.

Qu'est-ce que¹ vous désirez ? — Qui est-ce qui veut venir ce soir ? — Qui est-ce que je vois ? — À qui avez-vous parlé de cette affaire ? — À qui est-ce que vous avez parlé de cette affaire ? — De qui est-ce que vous parlez ? — Est-ce que vous êtes fatigué, mon cher ami ? — Qu'est-ce qu'il vous a dit ? — Il m'a dit, que vous alliez vous marier (mār-yēh = to get married). — De qui est-ce que vous parliez quand je suis entré ? — Qui avez-vous entendu (zāng-tāng-dü, heard) prêcher (pray-shēh, preach) dimanche dernier ? — Monsieur B.: il a fait un sermon (sēr-mong) très éloquent (tray-zav-lō-kāng). — Qu'allez-vous faire demain matin ? Je vais écrire au négociant (nay-go-zyāng = merchant) de qui je viens de recevoir une lettre. — C'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause.

1) Give the rules why these relative pronouns have been used.

Words.

<i>Couleurs</i> (cōō-leūr) f. pl.	<i>Colors</i>
Une couleur claire,	A light color.
Une couleur foncée (<i>fong-say</i>),	A dark color.
L'incarnat (<i>laing-cār-nāh</i>)m.	The carnation.
L'azur (<i>lā-zūr</i>) m.,	The azure.
blanc, blanche (<i>blāng, blāngsh</i>),	white.
bleu (<i>bleū</i>),	blue.
bleu clair,	light blue.
bleu foncé,	dark blue.
brun (<i>breūng</i>),	brown.
châtain (<i>shā-taing</i>),	chestnut.
cramoisi (<i>crā-m'woā-zēē</i>),	crimson.
écarlate (<i>ay-cār-lāht</i>),	scarlet.
gris (<i>grēē</i>),	grey.
jaune (<i>jone</i>),	yellow.
noire (<i>n'woār</i>),	black.
olive,	olive.
orangé (<i>o-rāng-jay</i>),	orange.
pourpre,	purple.
rouge (<i>rōōje</i>),	red.
roux (<i>rōō</i>),	russet.
vert (<i>vayr</i>),	green.
Le vermillon (<i>vēr-mēē-yong</i>),	The vermilion.
violet (<i>vēē-o-lēh</i>),	violet.

THE
OF
CALIFORNIA

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART XIII.

XIII.

(Continuation.)

1.

30. I beg your pardon (*or* Pardon me) for having disturbed you (*de vous avoir dérangé*).
31. I hope you will pay me another visit shortly. (*Literally* Do me the honor of renewing [*de renouveler*] your visit shortly [*bientôt*]).
32. The honor is mine (*pour moi*).
33. { I am exceedingly honored.
I am exceedingly flattered. [These phrases, which no English-speaking person would use, are commonly employed by the French.]
-

Phrases during a Friendly Call.

1. May I be permitted to enter ?
2. { Do I intrude ?
I hope I don't intrude ?
3. Pray do not let me interrupt you.

XIII.

(Continuation.)

1.

30. Je vous demande pardon (*pār-dōng*), de vous avoir dérangé (*day-rāng-jēh*).
31. Faites-moi l'honneur de renouveler bientôt votre visite (*dě rě-noo-vělēh byaing-tōh votr' vėē-zēēt*).
32. L'honneur est *pour moi*.

33. { *Je me trouve bien honoré.*
 { *Je suis bien flatté.* [Standing phrases.]

Visite familière.

1. Est-il permis d'entrer (*ay-těēl pěr-měē dāng-trēh*)? [Permis *past partic.* of the irregular verb *permettre*. Comp. *mettre* page 352].
2. { Est-ce que je vous dérange (*day-rāng-j'*)?
 { Je vous dérange peut-être (*peū-taytr'*).
 { Je ne vous dérange pas ?
3. { Je vous prie (*prēē*) de ne pas vous déranger (*day-rāng-jēh*).
 { Ne vous dérangez pas, je vous en prie (*jě vou-zāng-prēē*).

4. If I disturb you, I will leave (*je me sauve*) at once.
5. { Not at all.
Not by any means.
Not the least in the world.
6. On the contrary, I am very happy to see you.
7. I am very glad (*or* happy) to see you.
8. You are a stranger (*or* We are glad to see you again at last [*enfin*]).
9. What has become of you?
10. It is an eternity (*un siècle*) since I saw you.
11. It is long since we have heard from you. (*Literally* : that we have not had any news from you [*de vos nouvelles*].)
12. It is long since I have heard from your brother (*de nouvelles de monsieur votre frère*).
13. Have you had any news from him (*de ses nouvelles*)?
14. I shall wait till I hear from you before writing (*Observe* : *de vos nouvelles*).

1) The *Infinitive preceded by de* must be used after the adjective *digne* (*dēen-yē*), worthy of ; *capable* (*cā-pā-bl'*), capable of ; *incapable* (*aing-cā-pā-bl'*), incapable of ; *enchanté, charmé, glad, happy*,—in fact, after most adjectives. (*Adjectives which take the Infinitive with à* will be given later.)

2) These phrases with *nouvelles* (news) cannot be translated literally and must be committed to memory. The *de* is idiomatic.

3) *Ecrire* (*ay-krēēr*), to write.—*Part. pr.*: *écrivant* (*ay-krēē-vāng*).—*Part. p.*: *écrit* (*ay-krēē*).—*Pres.*: *J'écris* (*jay-krēē*), *tu écris*, *il écrit*,

4. Si je vous dérange, je me sauve tout de suite (*jě mě sōv tōōt-sūēēt*).
5. { Pas du tout (*pāh dü tōō*).
Point du tout (*pō-aing dü-tōō*).
Pas le moins du monde.
6. Au contraire (*cōng-trayr*), je suis enchanté (*zāng-shāng-tēh*) de ¹ vous voir.
7. Je suis bien aise (*or* Je suis charmé, *or* Je suis ravi [*rā-vēē*]) de vous voir.
8. { Enfin (*āng-faing*) on vous revoit.
Vous voilà enfin.
9. Que devenez-vous donc? [Comp. *venir*, page 163, No. 1.]
10. Il y a un siècle que je ne vous ai vu. (Comp. page 253, No. 11.)
11. Il y a bien longtemps que nous n'avons eu de vos nouvelles² (*kě noā nā-vong zū dě vōh nou-vēll*).
12. Il y a longtemps que je n'ai eu de nouvelles de monsieur votre frère.
13. Avez-vous eu de ses nouvelles?
14. { J'attendrai de vos nouvelles pour écrire.³
Je n'écrirai pas avant d'avoir de vos nouvelles.

nous écrivons (*nōō-zay-krēē-vong*), vous écrivez, ils écrivent (*ēēl-zay-krēēv*). — *Imperf.*: J'écrivais, tu écrivais, &c. — *Pret.*: J'écrivis (*jay-krēē-vēē*), tu écrivis, il écrivit, &c. — *Fut.*: J'écrirai (*jay-krēē-rēh*), tu écriras, il écrira, nous écrirons, &c. — *Pres. Subj.*: Que j'écrive (*kě jay-krēēv*), que tu écrives, qu'il écrive, &c. — *Imperat.*: Ecris, écrivons, écrivez. — *N.B.* Thus are conjugated: *Décrire*, to describe; *circonscrire* (*cīr-kong-skrēēr*), to circumscribe; *inscrire* (*aing-skrēēr*), to inscribe; *prescrire*, to prescribe, to order; *récrire*, to write again, to reply; *souscrire* (*sōō-skrēēr*), to subscribe; *transcrire* (*trāngs-krēēr*), to transcribe.

15. { You are quite a stranger.
 { You have become quite a stranger.
16. And how are you? [It is impossible to put these overpolite French phrases into common-sense English.]
17. I am glad to see you. (*Literally* : Be welcome.)
18. It is very kind of you (*de* votre part *or* à vous) to call upon me.
19. I am so glad (*que je suis content*) to see you at last (*enfin*).
20. My father will be particularly glad ¹⁾ to see you.
21. My mother will be very glad.
22. And my cousin too.
23. But pray be seated.
24. Don't you prefer (*or* Would you not rather sit ²⁾ on) the sofa?
25. Thanks, I have but little time; I cannot sit down.
26. Thanks, I am ³⁾ very well here.
27. I must go now.
28. Why are you in such haste?

1) If a noun is specially emphasized, *c'est qui* must be used with the *subject* of a *sentence*.—*Ex.*: *C'est* votre soeur *qui* m'a vu, *Your sister* saw me.—*C'est* votre patron *qui* l'a envoyé, *Your employer* sent it.—Before other members of sentences *c'est que* must be employed. *Ex.*: *C'est* à votre mère *que* j'ai donné ce billet, I gave this ticket *to your mother*. *C'est* hier *que* je le lui ai donné, I gave it to him *yesterday*.

2) *Mettre*, to put, to place. *Part. pres.* : mettant. — *Part. p.* : mis (*mêé*). — *Pres.* : Je mets (*may*), tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent (*mêt*).—*Imperf.* : Je mettais, tu mettais, &c.—*Preter.* : Je mis (*mêé*), tu mis, il mit, nous mîmes (*mêém*), vous mîtes, ils mirent (*mêér*).—*Fut.* : Je mettrai, tu mettras, &c.—*Pres. Subj.* : Que je mette, que tu mettes, qu'il mette, &c.—*Imperf. Subj.* : Que je misse (*mîss*), que tu misses, qu'il mit (*mêé*), &c.—Thus : *Admettre*, to

15. { Vous devenez rare (*râhr*).
 { On ne vous voit plus.
 { On vous voit rarement (*râh-rě-mâng*).
16. Permettez-moi de vous demander (*dě-mâng-děh*) des nouvelles de votre santé (*sâng-tay*).
17. { Soyez *le* bienvenu (*byaing vě-nü*) [to a gentleman].
 { Soyez *la* bienvenue [to a lady].
18. C'est bien aimable *de votre part* (or C'est bien aimable *à vous*) de venir me voir.
19. **Que** je suis content (*cong-tâng*) de vous revoir enfin (*âng-faing*).
20. C'est mon père¹ qui sera content de vous revoir.
21. Que ma mère sera contente (*công-tângt*).
22. Et mon cousin donc (*kôô-zaing dong*).
23. Mais *asseyez-vous* donc, je vous prie.
24. N'aimez-vous pas mieux vous *mettre*² sur le sofa ?
25. Merci, j'ai peu de temps, je ne m'assiérai pas.
26. Merci, *je suis*³ très-bien ici.
27. Il faut que je m'en aille⁴ maintenant.
28. Etes-vous donc si pressé ?

admit ; *commettre*, to commit ; *démètre*, to turn out ; *omettre*, to omit ; *permettre*, to permit, to allow ; *promettre*, to promise ; *compromettre* (*cong-pro-mêtr*), to compromise, to expose ; *remettre*, to replace, to hand over ; *soumettre* (*sôô-mêtr*), to submit ; *transmettre* (*trângs-mêtr*), to transmit.

N.B.—*Se mettre à* signifies *to begin*, as Il se mit à pleurer, he began to cry.

N.B.—*Mettre* signifies frequently *to sit down*, to be seated when the place where one sits down is either given or self-understood.

3) *Etre* signifies often *to sit down* or *to stand*, especially when the place is understood. *Ex.*: Was he *sitting down* or did he stand ? Etait-il assis ou debout (*dě-bôô*) ?—He stood, Il était debout.—Where, où donc ?—*He was standing at the window, il était à la fenêtre.*

4) Compare page 314.

29. I do not like leaving you, but I really must be off.
(Literally : I leave you [*je vous quitte*] with [*d*] regret, but it really [*absolument*] must be.)
30. Call soon again.
31. Don't be such a stranger.
32. Call again (= another time [*une autre fois*]).
33. You will do me a great favor (or You will confer a great favor upon me) by calling soon.
34. My regards to all at home, if you please (or Remember me to all at home, please).

2.

When he came to get your letters.

When

he came ¹to seek ; to search ; to look for ²

your (pl.)

letters.

1) The following *intransitive verbs* must always be conjugated with *être* :

Aller, to go.*venir*, to come.*devenir*, to become.*intervenir* (*aing-tër-vê-nêr*), to intervene.*parvenir*, to attain, to reach.

revenir, } to come back, to re-

retourner, } turn.

tomber (*tong-bêh*) to fall.Arriver (*âr-rêê-vêh*), to arrive.

partir pour, to start for, to leave for.

entrer (*âng trêh*), to enter.

sortir, to go out.

mourir (*mou-rêêr*), } to die.

décéder,

naître, to be born.

As : Je suis allé ; je suis tombé ; il est parti ; nous sommes arrivés, &c.

2) The *Infinitive without preposition* is used :

a) after *v. rbs of motion*, as *aller*, *venir*, *courir*, and *envoyer*.

29. Je vous quitte à regret, mais il le faut absolument
(*jě vōō kīt tāh rě-gray may zēēl lě foh tāb-so-lü-māng*).
30. Revenez-nous bientôt.
31. Ne soyez pas si rare (*rāhr*). [Must be translated thus.]
32. Venez-nous voir une autre fois (*fō-āh*).
33. Vous nous ferez grand plaisir si vous veniez nous
voir une autre fois.
24. Mes compliments (*cong-plēē-māng*) chez vous, s'il vous
plaît.

2.

Lorsqu'il est venu chercher vos lettres.

lors *kēēl* ay *vě-nü* *shěr-shēh* *vō* *lēttr'*.

Lorsque (*lorsk*)

il est venu ¹ (*ēēl lay vēnū*)

chercher ² (*shěr-shēh*)

vos (*vō*) (pl.)

lettres (*lettr'*) (pl.)

(Observe that *aller chercher* means to fetch, to get; *aller trouver*, to look for; *aller voir*, to pay a call; *venir chercher* or *prendre*, to call for; *envoyer chercher*, to send for.)

b) after verbs that denote a perception of the senses as *entendre* (*āng-tāng-dr*), *voir* (*vō-ār*), *sentir* (*sāng-tēer*). Ex.: Je l'entends venir, I hear him coming.

c) The simple Infinitive is governed further by the verbs: *aimer*, when used in the Conditional, i.e. *j'aimerais*, *I should like*; *préférer*, to prefer; *il vaut mieux*, it is better. Ex.:

J'aimerais le voir, I should like to see him.

Il vaut mieux céder, It is better to yield.

Je préfère rester à la maison, I prefer staying at home.

Note. When, however, in the second member of a comparison, a second Infinitive follows que, this latter must take *de* before it. Ex.:

J'aime mieux mourir que de trahir mon secret (*sě-cray*),

I will rather die than betray my secret.

1. I am very thirsty; will you please give me something to drink?
2. There is no more wine in the bottle; I must go into the cellar (*la cave*).
3. That is not worth while; give me some water (*only*).
4. That in the pitcher (*de la carafe*) is not fresh; I am going to get some more (*d'autre*).
5. Some one has rung, Pauline; go and open² the door.
6. Will you please go and tell Mr. B. that the gentleman is waiting for him (*l'attend*)?
7. Where are you going to pass your vacation this year?
8. I don't know yet; perhaps I shall go to³ France.
9. Well, how do you do this morning?
10. I am much better, thank you.
11. You ought⁴ to get up; we would like to (*nous irions*) take a walk (*faire un tour*).
12. I have a good mind (*J'ai encore envie*) to sleep⁶ a little longer (=yet).
13. In that case (*or Then*) I am going to take a walk by myself (*tout seul*).

1) Some of the following sentences are taken from *Le Page, 'L'Echo de Paris'* (London, 48th edition), edited in Germany by Dr. Fließbach, and reproduced in America from the London edition, but without acknowledgment.

2) *Ouvrir*, to open.—*Part. pr.* : ouvrant.—*Part. p.* : ouvert.—*Pres.* : J'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre, nous ouvrons, vous ouvrez, ils ouvrent.—*Prët.* : J'ouvris, &c.—*Fut.* : J'ouvrirai, &c.—*Imperat.* : Ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

3) *Aller* is followed by *à* when one travels to *towns*, but by *en* when reference is made to *countries*, as: Je vais à Paris; but Je vais en France; Je vais en Angleterre.

4) *Devoir*, to owe (ought to).—*Part. pr.* : devant.—*Part. p.* : dû.—

1. J'ai bien soif ; voulez-vous, s'il vous plaît, me donner à boire ¹ (*bô-âre*) ?
2. Il n'y a plus de vin dans la bouteille (*boû-tây-yě*), il faut que j'aille à la cave (*kāhv*).
3. Ce n'est pas la peine (*pain*) ; donnez-moi de l'eau seulement (*seül-māng*).
4. Celle de la carafe (*kā-rāf*) n'est pas fraîche : je vais en aller chercher d'autre.
5. On a sonné Pauline ; allez donc ouvrir ² la porte.
6. Voulez-vous aller dire à monsieur B., que monsieur l'attend (*lā-tāng*) ?
7. Où irez-vous passer vos vacances cette année ?
8. Je ne sais pas encore ; j'irai peut-être en ³ France (*āng frāngs*).
9. Eh bien, comment ça va-t-il ce matin ?
10. Ça va mieux, je vous remercie.
11. Vous devriez ⁴ vous lever ; nous irions faire un tour (*tōōr*).
12. J'ai encore envie (*rāng-věē*) de dormir.⁵
13. En ce cas-là, j'irai me promener tout seul.

Pres. : Je dois (*dwoāh*), tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent (*dwoāhv*).—*Imperf.* : Je devais, &c.—*Pret.* : Je dus (*dū*), tu dus, il dut, nous dûtes, vous dûtes, ils durent (*dūr*).—*Fut.* : Je devrai, tu devras, il devra, &c.—*Condit.* : Je devrais, tu devrais, il devrait, nous devrions, &c.—*Subj. Pres.* : Que je doive, que tu doives, qu'il doive, &c.—*Subj. Imp.* : Que je dusse.—*Je dois*, followed by a verb, corresponds to our *I am to*, *I must*, while the Conditional, *Je devrais*, signifies *I ought to*, *I should*.

5) *Dormir*, to sleep.—*Part. pr.* : dormant.—*Part. p.* : dormi (*dor-měē*).—*Pres.* : Je dors, tu dors, il dort, nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment (*dorm*).—*Pret.* : Je dormis (*dor-měē*), &c.—*Subj.* : Que je dorme.

14. Do you know¹ Mr. B. ? [*To know* = *to be personally acquainted with*, must always be given by *connaître*, never by *savoir*.]
15. Yes, very well ; we have been school-fellows.
16. They say (*or* People say) he is going to get married.
17. If any one should come² to inquire for me, porter, you'll please say that I have gone to the exposition (*au palais de l'exposition*).
18. If any one should call [*i.e.* to inquire for me], please say that I shall be back about 9 o'clock.
19. Please tell all callers that they must come before 10 o'clock in the morning. (*Literally*: Will you please tell to all persons, who should come [*qui viendront*] to inquire for me, to come, &c.)
20. If Mr. B. should come, tell him, that I could not wait for him any longer (*plus longtemps*).
21. If the tailor should come with my coat (= to bring my coat), tell him that he must call again (*repasser*) to-morrow morning.
22. Did any one call during my absence?
23. I must reproach you (= I have some reproaches to make to you).
24. Why so? — Because you have not yet called upon us since we moved (*depuis que nous sommes délogés*).

1) *Connaître*, to know.—*Part. pr.*: *connaissant*.—*Part. p.*: *connu*.—*Pres.*: Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, &c.—*Impef.*: Je connaissais, &c.—*Pret.*: Je connus, &c.—*Fut.*: Je connaîtrai, &c.—Thus: *Méconnaître*, to mistake, not to acknowledge; *reconnaître*, to recognize, to know again.

14. Connaissez-vous¹ monsieur B. ?
15. Oui, très bien ; nous[^]avons[^]été camarades d'école.
16. On dit qu'il va se marier (*mār-yēh*).
17. Concierge (*kong-syērje*), si² l'on vient me demander, vous direz que je suis[^]allé au palais (*pā-lay*) de l'exposition (*lěx-pō-zēē-syong*).
18. Si quelqu'un vient (*or* venait) me demander, dites, s'il vous plaît, que je rentrerai vers neuf[^]heures.
19. Veuillez dire à toutes les personnes qui viendront me demander (*kēē-vyaing-drong mē dē-māng-dēh*) de venir avant dix[^]heures du matin.
20. Si monsieur B. venait, dites-lui que je n'ai pu l'attendre plus longtemps (*lāt-tāng-dr' plü long-tāng*).
21. Si le tailleur venait m'apporter mon[^]habit, dites-lui qu'il faut repasser demain matin.
22. Est-on venu me demander pendant mon[^]absence (*pāng-dāng mōn-nāb-sāngs*) ?
23. J'ai des reproches (*rě-prōsh*) à vous faire.
24. Pourquoi donc ?—Parce que vous n'êtes pas[^]encore venu nous voir depuis que nous sommes délogés.

2) After *si, if*, the *Present, Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* must always follow (but *never* the *Future* or *Conditional*), while in the main sentence the *Conditional* must be employed, as: *Si vous veniez me voir, vous seriez bien reçu.* You would be received well, if you were to come to see me.

25. If you wish to behave amiably, you would come to dine with us on Friday next.
26. Would you do me the favor to accompany me after breakfast to make some purchases (*or* to do some shopping)?
27. Please send¹ the laundress to me one of these days.
28. I am going (*j'irai*) to see her to-night and I can tell her to call upon you to-morrow morning.
29. Will you come and take a walk (*vous promener*)?
30. I come to bid you good-bye.
31. What ! are you going to leave us (*nous quitter*)?
32. Yes, I am going to London to seek a place.
33. Please don't go yet ; breakfast will be served at once.
34. I have come (=I am coming) to take you with me.
35. To go where?
36. To come with me to the Museum, to look at the new pictures.
37. What is the news?
38. Didn't you read² the paper this morning? It is said (*or* reported) we are going to war with England (*nous allons avoir la guerre avec l'Angleterre*).

1) *Envoyer*, to send.— *Part. pr.* : envoyant.— *Part. p.* : envoyé.— *Pres.* : J'envoie (*jāng vō-āk*), tu envoies, il envoie. nous envoyons, vous envoyez, ils envoient.— *Imperf.* : J'envoyais.— *Pret.* : J'envoyai. *Fut.* : J'enverrai (*jāng-vēr-rēk*), tu enverras, il enverra, nous enverrons, vous enverrez, ils enverront.— *Condit.* : J'enverrais.

25. Si vous étiez bien aimable, vous viendriez dîner avec nous vendredi prochain (*vāng-drě-děe prō-shaing*).
26. Voudriez-vous me faire le plaisir de venir avec moi après le déjeuner, faire des emplettes ?
27. Envoyez-moi¹ donc la blanchisseuse ces jours-ci.
28. J'irai la voir ce soir, et je peux lui dire de venir vous parler demain matin.
29. Voulez-vous venir vous promener ?
30. Je viens vous faire mes adieux (*may zā-dyeū*).
31. Comment ? est-ce que vous allez nous quitter (*kit-těh*) ?
32. Oui, je vais à Londres chercher une place (*plāhs*).
33. Ne vous en allez donc pas ; on va servir le déjeuner tout de suite.
34. Je viens vous chercher.
35. Pour aller où donc ?
36. Pour venir avec moi au Musée (*mū-zay*) voir les nouveaux tableaux (*nōō-vō tā-blō*).
37. Qu'est-ce qu'il y a de nouveau ?
38. Vous n'avez pas lu² le journal ce matin ? On dit que nous allons avoir la guerre avec l'Angleterre (*lāng-glě-těr*).

2) Lire (*lěer*), to read — *Part. pr.* : lisant (*lěe zāng*). — *Part. p.* : lu — *Pres.* : Je lis (*lěe*), tu lis, il lit, nous lisons (*lěe-zong*), vous lisez, ils lisent (*lěe*). — *Pret.* : Je lus, tu lus, il lut, nous lûmes, vous lûtes, &c. — *Fut.* : Je lirai (*lěe-rěh*), tu liras, il lira (*lěe rāh*), &c. — *Imperf.* *Subj.* : Que je lusse.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

*Exercises and Words used in Common Conversation.***Exercise.**

Does Mr. N. live in this house?—No, sir, I do not know this gentleman. — But isn't this No. 68 (= Is not this then here [*ce n'est d'nc pas ici*] No. 68)?—Certainly, sir. — Then he must have moved (= it is necessary then that he *have* moved [*déménagé*]).—A person of this name has never lived in this house since I have been here (= Never [*jamais*] a person of this name has not [*n'a*] lived in the house since [*depuis que*] I here [*y*] am). — Is Mr. N. at home? — I am not sure of it (*en*). He usually (*d'habitude*) does not go out till noon (= he only [*ne—que*] goes out [*sort*] at noon). — Mr. N. is not at home any more (not any more = [*ne-plus*]). — He has just gone out (= He comes from going out).—Can't you tell me when *he will come home* (*il rentrera*)? — I really cannot tell you. — Will you please give him this card? — Yes, sir, with pleasure. — But do not forget it; *I am very anxious that* (*je tiens à ce que*) Mr. N. *should know* (*sache*) that I have called on him (=That I have [*suis*] come *in order to* [*pour*] see him). — He shall have it as soon as he comes in (= He shall have it on [*en*] re-entering [*rentrant*]). — Is this Mr. N.'s? — Yes, sir, but master cannot be seen. — Tell him that a stranger is here who is going to leave in a few days (= Tell him that it is [*c'est*] a stranger who leaves

[*part*] in several days). — I'll see, but I do not believe that Mr. N. can (*puisse*) receive (*recevoir*) you. — Whom have I the honor of announcing? — Mr. B. — *My master* (*monsieur*) is very sorry (=regrets very much, *infiniment*), but he is not well and cannot receive any one. — Then (*en ce cas*) give him (= you will give him) this letter which I was charged to put (*remettre*) in his own hands (*en main propre*).

Exercise.

Will you please give me my key (*ma clef*)? It is Number 22.—Here, sir (*la voici, monsieur*); don't forget your candle (*votre bougie*=*boū-jēē*).—Will you please give me some matches (*quelques allumettes*)? — You are going to leave to-morrow, sir? — Yes; *I have just come home* (*je rentre*) to pack my trunk (*faire ma malle*) — You are wrong, sir; you ought to stay a fortnight longer (= *encore*).—At what o'clock do you leave? — The train leaves at 7 A.M. (*du matin*). You must order a cab for 6 o'clock. — Have you had the kindness to make up my bill for (*de*) last week (*la semaine dernière*)? — Yes, sir, I am just about (*je suis en train*) finishing it. Here it is. — Thanks, will you please see (*regarder*) if this is all right (*si c'est bien* or *si cela fait bien votre compte*)? — That's all right (*c'est cela même*), sir, thank you. Allow me to receipt (*acquitter*) your bill and to put (*mettre*) a stamp (*un timbre*) on it (*y*). — May I (*puis-je*) hope that you will recommend my hotel to your countrymen?—With the greatest pleasure.—I shall be greatly obliged to you, sir.

Relative Pronouns.

The interrogative pronouns *qui*, *quoi*, and *lequel* serve also as *relative pronouns*. The declension of *quoi* and *lequel* has been given. That of *qui*, when relative, differs from the interrogative *qui*.

Sing. and Plur. Masc. and Fem.

Nom. *Qui*, who, which, that.

Gen. **de qui** and **dont**, whose, of (from) whom, of which.

Dat. *à qui*, to whom.

Acc. *que*, whom, which, that.

1. *Who*, *which*, and *that* are rendered by **qui**, when they are in the *Nominative* case, whether they refer to persons or things, both for the singular and plural.

L'employé **qui** a écrit cette lettre, n'est pas ici.

The clerk who wrote this letter is not here.

Passez-moi le plat **qui** est sur la table.

Hand me the dish which is on the table.

Les hommes **qui** l'ont dit, sont partis hier soir.

The men who said it left last night.

2. The same pronouns—when in the *Accusative*—*whom*, *which*, *that*, are rendered by **que**.

Est-ce là le chapeau neuf **que** vous avez acheté ?

Is that the new hat which you have bought ?

La leçon **que** vous m'avez donnée, est très difficile.

The task which you have given me is very difficult.

Observe that *the French must always express the relative pronoun*, though we frequently omit it.

3. **Dont**, *whose, of which*, is used for persons and things of both genders and numbers.

Voici la dame **dont** je vous ai parlé.

Here is the lady of whom I spoke to you.

C'est le monsieur **dont** il a acheté le cheval.

That is the gentleman whose horse he bought.

C'est une maladie **dont** on ne connaît point la cause.

That is an illness the cause of which is unknown.

Est-ce là le jardin **dont** vous m'avez parlé ?

Is that the garden of which you spoke to me ?

4. *The Genitive de qui* (both singular and plural) and the *Dative à qui, to whom*, are used only when referring to persons.¹

Le négociant **de qui** j'ai reçu ces échantillons, vient de faire banqueroute.

The merchant from whom I received these patterns has just become bankrupt.

Voilà le monsieur **à qui** j'ai donné votre lettre.

There is the gentleman to whom I gave your letter.

When, however, *animals* or *inanimate objects* are spoken of, *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, or auxquelles*, must be used.

Tel est le bonheur *auquel* j'aspire (*jās-pēēr*).

Such is the fortune to which I aspire.

C'est le chien *auquel* j'ai donné à manger.

That is the dog which I fed (=to which I gave to eat).

C'est une occasion *à laquelle* je ne pensais pas.

That is an occasion I did not think of.

1) *Qui* is mostly used after prepositions when persons are referred to ; but after *entre*, between, and *parmi* (*pār-mēē*), among, we must always write *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, whether persons or things are spoken of.

Les sciences (*sēē-āngs*) auxquelles je m'intéresse.

The sciences in which I am interested.

5. *Difference between dont, de qui, and the genitives of lequel.*

Dont is used when it is governed by a noun which stands either in the *Nominative* or *Accusative* case, as :

Voici le monsieur **dont** je vous ai parlé.

There is the gentleman of whom I spoke to you.

Voilà une fleur **dont** la forme est très curieuse.

There is a flower whose form is very strange.

La dame **dont** vous voyez le portrait, est à présent à Berlin.

The lady whose portrait you see is at present in Berlin.

Le monsieur **dont** j'instruis les enfants, est très riche.

The gentleman whose children I instruct is very rich.

But **de qui** or **duquel, de laquelle**, &c., must be employed when the *noun* which follows *whose* is in *any other case than the Nominative or Accusative* or is governed by a *preposition*. (*De qui* refers only to persons, while *duquel, de laquelle, &c.*, may be used both for persons and for things), as :

Les amis **sur qui** vous comptez, vous abandonneront.

The friends on whom you count will forsake you.

C'est un homme à la discrétion **de qui** vous pouvez vous fier.

He is a man to whose discretion you may trust.

J'honore cet homme aux bontés **duquel** (or **de qui**) je dois ma fortune.

I honor this man, to whose kindness I owe my fortune.

C'est un régiment (*ray-jē-māng*) à la valeur **duquel** l'ennemi n'a pu résister.

That's a regiment whose valor the enemy has been unable to resist.

C'est un jeune homme sur la parole **de qui** (or **duquel**) on ne peut pas compter.

That is a young man upon whose word one cannot rely.

6. *Lequel, laquelle, &c.*, are used after prepositions when reference is made to things, while *qui* must be employed when persons are referred to. *Ex.* :

Voilà le banc *sur lequel* je me suis assis.

Here is the bench on which I sat.

C'est une condition (*kong dēē-syong*) **sans laquelle** il ne veut rien faire.

That is a condition without which he will do nothing.

But :

Le marchand *avec qui*¹ j'ai voyagé, est mort.

The merchant with whom I travelled is dead.

7. *Lequel, laquelle, &c.*, must be used instead of *qui* or *que*, when by the use of the two latter pronouns an ambiguity might arise. As :

La tante de mon ami *laquelle* demeure à Londres.

My friend's aunt who lives in London.

(*qui* demeure à Londres, would mean : The aunt of my friend who is living in London, and would signify that the friend lives in London.)

J'ai vu le cocher de votre cousine, **lequel** viendra vous voir.

I have seen your cousin's coachman, who will call on you.

1) *Qui* always remains unchanged, even before a vowel or *h voyelle*, as : L'homme *qui* arrive ;—à *qui* il parle ;—à *qui* elle pense ;—de *qui* on se plaint.

8. Such expressions as *he who, she who, they who, those who* must be rendered by *celui qui, celle qui* (fem.); *ceux qui* (pl. m.); *celles qui* (pl. f.). *Ex. :*

Celui qui est content, est riche.

He who is contented is rich.

Je l'enverrai à **celle que** j'aime le mieux.

I will send it to her whom I love best.

Je parle de **celui que** nous avons vu chez le médecin allemand.

I speak of the one that we saw at the German physician's.

J'ai donné le livre à **celle qui** a trouvé la clef avec laquelle votre soeur a ouvert la porte.

I gave the book to that one who found the key with which your sister opened the door.

9. *That which or what*, meaning really '*that thing which,*' is rendered by **ce qui** for the Nominative, and **ce que** for the Accusative.—*All that* is rendered by **tout ce qui** for the Nominative, and **tout ce que** for the Accusative. *Ex. :*

Aimez **tout ce qui** est bon et beau.

Love all that (*or* everything which) is good and beautiful.

Faites **ce que** je vous dis.

Do what I tell you.

Ce qui est beau n'est pas toujours bon.

What is beautiful is not always good.

10. Proverbs and general statements usually commence with *Qui, whoever*. *Ex. :*

Qui sert les malheureux sert la divinité.

Whoever helps unhappy persons helps Providence.

Qui casse les verres, les paie.

Who breaks (the glasses), pays (for them).

11. *Quoi, what*, is only used after prepositions referring to a whole sentence, or to *voilà, voici, ce, rien*.

Voilà de quoi il m'a entretenu.

That is what he entertained me with.

Je sais *à quoi* vous pensez.

I know what you are thinking of.

C'est *à quoi* je pense le moins.

This is a thing of which I think least.

À quoi vous vous fiez, est très incertain.

What you trust to is very uncertain.

Je ne sais **à quoi** il s'occupe.

I do not know what he is engaged in.

Quoi! n'est-ce que cela ?

What! is that all ?

De **quoi** s'agit-il là ?

What is the matter there ?

À quoi s'occupe-t-il ?

What is he occupied with ?

Il faut qu'il signe (*sēēn-yě*) le contrat; **sans quoi** il sera nul.

He must sign this contract; otherwise it will be void.

Avez-vous de **quoi** payer ces factures ?

Have you enough to pay for these bills ?

Il n'a pas **de quoi** vivre.

He has not wherewith to live.

À quoi bon de sortir par ce temps ?

What is the good of going out in such weather ?

Après quoi after which.—*Sans quoi*, without which, otherwise.

Exercise.

You have apartments to let (*à louer*)?—Yes, sir, I have two; one furnished, the other unfurnished. Which of the two do you desire to see?—I do not know yet whether I shall buy furniture or not (*si je me mettrai dans mes meubles ou non*).—In that case, see them both (*les deux*). The unfurnished apartment is on the first floor, the other is on the second.—What is the rent (*le prix du loyer*)?—That is very dear.—Please to remember (*veuillez remarquer*) that the apartment is newly decorated (*fraîchement décoré*), and that there are looking-glasses over (*sur*) every mantel-piece.—Will you have the goodness to show me the second floor?—Here is the room; *will you please* (*donnez-vous la peine*) step in?—It is not large, but it is very neat (*propre*) and light.—The furniture is mahogany (*en acajou*), sir.—The paper is simple, but quite new (*frais*).—What do you ask for this room?—That depends (*cela dépend*). Will you take it *by the day* (*au jour*) or by the month (*au mois*)?—As I don't know yet *how long* (*combien de temps*) I shall stay (*je resterai*) in Paris, I prefer to hire it by the day.—That would be (*then, alors*) four francs per day (*par jour*). That seems (*semble*) to me rather (*assez*) dear.—Oh no, sir, you know that *everything* (*tout*) has grown dear (*a renchéri*) in Paris.—The price of rents (*des loyers*) has *about* (*à peu près*) doubled.—Take this room by the month and *I will let you have it* (*je vous la laisserai*) for one hundred francs.—That is quite a reduction (= a considerable reduction, *une diminution* [or *un rabais*] *considérable*) which I am offering you. — Very well, I'll take the room.

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART XIV.

XIV.

(Continuation.)

1.

1. Where is Mr. B. ?
2. He has just gone out (*Il vient de¹ sortir²*), but for a moment only ; he will be back (*il va rentrer*) immediately.
3. The postman has just brought a letter à you.
4. I have just observed (*Je viens de m'apercevoir²*) that there is no blind to my window.
5. I have just invited Mr. N. to dinner.
6. I have just received³ this telegram, and I hope its contents will be satisfactory to you.
7. I have just received a letter from Mme. de N. announcing (*qui m'annonce*) the death of her father.
8. My brother has just sold his furniture. Did I tell you that he is going to live in the country ?
9. My sisters have just taken their places in the mail-coach ; they are going to leave (*partir⁴*) to-morrow evening at six o'clock.

1) *Venir de*, with an Infinitive, corresponds to the English *to have just*, as : *Je viens d'arriver, I have just arrived.*—*Nous venons de le voir, We have just seen him.* In order that the student may get thoroughly familiar with the different constructions of *venir*, I repeat here the examples of *venir de* as given in a former lesson.

2) *Sortir*, to go out.—Is conjugated in the same manner as *servir* ; compare page 304, Note 1.—*Part. pr.* : *sortant*.—*Part. p.* : *sorti*.—*Pres.* : *Je sors (sôr), tu sors, il sort, nous sortons, vous sortez, ils sortent.*—*Pret.* : *Je sortis (sor-tîc).*—*Fut.* : *Je sortirai.*—*Subj.* : *Que je sorte.*

XIV.

(Continuation.)

1.

1. Où est monsieur B. ?
2. Il vient de¹ sortir,² mais pour un moment seulement ; il va rentrer tout-à-l'heure.
3. Le facteur vient d'apporter une lettre pour vous.
4. Je viens de m'apercevoir³ qu'il n'y a pas de store à ma croisée (*krô-âh-zay*).
5. Je viens d'inviter (*daing-vêê-têh*) monsieur N. à dîner (*dêê-nêh*).
6. Je viens de recevoir³ ce télégramme et j'espère que son contenu (*kong-tê-nü*) vous satisfera.
7. Je viens de recevoir une lettre de Mme. de N. qui m'annonce la mort (*mân-nongs lâ môr*) de son père.
8. Mon frère vient de vendre son mobilier (*vâng-dr song mô-bêê-lyêh*). Vous-ai-je dit qu'il va demeurer à la campagne (*kâng-pân-yê*) ?
9. Mes soeurs viennent (*vyên*) d'arrêter leurs places à la diligence (*plâhs âh lâh dêê-lêê-jângs*) ; elles vont partir⁴ demain soir à six heures.

3) *Apercevoir*, to perceive, is conjugated = *recevoir*, to receive. — *Part. pr.* : recevant. — *Part. p.* : reçu. — *Pres.* : Je reçois (*rê-swoâh*), tu reçois, il reçoit, nous recevons, vous recevez, ils reçoivent (*rê-swoâhv*). — *Pret.* : Je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut, nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçurent. — *Fut.* : Je recevrai, tu recevras, il recevra, &c. — Thus also : *Concevoir*, to conceive ; *décevoir*, to deceive.

4) *Partir pour*, to set out, to leave for. — *Part. pr.* : partant. — *Part. p.* : parti (*pâr-têê*). — *Pres.* : Je pars (*pâr*), tu pars, il part, nous partons, vous partez, &c., as *servir*. Comp. page 304. — *Perf.* : Je suis parti.

10. It has just struck nine.
11. It is just going to strike nine.
12. May I offer¹ you something to drink, madame?
13. I thank you very much, I have just had something.

14. Is it long since you saw Mr. D.?
15. I have just met him.
16. Is Mrs. L. at home?—No, madam, she has just gone out.
17. Then (*en ce cas*) I'll come back in an hour.
18. I have just seen Mr. T.
19. Does he get on well in his business?
20. Yes, his business goes very well.
21. Have you called on Mrs. B.?
22. I have been to her house, but did not find her in; she had just gone out.
23. Do you know that this poor C. has just lost his wife?

24. I come to pay you my debts (= what I owe you).
25. You need not have come expressly for that.
26. { Waiter, did you order a cab?
Have you got me a cab?
27. Let him come.
28. Has any one called here?
29. That happens very opportunely (*fort à propos*).
30. I have come expressly for that.
31. I shall be back at ten o'clock at the latest.
32. When did you return from the country?

1) *Offrir*, to offer.—*Part. pr.* : offrant.—*Part. p.* : offert. — *Pres.* : J'offre, tu offres, il offre, nous offrons, vous offrez, ils offrent (*offrir*).

10. Neuf heures viennent de sonner.
11. Neuf heures vont sonner.
12. Mademoiselle, vous offrirai-je ¹ à boire ?
13. Je vous remercie bien, monsieur ; je viens de boire tout-à-l'heure.
14. Y a-t-il longtemps que vous n'avez-vu monsieur D. ?
15. Je viens de le rencontrer (*rāng-kong-trēh*).
16. Madame L. est-elle chez elle ? Non madame, elle vient de sortir.
17. En ce cas je reviendrai dans une heure.
18. Je viens de voir tout-à-l'heure monsieur T.
19. Fait-il bien ses affaires ?
20. Oui, son commerce va très-bien.
21. Avez-vous été voir Mme. B. ?
22. Je suis allé chez elle, mais je ne l'ai pas trouvée ; elle venait de sortir.
23. Savez-vous que ce pauvre C. (*say*) vient de perdre sa femme (*fām*) ?
24. Je viens vous payer ce que je vous dois (*d'woāh*).
25. Il ne fallait pas venir exprès.
26. { Garçon, avez-vous fait venir un fiacre (*fēē-āk*) ?
 { Etes-vous allé chercher un fiacre ?
27. Faites-le venir.
28. Est-il venu quelqu'un ici (*kēl-keūng ēē-sēē*) ?
29. Cela vient fort à propos (*prō-pōh*).
30. Je suis venu exprès pour cela.
31. Je reviendrai à dix heures au plus tard.
32. Quand êtes-vous revenu de la campagne ?

— *Prēt.* : J'offris. — *Fut.* : J'offrirai, — *Imperat.* : Offre, offrons, offrez.

33. Please get out, gentlemen ; we have just passed the frontier.
34. The train will soon be here.
35. Please hurry, gentlemen ; the train from Brussels has just been signaled.
36. Shall I carry your trunk, sir, and get you a cab?
37. Would you allow me, sir, to put this little package under your seat (*banc*)?
38. Yes, please. (*Faites, je vous en prie.*)
39. Is it not in your way (*ne vous gêne-t-il pas*) as I have placed it just now?
40. Not the least in the world ; I am quite comfortable.
41. The train starts at seven o'clock in the morning. I have just ordered (*retenir*) a cab for half past six.
42. Do you know this gentleman? He has just addressed me in the street.
43. The carriage which has just passed has spattered me (*m'a éclaboussé*) from head to foot (*du haut en bas*).

1) *Tarder à* signifies *to delay*, as : *Ne tardez pas à lui envoyer ces échantillons*, Do not delay sending him these samples, or Hasten to send him these samples.—*Tarder de*, as an *impersonal verb*, means *to long*, as : *Il me tarde de*, I long to.—*Qu'il me tarde de vous revoir*, How I long to see you again.

Venir à means *to happen*, as : *S'il venait à apprendre que vous êtes ici*, If he happened to know that you are here.—*Pendant que nous parlions de monsieur C., il vint à passer dans la rue*, While we were talking of Mr. C. he happened to pass by in the street.

2) The *Subjunctive mood* must be employed after verbs of *commanding, ordering, wishing, permitting, &c.* Such are :

commander to command.
demander, to ask.
désirer, to desire, to wish.
défendre, to forbid.
exiger, to require, to demand.
ordonner to order.
aimer mieux, to like better.

permettre, to permit.
prier, to beg, to ask.
recommander, to recommend.
souhaiter, to wish.
souffrir, to suffer.
supplier, to beg, to request.
vouloir, to be willing.

33. Veuillez descendre, messieurs ; nous venons de passer la frontière (*frong-tyair*).
34. Le train ne tardera ¹ pas à venir.
35. Dépêchez-vous, messieurs, le train de Bruxelles vient d'être signalé (*sin-yâh-lêh*).
36. Monsieur, voulez-vous que je vous porte ² votre malle et que je vous aille ² chercher un fiacre ?
37. Me permettriez-vous, ³ monsieur, de mettre ³ ce petit paquet sous votre banc ?
38. Faites, ⁴ monsieur, je vous ^{en} prie.
39. Ne vous gêne-t-il pas, comme je viens de le placer ?
40. Pas le moins du monde. Je suis tout ^à mon ^{aise}.
41. Le train part ^à sept ^{heures} du matin. Je viens de retenir ⁵ un fiacre pour six ^{heures} et demie.
42. Connaissez-vous ce monsieur ? Il vient de m'accoster (*or m'aborder*) dans la rue.
43. La voiture qui vient de passer m'a éclaboussé du haut en bas (*dü ô-tâng-bâh*).

Examples : J'ordonne qu'il le fasse. — J'aime qu'il soit courageux. — Il souffrait que je lui disse la vérité. — Je supplie qu'on me permette de partir.

3) *Permettre* and *mettre*, see page 352, No. 1.

4) *Faites*, meaning *yes*, is often used in this manner.

5) *Tenir*, to hold.—*Part. pr.* : tenant.—*Part. p.* : tenu.—*Pres.* : Je tiens (*tyaing*), tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent (*tyên*).—*Imperf.* : Je tenais.—*Pret.* : Je tins (*taing*), tu tins, il tint, nous tîmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent (*taing'*).—*Fut.* : Je tiendrai (*tyaing-drêh*).—*Pres. Subj.* : Que je tienne (*tyên*), que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, &c.—*Imperf. Subj.* : Que je tinsse, &c.—*Imperat.* : Tiens, tenez.

Thus also : *Appartenir*, to belong ; *s'abstenir*, to abstain ; *contenir*, to contain ; *détenir*, to detain ; *entretenir* (*âng-tr'-tê-nêér*), to keep up, to entertain ; *maintenir* (*maing-tê-nêér*), to maintain ; *obtenir*, to obtain ; *retenir*, to retain ; *soutenir*, to sustain, to uphold, to support.

44. I am too warm ; I must take off my hat.
45. You will take cold if you stand bare-headed (*nu-tête*).
46. I would not do that for all the money (*tout l'or*) in the world (*du monde*).
47. I must ask your permission to go away ; I have several business errands (*courses*) to do.
48. I have just seen in the advertisements (*les affiches*) that there is a house to be sold in St. Martin's Street, inquiries to be made at your place (*s'adresser chez vous*). Would you do me the favor to tell me what it consists of?

2.

1. Where are you going?
2. I intended to go to you (= I went to you).
3. Where do you come from?
4. I come from my brother's.
5. And I come from church (= from the church).
6. Will you come with me?
7. Where do you want to go?
8. We are going to take a walk.
9. I'll gladly accompany you (= I will it gladly [*bien*]).
Where (*par où*) shall we go?
10. Wherever you like (= We shall go where [*par où*] you will like).

44. J'ai trop chaud; il faut que j'ôte mon chapeau.
45. Vous allez vous enrhummer, si vous restez nu-tête.
46. Je ne voudrais pas faire cela pour tout l'ot du monde
(*du mongd*).
47. Il faut que je vous demande la permission de m'en aller; j'ai plusieurs courses à faire.
48. Je viens de voir dans les affiches (*lay zāf-fēesh*) une maison à vendre rue St. Martin (*mār-taing*), s'adresser chez vous. Voudriez-vous me faire le plaisir de me dire en quoi elle consiste (*cong-sist*).

2.

1. Où allez-vous?
2. J'allais chez vous.
3. D'où venez-vous?
4. Je viens de chez mon frère.
5. Et moi, je viens de l'église.
6. Voulez-vous venir avec moi?
7. Où voulez-vous aller?
8. { Nous irons (*noū zē-rong*) nous promener.
 { Nous irons faire un tour.
9. Je le veux bien. *Par* où irons-nous (*zē-rong noū*)?
10. Nous irons *par* où vous voudrez.

11. Let us go to the Park (*au parc*), and let us call for your brother on our way (= in passing [*en passant*]).
12. All right (= As it will please you, *or* As you will).
13. { Is Mr. D. in ?
 { Is Mr. D. at home ?
14. No, sir, he just went out.
15. Can you tell me where he has gone ?
16. I really cannot tell you, sir. I think he went to his sister's (= that he has gone to see his sister).
17. Do you know when he will return ?
18. No, he did not say anything when he went out (= in going out [*en s'en allant*]).
19. In case (*si*) any one inquires for me, porter, please say (= you will say) that I have gone to the exhibition (*à l'exposition*).
20. I shall not be back *the whole day* (*de la journée*).
21. Did any one call during my absence ?
22. Yes, sir, two of your countrymen came to pay you a visit (= wanted to see you).
23. I am curious (*curieux*) to know who can have called (= come) the very day (*le jour même*) of my arrival.
24. Upon my word (*ma foi*), sir, I do not remember any more (*je ne me rappelle plus*); I cannot keep (*retenir*) those English names *in my head*. [*In my head* is not to be translated.]
25. But the (= these) gentlemen said that they would call again to-morrow morning before 12 o'clock.

11. Allons au parc et prenons votre frère en passant (*āng pā-sāng*).
12. { Comme il vous plaira.
Comme vous voudrez.
13. { Monsieur D. est-il chez lui ?
Monsieur D. est-il à la maison (*may-zong*) ?
14. Non monsieur, il vient de sortir (*sör-tēēr*).
15. Pouvez-vous me dire où il est allé ?
16. Je ne saurais vous le dire exactement (*dēēr rēk-zāg-tē-māng*), monsieur. Je crois qu'il est allé voir sa soeur.
17. Savez-vous quand il reviendra ?
18. Non ; il n'a rien dit en s'en allant.
19. Concierge, si l'on vient me demander, vous direz que je suis allé à l'exposition.
20. Je ne rentre pas (*rāng-tr' pāh*) de la journée.
21. Est-on venu me demander pendant mon absence ?
22. Oui, monsieur ; deux de vos compatriotes (*kong pā-trēē-ōi*) désiraient vous voir.
23. Je suis bien curieux (*kü-ryēū*) de savoir qui peut être venu le jour même de mon arrivée (*ār-rēē-vēh*).
24. Ma foi, monsieur, je ne me rappelle plus ; je ne peux pas retenir les noms anglais.
25. Mais ces messieurs ont dit qu'ils repasseraient demain matin avant midi.

26. If these gentlemen should call in (*en*) my absence, you will please request them to write their names and addresses (down).
27. I am going to the country. I shall not come home this night.

3.

Idiomatic expressions with *aller* and *venir*.

1. How do you do?
2. How are you?
3. How is your health?
4. That will do.
5. That will not do (*or*, That won't do).
6. That's a matter of course (*or*, That is understood, *or*, Of course).
7. That suits me; done!
8. That does not suit me in the least (*or*, at all).
9. This trimming is very becoming to you.
10. This coat does not fit you well.
11. Do you think that this dress fits me well?
12. This trimming is too light; it does not match well.
13. That might do (*or*, That might answer).
14. This key does not fit this lock.
15. How old is he? He is about ten years old.
16. It is very nearly 10 o'clock.
17. Business is very dull nowadays.

26. Si ces messieurs revenaient en mon absence, vous les prierez d'écrire leurs noms et leurs adresses.
27. Je vais à la campagne, je ne rentrerai pas cette nuit.

3.

Idiomatic expressions with aller and venir.

1. Comment allez-vous ?
2. { Comment cela va-t-il ?
- { Comment ça va-t-il ?
3. Comment va la santé ?
4. { Cela va.
- { Cela ira (*ēē-rā*).
5. Cela ne va pas.
6. Cela va sans dire.
7. Cela me va, j'en suis.
8. Cela ne me va pas du tout.
9. Cette garniture (*gār-nēē-tūr*) vous va très-bien.
10. Cet habit ne vous va pas bien.
11. Croyez-vous que cette robe m'aille bien ?
12. Cette garniture est trop claire; ça ne va pas.
13. Cela pourrait aller.
14. Cette clef ne va pas à cette serrure (*sēr-rūr*).
15. Quel âge a-t-il donc ? Il va sur ses dix ans.
16. Il est près de dix heures.
17. Le commerce va bien peu maintenant.

18. Has he brought it about ?¹ (*or*, Has he succeeded ?)¹
19. You will never succeed with it (*or*, You will never accomplish it).
20. I doubt if he can bring it about (*or*, if he can accomplish it).
21. I do not think he will accomplish it.
22. I do not think you will succeed with it; the undertaking (*l'entreprise*) is too difficult.
23. *He has spent all his money.*²
24. Did you read this book ?
25. No, sir, it is so tedious (*ennuyeux*) that I have not been able to read it through.
26. He married her at last.

4.

to take them to the Post-Office.

in order to ³

them

1) The pupil must study the following idioms :

Venir à bout d'un dessein (*dé-saing*), or **Venir à bout d'une entreprise** (*dün nāng tēr-prēze*) means to bring about; to accomplish; to succeed.

2) **Venir à bout d'une chose**, to make an end of a thing; to bring a thing to an issue.

3) **Pour** is used before an *infinitive* to express an *intention* or *design*, answering to the English *in order to*; whenever therefore the English *to* before an infinitive can be changed into *in order to*,

18. En est-il venu à bout ¹ (*bōō*) ?
19. Vous n'en viendrez jamais à boūt.
20. Je doute (*dōōt*) qu'il en vienne à bout.
21. Je ne crois pas qu'il en vienne à bout.
22. Je ne crois pas que vous en veniez à bout; l'entreprise (*lāng-tēr-prēēze*) est trop difficile.
23. Il est venu à bout de son argent ² (*sōn nār-jāng*).
24. Avez-vous lu ce livre ?
25. Non monsieur, il est si ennuyeux (*āng-nū-ēē-yeū*) que je n'ai pu venir à bout de le lire en entier (*ān-nāng-tyēh*).
26. Il est venu à bout de l'épouser (*lay-pōō-zēh*).

4.

pour les mettre à la poste.

poūr lay mēt rāh lā pōst.

pour ²

les (Acc. pl.)

pour must be used in French. *Ex.*: J'ai fait mon possible *pour* payer mes dettes, I have done my utmost *to* pay my debts. — J'ai fait tout ce que j'ai pu *pour* l'en empêcher, I did all I could *to* prevent him from it. — Je suis allé moi-même *pour* ne pas vous déranger, I went myself *in order* not *to* disturb you.

The preposition *pour* is also used before the infinitive after the words *assez*, *trop*, and *suffisant* (and after the verb *suffire*). *Ex.*: Elle est assez riche *pour* acheter cette maison, She is rich enough to buy this house. Il est trop jeune *pour* y aller, He is too young to go there.

to put, to place, to lay, to set

to the post-office.

-
1. Will you send for some wine?
 2. I will send for some.
 3. That is what I am looking for
 4. Did you send for me?
 5. Get this book, please.
 6. Your sister is quite ill; I must get a physician.

 7. What are you looking for so eagerly [= in such a hurry] (*avec tant d'empressement*)?
 8. He is looking for difficulties where there are none.
 9. You are searching in vain (= *beau*).
 10. What are you doing? It is like looking for (*c'est chercher*) a needle in a bundle of hay (*une botte de foin*).
 11. Take this letter to the post.
 12. Till what hour can letters be put into the box which are to leave by the evening mails (*par les courriers du soir*)?

1) *Mettre* irregularly conjugated; comp. p. 352, No. 1. Observe the following idiomatic expressions: *Mettre à la voile*, to set sail.—*Se mettre à crier, pleurer, rire*, to begin crying, weeping, laughing.—*Voulez-vous vous mettre avec moi*, Will you be on my side (at play)?—*Mettre à part* (or *de côté*), to put aside.—*Mettez votre chapeau*, Put your hat on.—*Elle se met avec goût*, She dresses stylishly.—*Mettre à profit* (*fée*), to profit.

2) *Plaire*, to please.—*Part. pr.*: *plaisant* (*zāng*).—*Part. p.*: *plu.*—*Pres.*: *Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plai-*

mettre¹

à la poste.

-
1. Voulez-vous[^]envoyer chercher du vin ?
 2. Je veux[^]en[^]envoyer chercher.
 3. C'est ce que je cherche.
 4. M'avez-vous[^]envoyé chercher ?
 5. Allez chercher ce livre, s'il vous plaît.²
 6. Votre soeur est bien malade; il faut que j'aïlle chercher un médecin.
 7. Que cherchez-vous avec tant d'empressement (*tāng-dāng-près-sě-māng*) ?
 8. Il cherche des difficultés où il n'y en[^]a pas.
 9. Vous[^]avez beau chercher.
 10. Qu'est-ce que vous faites ? C'est chercher-une[^]aiguille (*ai-ghēē-yě*) dans[^]une botte de foin (*fō-āing*).
 11. Allez mettre (*or* Allez jeter) cette lettre à la poste.
 12. Jusqu'[^]à (*jūs-kāh*) quelle[^]heure peut-on jeter à la boîte les lettres qui doivent partir par³ les courriers du soir ?

sent (*plaz*).—*Pret.*: Je plus, tu plus, il plut, nous plûmes, vous plûtes, ils plurent (*plūr*).—*Fut.*: Je plirai, tu pliras, il plira, &c.—*Pres. Subj.*: Que je plaise, que tu plaises, qu'il plaise, &c.—Thus also: *Se complaire*, to delight in; *déplaire*, to displease.—*S'il vous plaît*, if you please.

3) *By*—with the passive voice—is usually translated by *par*; but it must be rendered by *de*, when the verb denotes a *sentiment* or an inward act of the mind, as: Il est estimé *de* tout le monde, He is esteemed by everybody.

GRAMMATICAL REMARKS.

Exercises and Words used in Common Conversation.

Of the Indefinite Pronouns.

On or l'on, one, they, people.

Tout le monde, everybody.

Chacun (*shāh-keūng*), f. chacune (*shāh-kün*), each, every one.

Aucun (*ōh-keūng*), f. aucune (*ōh-kün*), (*with ne*), none, not one.

Quelqu'un (*kēl-keūng*), f. quelqu'une (*kēl-kün*), some one, somebody, anybody.

pl. quelques-uns (*kēl-kē-zeūng*), f. quelques-unes (*kēl-kē-zün*), some.

Personne (*with ne*), nobody.

L'un, e, — l'autre, the one —, the other.

pl. les uns (les unes), — les autres, the one —, the others.

L'un (l'une) et l'autre, both.

L'un (l'une) ou l'autre, either.

Ni l'un (l'une) ni l'autre, neither.

L'un (l'une) l'autre, *Gen.* l'un de l'autre, } each other ;
pl. les uns (les unes), les autres, } one another.

Un autre, f. une autre, another.

D'autres, *pl.* others, other people.

Autruï (*ôh-trû-êê*), (*Gen. d'autruï, Dat. à autruï*), others, another.

Tel, f. telle, many a (man).

Plusieurs, several.

La plupart, most (with a following Genitive, as: La plupart **des** hommes, most men).

Quiconque (*kêê-kong*), whoever.

Tout, f. toute, all, everything.

pl. tous, toutes, all.

Quelque chose, something, anything.

Rien (*with ne*), nothing.

Le même, la même, the same.

1. **On** and its use has been explained.

2. **Aucun, personne, and rien** are always used with *ne*, as: *Personne n'a parlé*, No one spoke. — *Il n'a rien fait*, He has done nothing.—*Avez-vous toutes les boîtes? Je n'en ai aucune*, Have you all the boxes? I have none.

a) When, however, these three pronouns *serve to answer a question*—without repeating the verb used in the question—they cannot take *ne*, as: *Qui est là? Personne*, Who is there? No one.—*Qu'avez-vous? Rien*, What is the matter with you? Nothing.

b) In *interrogative sentences* or in *sentences expressing a doubt* and after words of a negative meaning, as *sans, jamais, nulle part, ni, &c.*, *aucun, personne, and rien* are used without *ne*; *aucun* then stands for *any*; *personne* for *anybody*; and *rien* for *anything*. As: *J'ai fait ce long voyage sans voir aucune de mes connaissances*, I made this long

journey *without* seeing *any* of my acquaintances. — Il n'y a *jamais* personne chez lui, There is *never any one* at his house.

c) These pronouns always require *de* before any adjective following them, as : Il n'y a rien de plus beau, There exists nothing more beautiful.

3. Not one or none are rendered by **aucun ne** or **pas un ne**, as : **Aucun** de vous n'y était, None of you were there. — *Vo,ez-vous ces personnes ? Je n'en aperçois aucune* (or **pas une**), Do you see these persons? I see none.

4. *Somebody, some one, anybody, and any one* are expressed by **quelqu'un** singular and masculine; *some*, pl. by **quelques-uns** or **quelques-unes**. Ex. :

Somebody told me so, **quelqu'un** me l'a dit. .

Do you know any one here? **Connaissez-vous quelqu'un** ici?

5. **La plupart**, *most*, takes the Genitive plural after it. The predicate must also be put in the plural. Ex.:

La plupart **de** ces pommes ne **sont** pas encore mûres.
Most of these apples are not yet ripe.

6. *Another* is usually expressed by **un autre**, and the plur. *others* (Nom. and Acc.) by **d'autres** or **les autres**. Ex. : *Un autre* vous servira, Another one will help you. — *Donnez-moi d'autres* raisons, Give me *some other* reasons

7. *Of* or *from others* is rendered *d'autrui*, and *to others, à autrui*, as : *Par soi-même on p ut juger d'autrui*, From one's own self one can judge *of others*.

8. **L'un et l'autre**, fem. *l'une et l'autre* (pl. *les uns et les autres*, pl. fem. *les unes et les autres*), **both**.—They agree with the noun they refer to, in gender and number. Ex. : **L'un et l'autre** *sont* allés au concert, Both have gone to the concert.

When preceded by a preposition we have to repeat the same in French before each of them, as :

Je le ferai pour l'une et pour l'autre, I shall do it for both of them (*fem.*)

Ni l'un ni l'autre (fem. *ni l'une ni l'autre*) requires *ne* before the verb, as : *Je ne le ferai ni pour l'un, ni pour l'autre*, I shall do it for neither of them (*masc.*)

9. **L'un l'autre** (*l'une l'autre* [*fem.*]); *les uns les autres*; *les unes les autres* (*fem.*), **one another** or **each other**. *L'un, l'une, les uns, les unes* are always the subjects, *l'autre, les autres* the objects of the sentences. All *active verbs* must in such cases take the reflexive pronouns *se, nous, vous*, although **no** reflexive pronoun is used in English ; as : *Ces deux soeurs s'aiment l'une l'autre*, These two sisters love each other.—*Vous vous nuisez l'un à l'autre*, You are hurting one another.—*Elles parlent mal l'une de l'autre*, They speak ill of each other (*fem.*).

N.B.—Observe that the prepositions must be placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

10. *Tel* has two significations, *such* and *many a (man)*. In the former it is an adjective and agrees with its noun ; in the latter it is used without a substantive. Ex. : *Telle*

était la difficulté, Such was the difficulty.—*Tel parle de choses qu'il n'entend pas*, Many a man speaks of things which he does not understand.

Note. Un tel has also the meaning of so and so, as:

Chez Monsieur un tel, at Mr. So and So's. *Madame une telle*, Mrs. So and So.

11. Notice also the expression: **Il n'y a rien de tel que....** or **il n'est rien tel que....**, There is nothing like. Ex.:

Il n'y a rien de tel que d'avoir une bonne conscience (*kong-syāngs*).

There is nothing like having a good conscience.

Words.

Division (f) du temps (*dēē-vēē-z'yong dü tāng*).

Division of Time.

Un siècle (*sēē-ay-kl'*),

A century.

Une année (*ān-nay*),

A year.

l'année passée.

last year.

l'année prochaine (*pro-shayn*),

next year.

Un mois (*m'woāh*),

A month.

Une semaine (*sē-mayn*),

A week.

Un jour, une journée,

A day.

Une heure (*ün neür*),

An hour.

Une demi-heure (*dē-mēē eür*),

Half an hour.

Un quart d'heure (<i>kār deūr</i>),	A quarter of an hour.
Une heure et demie,	An hour and a half.
Une minute (<i>mēē-nūt</i>),	A minute.
Une seconde (<i>sē-gongd</i>),	A second.
Le matin,	The morning.
La matinée,	The forenoon.
Midi (<i>mēē-dēē</i>) (<i>m.</i>),	Noon.
L'après-midi, (<i>m.</i>)	The afternoon.
Le soir (<i>s'woār</i>),	The evening.
La soirée (<i>s'woā-ray</i>),	The evening.
La nuit (<i>nū-ēē</i>),	Night.
Minuit (<i>mēē-nū-ēē</i>) (<i>m.</i>),	Midnight.
Aujourd'hui,	To-day.
Hier (<i>ēē-ayr</i>),	Yesterday.
Avant-hier (<i>ā-vāng-tyair</i>),	The day before yesterday.
Demain,	To-morrow.
Après-demain,	The day after to-morrow.
Le lendemain	The next day, the morrow.
(<i>lāng-dē-maing</i>),	
Le commencement	The beginning.
(<i>cōm-māng-sē-māng</i>).	
Le milieu (<i>mēē-lycū</i>),	The middle.
La fin (<i>faing</i>),	The end.
 <i>Les saisons</i> (<i>say-zong</i>) <i>f. pl.</i>	 <i>Seasons.</i>
Le printemps (<i>praing-tāng</i>),	Spring.
L'été (<i>m.</i>).	Summer.
L'automne (<i>lō-tōn</i>),	Autumn.
L'hiver (<i>lēē-vayr</i>) <i>m.</i> ,	Winter.
La belle saison.	The fine season.
La mauvaise saison,	The bad season.

Exercise.

Omnibus.—Tramway.—Cab.¹

Do you pass² through the 'rue de Richelieu'? Yes, sir. — Please put me down³ at the 'Palais-Royal.' — Fares,⁴ please. — Would you be kind enough to hand my fare⁵ to the conductor? Would you be so kind to move⁶ a little? — Take a seat in that corner. — Why do we stop⁷? — The street seems to be blocked up with carriages.⁸ — Would you be kind enough to give⁹ the conductor a sign⁹ to stop? — Let me get out first.¹⁰ — Give me your¹¹ hand. — Don't hurry, wait till the 'bus stands quite still.¹² — Conductor, a connection-ticket¹³ for Passy. — This is too late, sir; you ought to have spoken when you got in.¹⁴ — Have you a connecting-ticket¹⁵? Then get out and enter this office. The omnibus for Passy has not yet come in, but it will be here in a minute.¹⁶ — I am very tired; let us take a cab. — Cabman, here!¹⁷ — Stop, please, and turn round.¹⁸ — Drive us to the 'Bois.' — On time.¹⁹ — (You will) drive us²⁰ through the 'Boulevards, la place de la Concorde and les Champs-Élysées.' — What is your fare,²¹ cabman? — Is the charge for the luggage included²²? — That is very dear. — Cabman, drive me²³ to the N...hotel. R...street. — Do you know the hotel?

1) fiacre. — 2) est-ce que vous passez? — 3) descendez-moi. — 4) Places. — 5) ma place or mon argent. — 6) reculer. — 7) s'arrêter. — 8) *It seems (il paraît) that the street is blocked up (encombrée) of carriages.* — 9) de faire signe. — 10) le premier. — 11) la main. — 12) attendez que la voiture soit tout à fait arrêtée. — 13) une *correspondance* (need not be paid for extra). — 14) il fallait le dire en montant. — 15) une *correspondance*. — 16) il ne tardera pas à venir. — 17) Cocher, par ici! — 18) tournez. — 19) à l'heure or nous vous prenons à l'heure. — 20) Vous prendrez les Boulevards, &c. — 21) combien vous dois-je? — 22) le prix des bagages est-il compris? — 23) conduisez-moi.

The Meisterschaft-System.

FRENCH.

PART XV.

XV.

(Continuation.)

13. I want to have (*faire charger*) this letter registered.
14. They are received at the office till four o'clock only.
15. What! my last letter has not been received? Did you forget (*auriez-vous oublié*) to post it, John?
16. Oh no, sir; I have put it into the box myself.
17. And I wrote the address correctly; it is impossible that it should have been miscarried.
18. I shall go and inquire (*je vais aller*) at once at the *office of information (bureau des réclamations)*.
19. I have sent a letter to Marseilles, and it did not reach (*elle n'est point parvenue*) its destination (*adresse*).

1) The French verb *faire* is used for *to do*, *to make*, and *to get* or *to cause*, and *to have*; it must always be followed in French by the *infinitive (active)* without a preposition, as:

Où voulez-vous le faire faire? Where will you have it done?

Observe the following idioms:

faire savoir à quelqu'un, to let one know; to send word.

il fait chaud, it is warm.

il fait froid, it is cold.

faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.

ne faire que, to do nothing but.

vous feriez mieux de ne pas le faire, you had better not do so.

faire faire, to get made; to order.

se faire des amis, to get friends.

faire semblant de (sāng-blāng), to pretend.

faire voile, to set sail.

faire de son mieux, to do one's best.

c'en est fait de moi, I am undone; it is over with me.

XV.

(Continuation.)

13. Je voudrais faire¹ charger (or faire recommander (*rě-com-māng-děh*) cette lettre.
14. On ne les reçoit² au bureau que jusqu' à quatre heures.
15. Comment ? on³ n'a pas reçu ma dernière lettre ? Jean (*jāng*), auriez-vous oublié de la mettre à la boîte ?
16. Oh, que non, monsieur ; je l'ai jetée moi-même à la boîte.
17. J'avais cependant (*sě-pāng-dāng*) bien mis (*měē*) l'adresse ; il est impossible qu'elle se soit égarée.
18. Je vais aller tout de suite au bureau des réclamations (*rěh-klāh-mā-syong*).
19. J'ai envoyé une lettre à Marseilles, et elle n'est point⁴ (*po-aiing*) parvenue à son adresse.

2) Compare page 372, Note 3.

3) The word *on* (derived from *homme, man*) serves to render all general and vague reports expressed in English by *they say, it is reported, people say, &c.* = *on dit*. The verb following *on* must always be in the third person singular. *Ex.* : *On* croit, People think.—*On* ne peut pas faire tout, One cannot do everything.

When—which is frequently the case—the passive voice is used in English, the verb must be changed in French into the active voice with *on*, as :

It is said, on dit.
I was told, on m'a dit.

On me trompe, I am deceived.
On n'a pas reçu mes lettres, My letters were not received.

4) The negative *not* is expressed by *ne—pas*, or *ne—point*.

20. I am surprised at that.¹ — When did you send off your letter?
21. A week ago to-day.
22. How do you know it did not arrive?
23. By a letter I have just received.
24. We are just going to sit down to dinner.
25. Waiter, lay another cover, opposite to the other one.
26. Place the soupe-tureen in front of me and hand me the ladle.

Idiomatic expressions with faire.

1. I am having that engine repaired (*réparer*).
2. Have this coat repaired (*raccommoder*).
3. I am having a silk dress made at this dressmaker's.

1) Observe the difference between the French and the English idiom.

2) The following prepositions govern the Genitive:

<i>à côté de</i> , by, beside. <i>à cause de</i> , on account of. <i>au travers de</i> , through. <i>au milieu de</i> (<i>ôh mēl-yū dē</i>), in the middle of. <i>au lieu de</i> , instead of. <i>près de</i> , } by, next to. <i>auprès de</i> , } near, close to. <i>au-devant de</i> , before. <i>au-dessus de</i> , above, upon. <i>au dessous de</i> , below, under. <i>loin de</i> , far from. <i>au moyen de</i> (<i>ôh m'woā-yaing dē</i>), by means of.	<i>en deça de</i> , on this side of. <i>au haut de</i> , on the top of. <i>du haut de</i> , from above. <i>hors de</i> out of. <i>au dehors de</i> , outside, without. <i>autour de</i> , around, about. <i>par delà de</i> , } <i>au delà de</i> , } on that side. <i>vis à-vis de</i> , } opposite (to). <i>en face de</i> , } <i>lelong de</i> , along. <i>à l'égard de</i> , with regard to. <i>faute de</i> , for want of. <i>en vertu de</i> , in consequence of.
---	--

3) The following *simple* prepositions govern the objective case:
à (before *le* = *au*; before *les* = *aux*), at, in, to, | *avant* (denoting time), before.
 | *envers*, to, towards.

20. Cela m'étonne.¹ Quand avez-vous fait partir votre lettre ?
21. Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours.
22. Comment savez-vous qu'elle n'est pas arrivée ?
23. Par une lettre que je viens de recevoir.
24. Nous allons nous mettre à table.
25. Garçon, mettez encore un couvert (sur cette table), vis-à-vis de² l'autre.
26. Mettez la soupière devant³ moi, et passez-moi la cuillère à soupe.

Idiomatic expressions with faire.

1. *Je fais réparer* cette machine (*mā-shēn*).
2. *Faites raccommoder* cet habit.
3. *Je fais faire* une robe de soie (*s'woāh*) chez cette couturière (*kōō-tür-yair*).

avec, with.

chez, at, at the house of.

contre, against.

dans, in, into.

de (before *le* = *du*; before *les* = *des*), of, from.

depuis, since.

derrière, behind.

dès, from.

devant (denoting place), before.

pendant (*pāng-dāng*), } during.

durant, }

en, in, within, into, to.

entre (*āng-tr'*), between.

après (denoting time), after.

hors, } except, besides.

hormis, } save.

outré, besides.

malgré, in spite of.

moyennant (*m'woā yēn-nāng*), by means of.

par, through, by.

parmi (*pār-mēē*), among.

pour, for.

sans, without, but for.

sous, under.

selon (*sē-lōng*), } according

suivant (*süēē-vāng*), } to.

sur, on, upon.

vers, towards.

Devant is a local preposition, as : Nous étions *devant* la maison, We were before (in front of) the house.—*Avant*, on the other hand, denotes priority of time and order, as : Je suis arrivé *avant* vous, I arrived before you.

4. Have some fresh coffee made.
5. I had some beef-tea made for you.
6. I am having a silk dress made by the same tailor who made yours.
7. They are having some boots made at the French shoemaker's.
8. I shall let him know.
9. You kept my clerk waiting (= You have made my clerk wait).
10. Let him know that I shall call again to-morrow morning.
11. *Will you communicate*¹ that to your agent?
12. Why have you not informed them of the news?

13. He is a cringing fellow. (He cringes.)
14. I shall never lower myself (*je ne m'abaisserai jamais*) to toadying (*à faire des courbettes* = cringing to a person).
15. You have made (*or* committed) a great blunder (*un pas de clerc*).
16. By coming here he has committed a blunder.
17. You have made *a great deal of fuss* (*des embarras*).
18. This boy makes a great deal of fuss.
19. You pretend (*or* you make believe [*vous faites semblant*]) that you are pleased with it.
20. He pretends to be ill.
21. He pretended to be ignorant of it (= not to know anything about it).
22. I am going now *to pack my trunk* (*faire ma malle*).

1) *Faire part de quelque chose à quelqu'un* means to commu-

4. *Faites faire* du café frais.
5. *J'ai fait faire* du bouillon (*bōō-yong*) pour vous.
6. *Je me fais faire* une robe de soie par le même tailleur qui a fait la vôtre.
7. *Elles se font faire* des bottines chez le cordonnier français.
8. *Je le lui ferai* savoir.
9. *Vous avez fait* attendre mon employé.
10. *Faites-lui* savoir que je reviendrai demain matin.
11. *Ferez-vous part de cela*¹ à votre agent.
12. Pourquoi *ne leur avez-vous pas fait part* des nouvelles?
13. Il fait des courbettes.
14. Je ne m'abaisserai jamais à *faire des courbettes*.
15. *Vous avez fait un pas de clerc*. (But rarely used.)
16. Il a *fait un pas de clerc* en venant ici.
17. Vous *avez fait des embarras* (*day-zāng-bār-rāh*).
18. Ce *garçon fait bien des embarras*.
19. *Vous faites semblant* (*sāng-blāng*) que cela vous plaît.
20. *Il fait semblant* d'être malade.
21. *Il faisait semblant* de n'en rien savoir.
22. Je vais *faire ma malle* à présent.

nicate something to a person; to inform him of a thing; to impart or to convey knowledge.

23. I must pack my trunk at once.
 24. Why have you not *put my room in order* (*fait ma chambre*) ?
 25. How many times must you be told to put my room in order (*or to clean my room*) ?
 26. He tells stories (*des contes*).
 27. You told us a story.
 28. You are telling me a story.
 29. He plays the lord (*le grand seigneur*) in Paris.
 30. This man is very shrewd (*rusé*) ; he acts the saint (= the good apostle [*apôtre*]).
 31. He got himself into a scrape (*or into a difficulty*).
 32. He got himself into a scrape when he was in Saratoga.
-

Idiomatic expressions with *mettre*.

1. I have placed him among my friends (*or among the number of my friends* [*au rang de mes amis*]).
2. I know him well. He has placed me since a long time (*depuis longtemps*) among the number of his friends.
3. They turned him (*on l'a mis*) out of doors.
4. Mr. B. is a man who knows how to take advantage (*mettre à profit*) of everything (*or who knows how to make the best of everything*).
5. I shall endeavor to turn (*mettre*) my German to advantage (*à profit*).
6. I defy you (*je vous mets au défi*) to prove it.
7. He defied me.

23. *Il me faut faire ma malle* tout de suite.
24. Pourquoi n'avez-vous pas *fait ma chambre* ?
25. Combien de fois faut-il vous dire de *faire ma chambre* ?
26. *Il fait des contes* (kongt).
27. C'est un conte que vous nous avez *fait*.
28. C'est un conte que vous me *faites là*.
29. *Il fait le grand seigneur* (lě grāng sĕn-yeūr) à Paris.
30. Cet homme est bien rusé ; *il fait le bon apôtre*.
31. Il s'est *fait des affaires*.
32. Il s'est *fait des affaires* quand il était à Saratoga.

Idiomatic expressions with mettre.

1. Je l'ai *mis* (mĕē) au rang de mes amis.
2. Je le connais bien. Depuis longtemps (long-tāng) il m'a *mis* au rang de ses amis.
3. On l'a *mis* à la porte.
4. Monsieur B. est un homme qui sait *mettre tout à profit* (prō-fĕē).
5. Je tâcherai de *mettre mon allemand à profit*.
6. Je vous *mets* (may) au défi (day-fĕē) de le prouver.
7. Il m'a *mis* au défi.

8. She made me acquainted with it. (She imparted the knowledge of this fact to me.)
9. Your imprudence has long since acquainted him with it.
10. He will easily familiarize himself with (or see through) that matter.
11. He begins to (*Il se met à*) work at half past five.
12. Don't begin to work, tired as you are.
13. Set about it immediately, pray.
14. They began to laugh.
15. He goes through fire and water (*il se met en quatre*) for his friends.
16. She would do anything for her friends.
17. The poor girl is indefatigable in his behalf.

Idiomatic expressions with *prendre*.

1. Do not take it amiss. (Don't be offended at it.)
2. Don't be offended at what I am telling you.
3. Instead of taking the affair as a joke (*en riant*), he was offended at it.
4. You must not always take his compliments literally (*au pied de la lettre*).
5. He is simpleton enough (*assez simple*) to take all these compliments literally.
6. She takes all this *for gospel* (*au pied de la lettre*).

8. Elle m'a mis *au fait de cela*.
9. Votre *imprudence* (*aing-priü-dāngs*) l'a mis depuis longtemps au fait de cela.
10. Il se *mettra* aisément (*ay-zay-māng*) au fait de cette affaire.
11. Il se *met* à travailler (*trā-vāh-yēh*) à cinq heures et demie.
12. *Ne vous mettez pas* à travailler, fatigué comme vous êtes.
13. *Mettez-vous-y* tout de suite, je vous prie.
14. Elles se *mirent* à rire (*mēer tāh rēer*).
15. *Il se met* en quatre pour ses amis.
16. *Elle se mettrait* en quatre pour ses amis.
17. La pauvre fille se *met* en quatre pour lui.

Idiomatic expressions with prendre.

1. Ne le *prenez pas* en mauvaise part.
2. Ne *prenez pas* ce que je vous dis en mauvaise part.
3. Au lieu (*lyeü*) de *prendre* la chose en riant (*rēē-āng*), il la *prit* en mauvaise part.
4. Il ne faut pas toujours *prendre* ses compliments (*kong-plēē-māng*) au pied de la lettre.
5. Il est assez simple (*saing-pl*) pour *prendre* tous ces compliments au pied de la lettre.
6. Elle *prend* (*prāng*) tout cela au pied de la lettre.

7. We have appointed a day (*nous avons pris jour*) to settle this affair.
8. He has appointed a day to meet you.
9. You have no right to examine (*prendre connaissance de*) his conduct.
10. She would look into that affair.
11. How do you manage (*vous y prenez-vous*) to prepare your lessons without a dictionary ?
12. You do not set about it rightly.
13. They manage very well indeed.
14. They managed very badly.
15. How did you manage it ?
16. This is the way he managed.
17. They managed it somehow.

To Speak, to Chat; to be Silent.

1. Speak (*or* talk) to me ; speak to him (*or* to her)
2. Speak loud ; speak low (softly).
3. To whom are you talking ?
4. Of what are you talking ?
5. Are you talking to me ?
6. Why did you not speak before (sooner) ?
7. Don't talk to me of it.
8. I do not want to know anything about it.
9. Talk sensibly.
10. The matter speaks for itself.
11. Let us have a chat.
12. You do nothing but talk all day long.

7. *Nous avons pris jour* pour régler cette affaire.
8. *Il a pris jour* pour vous rencontrer.
9. Ce n'est pas à vous à *prendre connaissance* de ses actions.
10. Elle a voulu *prendre connaissance* de cette affaire.
11. Comment *vous y prenez-vous* pour préparer vos leçons sans dictionnaire?
12. *Vous ne vous y prenez pas* bien.
13. *Ils s'y prennent* comme il faut.
14. *Ils s'y prirent* très mal.
15. Comment *vous y êtes-vous pris* ?
16. Voici comme *il s'y prit*.
17. Ils s'y sont pris on ne sait comment.

Parler, Causer ; se Taire.

1. Parlez-moi ; parlez-lui.
2. Parlez haut ; parlez bas.
3. A qui parlez-vous ?
4. De quoi parlez-vous ?
5. Est-ce à moi que vous parlez ?
6. Pourquoi ne parliez-vous pas plus tôt ?
7. Ne m'en parlez pas
8. Je ne veux pas en entendre parler.
9. Parlez raison.
10. La chose parle d'elle-même.
11. Causons un peu.
12. Vous ne faites que causer (or jaser) toute la journée.

13. Be silent!
14. Hush! Silence!

To Know, to Say.

1. Do you know anything new? (*or*, What is the news?)
2. I do not know of anything new.
3. What? you do not know what the whole town is talking of?
4. I have not heard anything.
5. You pretend (*vous faites semblant*) not to know it.
6. If I knew anything about it I would tell you.
7. This is a false report; otherwise (*sans quoi*) you ought to know it.
8. Who says so? Every one says so.
9. May I inquire (*savoir*) who told you?
10. A person worthy of confidence. I have it from Mr. N.

To Know; to Forget: to Remember.

1. Do you know me?
2. I have not the honor of knowing you.
3. What, don't you recognize me?
4. I cannot recall you. I cannot remember your name.

1) *Taire*, to conceal.—*Part. pres.* : taisant.—*Part. p.* : tû.—*Pres.* : Je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, vous taisez, ils taisent (*taiz*).—*Pret.* : Je tus, tu tus, il tut, nous tûmes, vous tûtes, ils turent (*tûr*).—*Fut.* : Je tairai — *Pres. Subj.* : Que je taise, que tu taises, qu'il

13. Taisez-vous!¹
15. Chut (*shüt*) ! Silence (*sē-lāngs*) !

Savoir ; Dire.

1. Savez-vous quelque chose de nouveau (*or* Qu'y a-t-il de nouveau) ?
2. Je ne sais rien de nouveau.
3. Comment ? vous ne savez pas ce que l'on dit dans toute la ville ?
4. Je n'ai rien entendu dire.
5. Vous faites semblant (*sāng-blāng*) de ne pas le savoir.
6. Si j'en savais quelque chose, je vous le dirais.
7. C'est donc un faux bruit, *sans quoi* vous le *sauriez*.
8. Qui le dit ? Tout le monde le dit.
9. Puis-je *savoir* qui vous l'a dit ?
10. Une personne digne (*dēn-yě*) de foi. *Je le tiens de* monsieur N.

Connaitre ; Oublier ; se Souvenir.

1. Me connaissez-vous ?
2. Je n'ai pas l'honneur de vous connaître.
3. Comment, vous ne me reconnaissez pas ?
4. Je ne puis vous *remettre*. Votre nom ne me *revient* pas.

taise, etc. — Thus: *Se taire*, to be silent.—*Pres.*: Je me tais, I am silent.—*Prét.* Je me tus, I was silent.—*Perf.*: Je me suis tû, I have been silent.—*Imperat.*: Tais-toi ; taisez-vous, be silent.

5. I do not remember having had the honor of meeting you.
6. I beg your pardon ; I remember having had the pleasure of seeing you last winter at a ball given by Mrs. B.
7. Do you remember it ?
8. I remember it very well.
9. So do I ; I shall never forget (=always remember) it.
10. I have not forgotten what you said to me at that time (*alors*).
11. I cannot recall it ; I have a bad memory (*la mémoire ingrate*).
12. May I ask you to remind me of it ?

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

If the weather is just as cold to-morrow morning as it is to-night, make a fire in my son's room as I am afraid he is ill.

5. Je ne me rappelle pas avoir eu cet honneur.
6. Pardonnez-moi, je me souviens d'avoir eu le plaisir de vous voir l'hiver dernier au bal de M^{me}. B.
7. Vous en souvient-il ?
8. Je m'en souviens très-bien.
9. *Moi aussi*, je m'en souviendrai toujours.
10. Je n'ai pas oublié ce que vous me dites alors.
11. Je ne puis me le rappeler ; j'ai *la mémoire ingrate*.
12. Oserais-je vous prier de m'en faire ressouvenir ?

FOUNDATION SENTENCE.

S'il fait demain matin aussi froid que ce soir,
 seel fay dē-maing mā-taing ōs-sēē fro-āh kē sē swoāre,

faites du feu dans la chambre de mon fils parce
 fait dū feu dāng lā shāng-br' dē mong tēēs pār-sē

que je crains qu'il ne soit malade.
 kē jē kraing kēēl nē swoāh mā-lād.

1.

If the weather is just as cold to-morrow morning as it is to-night.

If ; whether

it makes

if it makes

to-morrow

morning

to-morrow morning

also ; too ; likewise ; as

cold

as

to-night ; this evening.

1) *Si* belongs to the so-called *simple conjunctions*. Conjunctions are used to connect either words or sentences. They are either *simple* or *compound* ; the *simple* consist of *one* word for each clause, the *compound* are formed of *two* separate words.

Simple Conjunctions.

Et, and.

et—et, both—and.

aussi, also, too.

tantôt—tantôt, sometimes—sometimes.

ou, or.

ou—ou, either—or.

plus—plus, the more—the more.

plus—moins, the more—the less.

moins—moins, the less—the less.

autant—autant, as much as.

car, for.

mais, but.

toutefois, } however.

cependant, }
pourtant, yet, still.

autrement, } otherwise, else.

sans cela, }
néanmoins, nevertheless.

d'ailleurs, besides, moreover

si, if, whether.

sinon, if not

1.

S'il fait demain matin aussi froid que ce soir.

sèl fay dè-maing mā-taing òs-sèè fro-äh kè sè swoäre.

Si ¹

il fait ²

s'il fait

demain

matin (m.)

demain matin

aussi ³

froid

que ⁴

ce soir.

soit—soit, be it—or.

ni—ni, neither—nor.

comme, as.

comment, how?

donc, consequently; then.

ainsi, thus, so.

puis; *alors*, then.

que, that.

que, than (after a comparative).

quand, when?

où, where?

d'où, whence?

puisque, since, as.

lorsque, when, as.

quoique (with the Subj.), though.

pourquoi, why?

pour, in order to.

2) *il fait*, *il faisait*, etc., is used in speaking of the weather; as, *il fait beau*, it is beautiful weather.

3) *aussi—que* (just) as—as, is used in comparisons, as: *Il est aussi heureux que son frère*. He is just as happy as his brother. — In negative comparisons *aussi—que*, or *si—que* may be used: *Nous ne sommes pas si riches (or aussi riches) que vous*, We are not as rich as you.

1. What kind of weather is it?—It is fine weather (It is fine).
2. It is bad weather.
3. It is very fine weather.—The weather is splendid.
4. The weather is very bad (*or* awful; abominable).
5. The weather is nice (agreeable).
6. The weather is not pleasant. (The weather is disagreeable).
7. It is clear.
8. The sky (*le temps*) is cloudy (overcast).
9. { It is gloomy.
It is dry.
It is damp.
10. The weather is certain.
11. The weather is uncertain (*or* changeable).
12. It is pleasant (*or* mild).—It is stormy.
13. Will it be fine to-day? (Are we going to have fine weather to-day?)
14. It looks as if we were going to have fine weather.
15. It looks as if we were going to have bad weather.
16. The weather is growing (*or* turning) bad.
17. It is growing fine.
18. It does not look as if we were going to have fine weather.

1) *Couvrir*, to cover.—*Part. pr.* : *couvrant*.—*Part. p.* : *couvert*.—
See *ouvrir*.

1. Quel temps (*tāng*) fait-il? — Il fait beau temps (*or*, Il fait beau).
2. Il fait mauvais temps (*or*, Il fait mauvais).
3. Il fait_un temps magnifique (superbe; splendide; délicieux).
4. { Il fait_un vilain temps (*vēē-laing-tāng*).
 { Il fait_abominable (*nāhbl'*).
5. Il fait bon (agréable).
6. Il ne fait pas bon (*or*, Il fait désagréable).

7. Il fait_un temps clair(serein [*sě-raing*]).
8. Le temps est couvert (*koō-vayr*).¹
9. { Il fait sombre (*sōngbr'*).
 { Il fait sec.
 { Il fait_humide (*tümēēd*).
10. Le temps est constant (*kou-stāng*).
11. Le temps est variable (*or* inconstant [*vāh-ryābl'*, *aing-kong-stāng*]).
12. Il fait doux (*dōō*).—Il fait_orageux.
13. { Le temps se mettra-t-il au beau aujourd'hui?
 { Fera-t-il beau aujourd'hui?
14. { Le temps a l'air de vouloir se mettre_au beau.
 { On *dirait*² que le temps va se mettre_au beau.
15. { Il y a apparence (*ă-pā-rāngs*) de mauvais temps.
 { On *dirait* qu'il va faire mauvais.
16. Le temps se déränge (*or* se gâte [*gāht*]).
17. Le temps se remet_au beau.
18. Le temps n'a pas l'air de vouloir se mettre_au beau.

²) On *dirait*, one would think; *on ne le dirait pas*, one would not believe it.

19. It is beginning to grow fine again.
20. The weather is clearing up.
21. That's a sign of fair weather.
22. What beautiful weather we are having nowadays.
23. What weather ! [These expressions may be used in regard to good or bad weather.]
24. You want to go out in such weather (*or* in this weather) ?
25. The barometer points to fair; to rain; to change.
26. The barometer has risen (has fallen).
27. The sky is overcast; we are certainly going to have rain (*de l'eau*).
28. So much the worse, for (*car*) I have to make some calls (*or* to pay some visits).
29. You can put them off (*remettre*) till to-morrow.
30. But to-morrow we have to go (*nous devons aller*) to the country with Mr. Godet. Don't you remember that he promised to fetch us provided the weather were fine ?
31. Do you think it is going to rain to-day ?
32. Yes, it is raining already. [Observe the French mode of expressing these phrases.]
33. It rains (*or*, It is raining).
34. It has been raining.
35. It will rain.

1) *commencer*, to begin, is generally followed by *à*, as : On a commencé *à* jouer, They have begun to play.—But if a certain time is stated, it is followed by *de*, so as to avoid the repetition of *à*, as : Il commença *de* parler *à* cinq heures, He began to talk at 5 o'clock.

2) *Tant*, so much, so many.—*tant que*, as long as.—*tant mieux*, so much the better.—*tant pis*, so much the worse.

3) After the verbs of *thinking, believing, saying, etc.*, the *Indicative* follows, when the verbs are used *affirmatively*; but the *Subjunctive* must follow, when they are used *negatively, interrogatively, or comdi-*

19. Il recommence¹ à faire beau.
20. Le temps s'éclaircit.
21. C'est signe (*sēēn-yě*) de beau temps.
22. Quel beau temps nous avons aujourd'hui.
23. { Quel temps !
Voilà un temps !
24. Vous voulez sortir *par* ce temps (*or* par un temps pareil [*pā-rě-yě*], *or* par le temps qu'il fait) ?
25. Le baromètre est au beau ; à la pluie ; au variable
26. Le baromètre est monté ; (tombé).
27. Le temps est couvert ; nous allons sûrement (*sū-rě-māng*) encore avoir de l'eau.
28. Tant pis² (*pěē*) ; car j'ai des visites à faire.
29. Vous pouvez les remettre à demain.
30. Mais demain, nous devons aller à la campagne avec monsieur Godet. Vous rappelez-vous qu'il a promis de venir nous chercher, s'il faisait beau ?
31. Croyez-vous que nous ayons³ de l'eau aujourd'hui ?
32. Oui monsieur, il en tombe déjà.
33. Il pleut (*or*, Il tombe de l'eau).
34. Il a plu (*or*, Il est tombé de l'eau).
35. Il pleuvra (*or*, Il tombera de l'eau).

tionally, i.e., when they are preceded by the conjunction *si*. If I say, for instance: *Je crois* que son employé *est parti*, I represent the departure as a *fact*, I believe *he has* left. But in the sentence: *Je ne crois pas* que son employé *soit* parti, I speak of his departure as *something uncertain*, as something which *may* have happened, consequently the *Subjunctive* must be used.—*Pensez-vous qu'il puisse faire* tout cela? Do you think he can do all that? Sortons, *si vous pensez* qu'il fasse beau temps, Let us go out, if you think it will be fine weather.

36. It is going to rain.
 37. It is raining very fast.
 38. It is raining faster and faster (*de plus belle*).
 39. It rains as fast as it can pour (*à verse*); let us get under cover (*à couvert*).
 40. It looks like rain.
 41. Do you think it is going to rain ?
42. It does not rain so heavily (*a diminué*).— It has left off raining.
 43. The rain has settled the dust.—All nature has been refreshed by the rain.
 44. I am afraid I shall get wet (*mouillé*).
 45. I am wet through and through. — I am wet through to the skin. (*Literally*: to the bones [*jusqu'aux os*]).
 46. My clothing (*or* my dress [*ladies'*]) is soaked through and through.

1) *Craindre*, to fear.— *Part. pr.* : *craignant* (*krên-yâng*). — *Part. p.* : *craint* (*kraing*).— *Pres.* : Je crains (*kraing*), tu crains, il craint, nous craignons (*krên-yong*), vous craignez, etc.— *Pret.* : Je craignis (*krên-yê*).— *Fut.* : Je craindrai (*kraing-drai*).— Thus also: *Plaindre*, to pity, *se plaindre*, to complain; *contraindre*, to compel, to constrain.

2) After verbs of *permitting, allowing, promising, fearing, rejoicing*, etc., the *Infinitive* with *de* must follow, if 1) the *main sentence* and the *dependent clause* have *one and the same subject*, or if 2) the subject of the dependent clause is a *pronoun* which has been mentioned already in the main sentence, as : *I am afraid I shall get wet, Je crains d'être mouillé.*—Tell him he should write to my father, *Dites-lui d'écrire à mon père.*

I add a full list of these verbs :

Accuser, to accuse.
achever, to finish.
avertir, to inform.
s'aviser, to determine.
blâmer, to blame.
charger, to commission.
cesser, to cease.
commander, to command.

conjuré, to entreat.
continuer, to continue.
conseiller, to advise.
craindre, to fear.
défendre, to forbid.
dépêcher (*se*), to hasten.
détourner, to deter.
différer, to differ.

36. Il va pleuvoir (*or*, Il va tomber de l'eau).
 37. Il pleut bien fort.
 38. La pluie tombe *de plus belle*.
 39. Il pleut à verse ; mettons-nous à couvert.
 40. Le temps *est à la pluie*.
 41. Croyez-vous qu'il pleuve (*or* que nous ayons de l'eau) ?
 42. La pluie a diminué (La pluie a cessé).
 43. La pluie a abattu la poussière.—La pluie a rafraîchi (*shêê*) toute la nature (*nā-tiūr*).
 44. Je crains¹ d'être² mouillé (*mōō-yēh*).
 45. Je suis tout mouillé. — Je suis trempé jusqu'aux os (*jūs-kō-zō*).
 46. Mes vêtements (*vay-tě-māng*) sont tout mouillés.

dire, to tell.
dispenser, to excuse.
désespérer, to lose hope.
dissuader, to dissuade.
écrire, to write.
empêcher, to hinder.
s'empreser, to hasten.
entreprendre, to undertake.
essayer, to try.
éviter, to avoid.
feindre, to feign.
féliciter, to congratulate
hâter (se), to hasten.
juré, to swear.
menacer, to threaten.
mériter, to deserve.
négliger, to neglect.
nier, to deny.
offrir, to offer.
omettre, to omit.
ordonner, to order.
oublier, to forget.
permettre, to permit.

persuader, to persuade.
plaindre, to pity.
plaindre (se), to complain.
prescrire, to prescribe.
presser, to urge.
prier, to pray, to ask.
promettre, to promise.
proposer, to propose.
recommander, to recommend.
refuser, to refuse.
regretter, to regret.
réjouir (se), to rejoice.
remercier, to thank.
se repentir, to repent.
reprocher, to reproach.
résoudre, to resolve.
risquer, to run risk.
sommer, to summon.
soupçonner, to suspect.
supplier, to beg, request.
tâcher, to endeavor.
trembler, to tremble.
vanter (se), to boast.

47. My hat is in a terrible condition (in an awful state).
48. What an object you look !
49. I was surprised (*or* overtaken) by a sudden rainstorm (*une averse*).
50. And you had neither an umbrella nor an overcoat ?
51. The sky looked so fine when I went out that I did not take any precaution.
52. Yes, but the weather was sultry (*lourd*) and the heat stifling (*la chaleur accablante*), and there were those little clouds on the horizon which foretell a storm.
53. I fancied they would blow off.
54. You counted without your host. [French proverb.]
55. I am afraid it is going to rain.
56. It looks like a thunderstorm.
57. How hot it is to-day ! It has not been so warm all summer.
58. I am afraid we are going to have a thunderstorm ; it is going to rain at once.
59. That is nothing. That will soon pass over.
60. The weather is clearing up. The sun is shining again. It is going to be fine.
61. The sun is shining.

1) *ni—ni (nèz)* must always be accompanied by *ne*.

2) The *present participle* with *en* denotes *a*) either a means, or *b*) a *simultaneous action*, i.e., an action during the transaction of which another one is acted by the same subject ; it is always invariable, and corresponds to the English present Participle preceded by the prepositions *by, in, on, or while* ; or it is sometimes rendered by the simple Participle without preposition. Ex.:

Il riait *en me regardant*, He was laughing while he looked at me.
—On se forme l'esprit *en lisant* de bons livres, We form our minds by reading good books.

3) The verbs *avoir peur, craindre, and trembler* require the particle *ne* before the verb in the Subjunctive Mood, but only when these verbs themselves are *affirmative or negative-interrogative*. Ex.:

47. Mon chapeau est bien arrangé (*ār-rāng-jay*).
48. Comme vous voilà fait !
49. J'ai été surpris par une averse.
50. Vous n'aviez donc ni ¹ parapluie ni paletot ?
51. Le ciel (*syél*) était si beau que je n'avais pris aucune précaution (*prēh-kō-syong*) en partant.²
52. Oui, mais le temps était lourd, la chaleur accablante, et il y avait au ciel de ces petits nuages (*nü-āhje*) qui annoncent l'orage (*ān-nōngs lō-rāhje*).
53. Je croyais qu'ils se dissiperaient.
54. Vous avez compté (*kong-tēh*) sans votre hôte.
55. Je crains qu'il ne pleuve.³
56. Le temps est à l'orage.
57. Qu'il fait chaud aujourd'hui ! Il n'a pas encore fait si chaud de l'été.⁴
58. Je crains que nous n'ayons de l'orage ; il va pleuvoir tout-à-l'heure.
59. Ce n'est rien. Ça va être bientôt passé.
60. Le temps s'éclaircit. Voilà le soleil qui paraît.⁵ Il va faire beau.
61. Il fait du soleil (*sō-lě-yē*).

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne ?

But if the sentence be simply *negative* or simply *interrogative*, *ne* is not used, as :

Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.

Craignez-vous qu'il vienne ?

4) *de l'été*, the whole summer through ; *de la nuit*, the whole night.

5) *Paraître*, to appear.—*Part. pr.* : paraissant.—*Part. p.* : paru.—*Pres.* : Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissions, vous paraissez, ils paraissent (*pā-rés*).—*Pret.* : Je parus, tu parus, il parut, etc.—*Fut.* : Je paraîtrai.—*Pres. Subj.* : Que je paraisse.—Thus also : *Apparaître*, to appear ; *disparaître*, to disappear ; *reparaître*, to reappear.

62. There is every indication of hot weather.
63. I feel warm.—I feel very warm.
64. How warm it is!—The heat is fairly choking (*or* overpowering).
65. The air is parching (*brûlant*); I am dying with heat.
66. One can scarcely bear the heat. (*Literally*: It is almost impossible to endure the heat.)
67. It makes one perspire (*transpirer*).
68. Let us step into the shade (*à l'ombre*).
69. Let us go into the shade.—It is shady here.
70. It is windy.—It is very windy.—There is a cold wind.
71. From which quarter is the wind?
72. The wind has changed (*or* turned].
73. It is pleasant for walking to-day.
74. What do you think of the weather? A little rain would not be amiss (*ne ferait pas de mal*).
75. We need rain.
76. Don't you think it is very warm weather for the season of the year?
77. Yes, this is one of the warmest springs I can remember.
78. The sun is as hot as in the midst of summer.
79. I am afraid we are going to have a thunderstorm to-day.
80. What whirl-wind! It thunders already! Do you hear?

62. { Il y a apparence de chaleur (*shā-leūr*).
 { On dirait qu'il va faire chaud.
63. J'ai chaud. — J'ai extrêmement (*or* excessivement) chaud.
64. Ah ! qu'il fait chaud ! — Il fait une chaleur étouffante !
65. L'air est brûlant ; je meurs de chaleur (*or* de chaud).
66. Il est presque impossible de supporter la chaleur.
67. Cela vous fait transpirer (*trāngs-pēē-rēh*).
68. Mettons-nous à l'ombre (*long-br'*).
69. Marchons à l'ombre. — Ici il fait de l'ombre.
70. Il fait du vent (*vāng*). — Il fait beaucoup de vent. — Il fait un vent froid (*frôâh*).
71. Quel vent fait il ? (*or*, Quel vent avons-nous) ?
72. Le vent a changé (*or* tourné).
73. Il fait un temps très-agréable pour se promener aujourd'hui.
74. Que dites-vous du temps ? Un peu de pluie ne ferait pas de mal.
75. Nous avons besoin de pluie.
76. Ne trouvez-vous pas qu'il fait bien chaud pour la saison (*sai-zong*) ?
77. Oui, ce printemps (*praing-tāng*) est un des plus chauds dont je me souviens.
78. Le soleil est aussi chaud qu'au milieu (*mēē-lēē-eū*) de l'été.
79. Je crains que nous n'ayons de l'orage aujourd'hui.
80. Quel tourbillon (*tōōr-bēē-yong*) ! Il tonne déjà. Entendez-vous ?

81. I just saw a flash of lightning.
82. The thunder roars.
83. What clap of thunder! the lightning has struck.
Now it begins to rain.
84. Let us escape as fast as possible into this house.
85. God be thanked! the storm is over!
86. After the rain follows the fine weather. [French
proverb.]
87. There is a draught here.
88. It is dusty.
89. It hails.
90. The hail has broken the window-panes (*les vitres*).
91. It is foggy.
92. It is quite fresh.—It is cold.
93. I feel cold.
94. It is freezing.—It freezes hard.
95. We had a hard frost last night (*cette nuit*).
96. We'll have a cold winter.
97. I am trembling with the cold.
98. It is growing colder.—It is growing warmer.
99. How many degrees have we? We have 3 degrees
below zero.
100. It snows.—It is snowing hard.
101. It is thawing.—The ice is broken.—The snow is
melting.
102. It is dirty.

81. Je viens de voir un éclair.
82. Le tonnerre gronde.
83. Quel éclat de tonnerre ! la foudre est tombé. Voilà qu'il commence à pleuvoir !
84. Sauvons-nous bien vite (*vēēt*) dans cette maison.
85. Dieu merci ! l'orage est passé.
86. Après la pluie le beau temps.
87. { Il y a un courant (*rāng*) d'air ici.
 { Nous sommes ici entre deux airs.
88. Il fait de la poussière.
89. Il grêle (*or*, Il tombe de la grêle).
90. La grêle a cassé les vitres (*vēē-tr'*).
91. Il fait du brouillard (*brōō-yāre*).
92. Il fait frais.—Il fait froid.
93. J'ai froid.
94. Il gèle. — Il gèle fort.
95. Nous avons eu une forte gelée cette nuit (*nū-zē*).
96. Il fera un hiver très-froid.
97. Je tremble (*trāng-bl'*) de froid.
98. Le froid augmente (*māngt*).—Le froid diminue.
99. Combien de degrés avons nous ?—Nous avons trois degrés de froid (*or*, Nous avons trois degrés au-dessous de zéro (*zay-rō*).
100. Il neige.—Il neige à gros flocons (*flō-kōng*).
101. Il dégèle.—La glace s'est rompue (*rong-pū*).—La neige fond (*fongd*).
102. Il fait sale (*sāhl*) (*or*, Il fait de la boue).

2.

**But before doing so make a fire in my son's
room, as I am afraid he is ill.**

But

before (Adverb)

make (Imperat)

some fire

in

the room

of my son

because

I am afraid

that he is ill

1. Please make a fire before bringing me the warm water.
2. If there is no fire in our bed-room, make one.
3. I cannot act otherwise (*autrement*).
4. I shall do it one way or another.
5. I have done my best.

2.

Mais auparavant faites du feu dans la chambre
 may zō-pā-rā-vāng fate dū feu dāng lā shāng-br'
de mon fils parce que je crains qu'il ne soit malade.
 dē mong fēes pār-sē-kē jē craing kseī nē swoāh māh-lā.

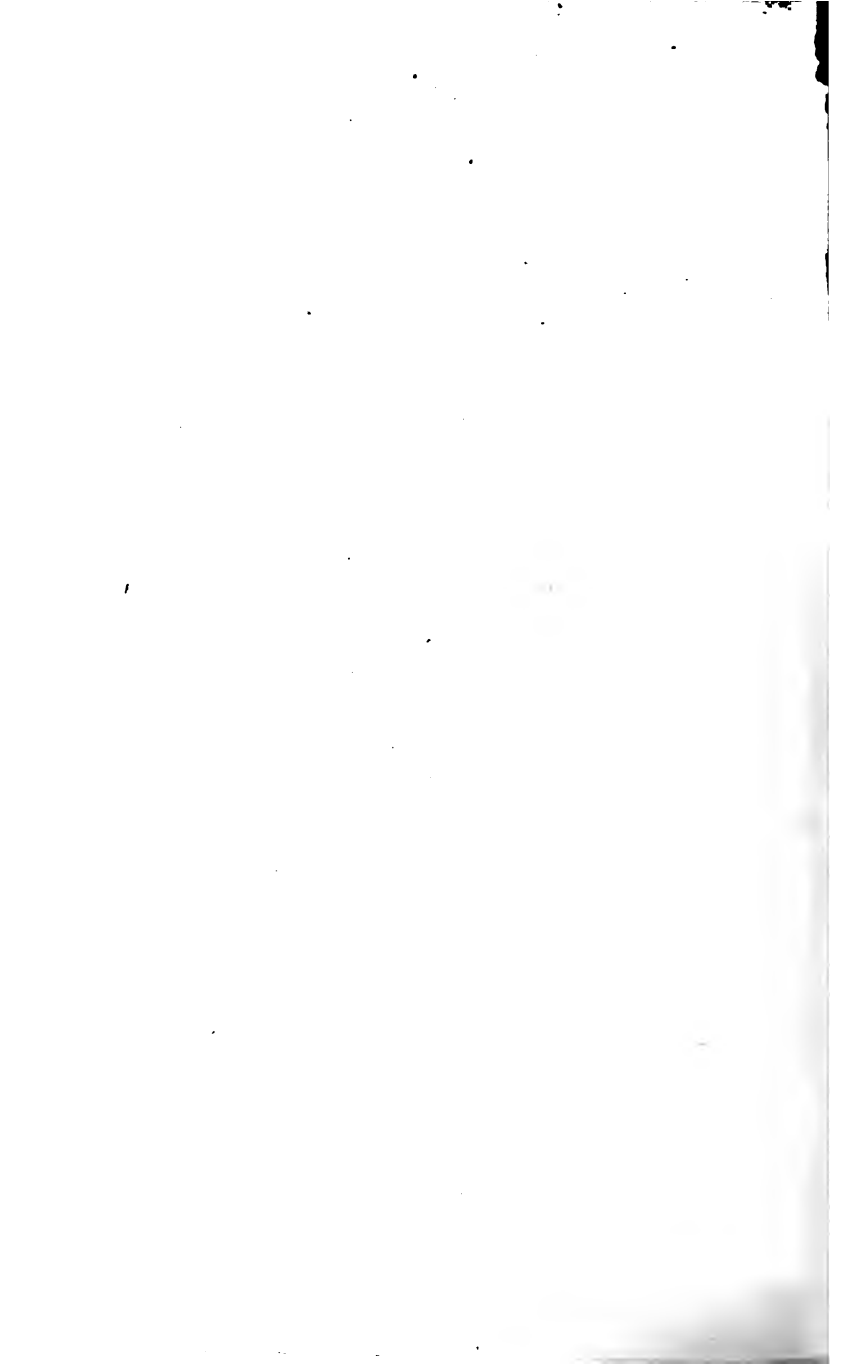
Mais
 auparavant
 faites
 du feu
 dans
 la chambre
 de mon fils
 parce que
 je crains
 qu'il ne soit malade.

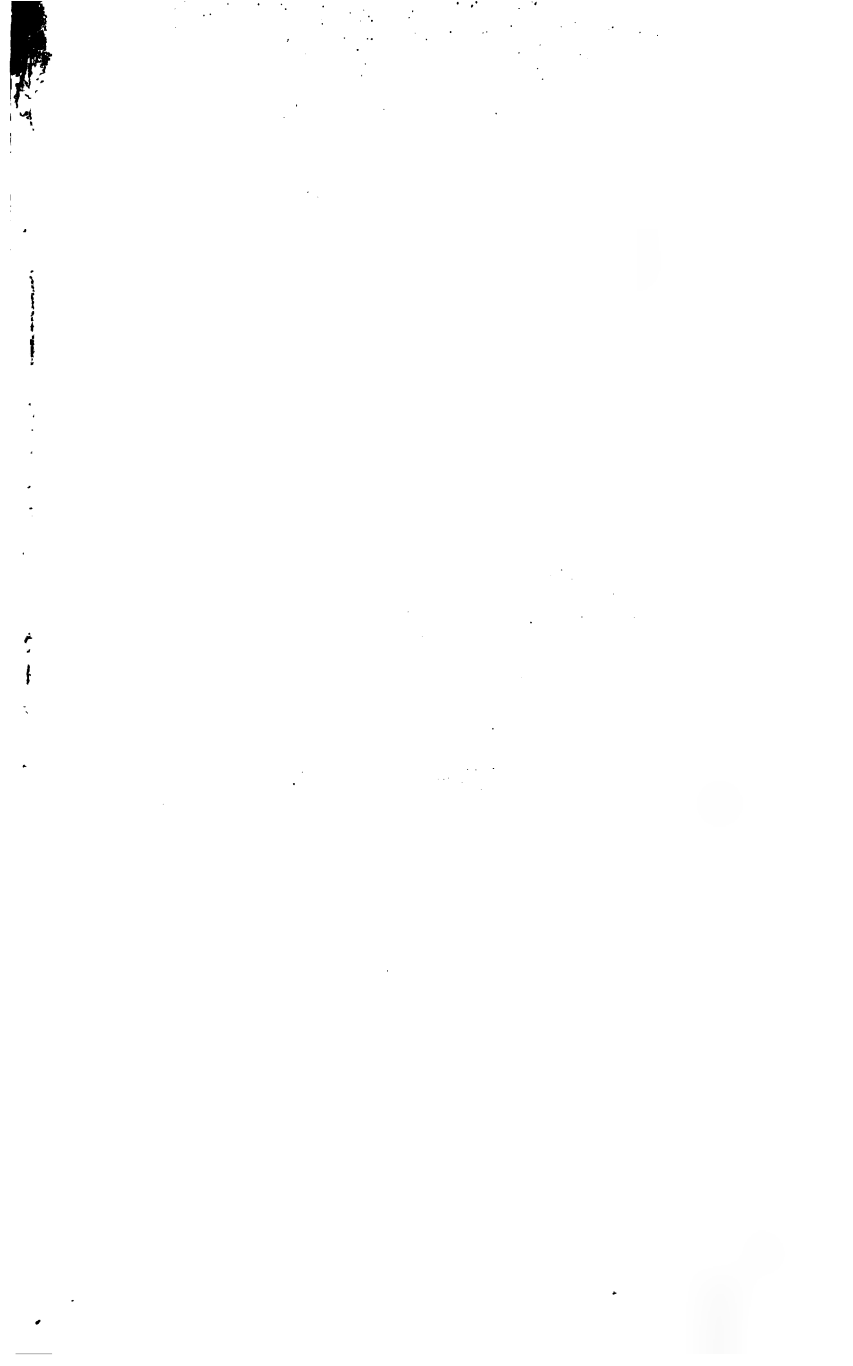
-
1. Faites du feu, je vous prie, avant de m'apporter de l'eau chaude.
 2. S'il n'y a pas de feu dans notre chambre-à-coucher, faites-en.
 3. Je ne puis faire autrement (*oh-tr' māng*).
 4. Je le ferai de manière ou d'autre.
 5. J'ai fait pour le mieux (*or* de mon mieux).

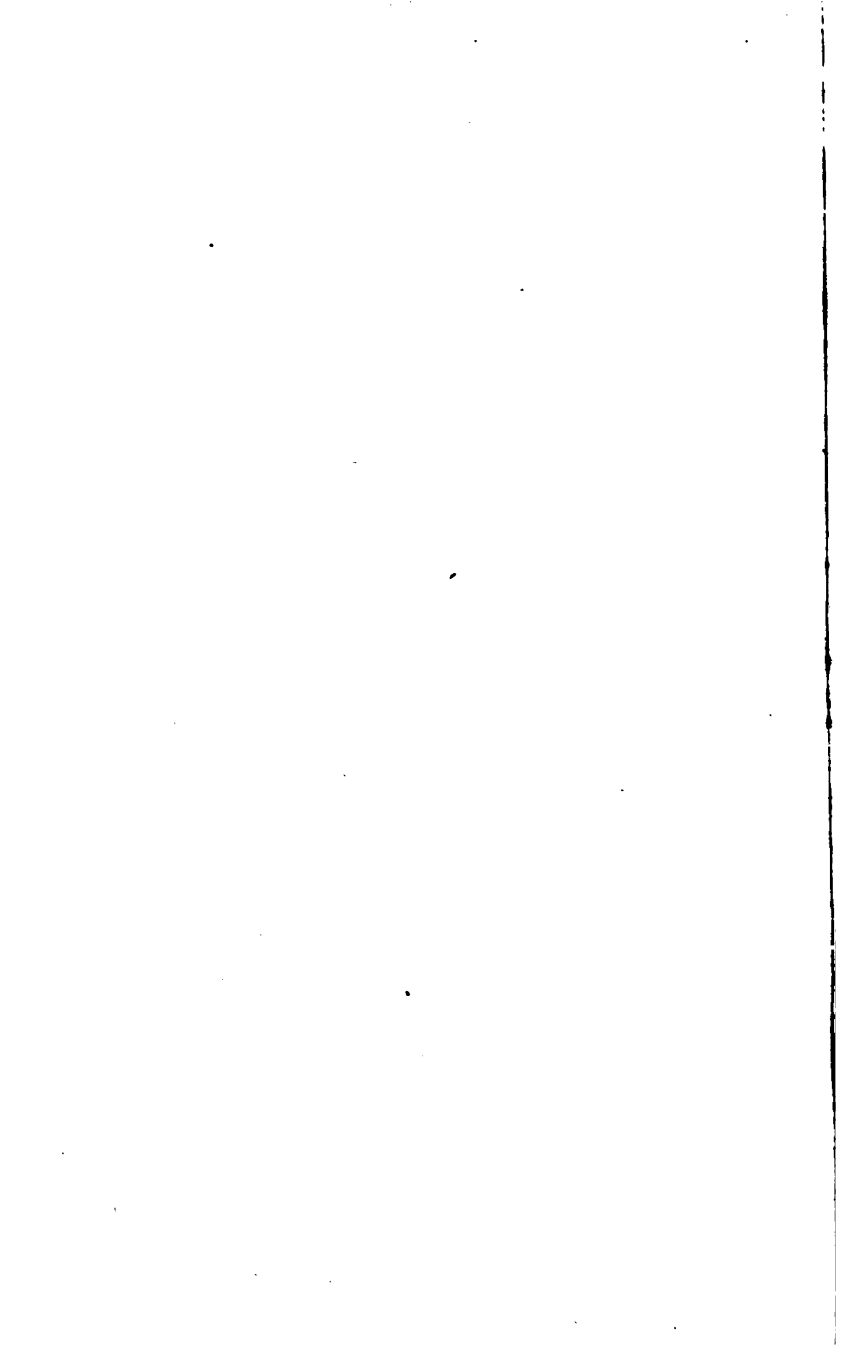
6. Do unto others as you would they should do unto you.
 7. You can do what you like. (You may act as you please.)
 8. Have you anything to do?
 9. Do what you please.
 10. He has done it on his own responsibility.

 11. That shall be done (*or* will be done) at once.
 12. He does it very clumsily.
 13. That happens sometimes.
 14. It is getting late.
 15. How does it happen that ?
 16. I am not afraid of his coming.
 17. I am afraid he is not coming.
 18. Is there anything to fear (*or* to be afraid of) ?
 19. It is to be feared that this may happen (*que cela n'arrive*).
 20. I am afraid he will not succeed.
 21. I am afraid my brother will loose his suit (*procès*).
-

6. Faites aux autres ce que vous voudriez qu'on vous fit (*fēē*).
 7. Vous ferez comme il vous plaira (*or* comme il vous semblera bon [*sāng-blē-rāh bōng*]).
 8. Avez-vous quelque chose à faire ?
 9. Faites comme vous voudrez.
 10. Il l'a fait de son chef (*or* de son autorité privée [*prēē-vay*]).
 11. Cela va être fait (*or* achevé, *or* fini, *or* terminé).
 12. Il le fait très-gauchement (*gōsh'māng*).
 13. Cela se fait quelquefois.
 14. Il se fait tard.
 15. Comment se fait-il que . . . ?
 16. Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.
 17. Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.
 18. Y a-t-il quelque chose à craindre ?
 19. Il est à craindre que cela n'arrive (*nār-rēēv*).
 20. J'ai peur qu'il ne réussisse pas (*kēēl nē ray-ūs-sīs pah*)
 21. Je crains que mon frère ne perde son procès (*say*).
-







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY
OVERDUE.

FEB 10 1934

MAR 21 1935

DEC 2 1943

13 Mar '53 HD
MAR 1 1953 LU

SEP 10 1969

REC'D LD JAN 8 - 70 - 9 AM

APR 30 1973

REC'D LD JUN 5 73 - 2 PM 58

472110

Rosenthal

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

